

George Sewell

Preceptor ^{room} 218
Group 16

Joker 39

Sit Tall - Stand Tall - Walk Tall

Stick me on your Mirror

Or pin me on your Door,

If you Live me, you will look

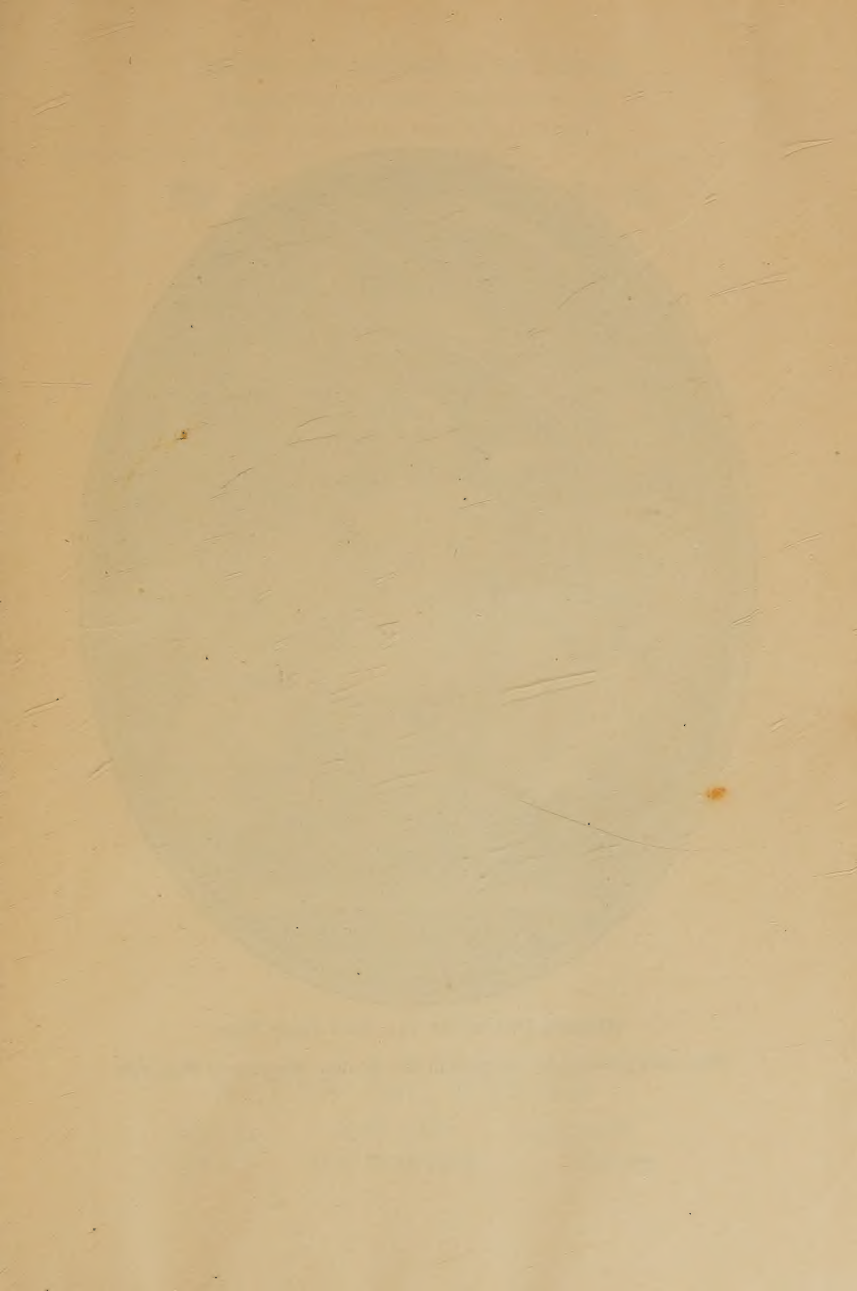
Much better than before.

J. H. S. Health Program

John Carr

Page 35

Grade 10A





MINERVA PROTECTING THE ARTS FROM TIME

From the painting by Sargent in the Boston Museum of Fine Arts

ALLYN AND BACON'S LATIN SERIES
FOLLOWING THE RECOMMENDATIONS OF
THE CLASSICAL INVESTIGATION

The François-Scudder Latin Course

BOOK ONE

FIRST LATIN

WITH COLLATERAL READING

BY
VICTOR E. FRANÇOIS, PH.D.
COLLEGE OF THE CITY OF NEW YORK



ALLYN AND BACON

BOSTON	NEW YORK	CHICAGO
ATLANTA	SAN FRANCISCO	DALLAS

COPYRIGHT, 1926
BY VICTOR E. FRANÇOIS

FTN

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

TO
MY BELOVED LATIN TEACHER
MICHEL BROSIUS, Ph.D.
PROFESSOR OF LATIN
"ATHÉNÉE" OF VIRTON (BELGIUM)
1882-1889
"ATHÉNÉE" OF ARLON (BELGIUM)
1889-1925

PREFACE

HAVING occasion some years ago to teach one of my young cousins Latin and finding no suitable book, I prepared a series of lessons meant primarily for the immature beginner. In this work I drew on my long experience in teaching Latin both in this country and abroad. The results from teaching this series of lessons to my cousin were so good that I showed the lessons to a junior high school specialist who said that they were just the thing for his particular field. Next we consulted a publisher, who was struck by the close parallel between my lessons and the *Report of the Classical Investigation*, which had just appeared. Only a few changes in rules and the addition of more reading were needed to make these lessons conform to the *Classical Report*.

Attention is invited to the size of the book. It has been made large on purpose to carry out certain aims which will appeal to practically all teachers of very young pupils. The first aim is to supply an unusual amount of simple Latin reading. The second is to offer collateral reading in English. The third is to illustrate both words and principles by pictures and drawings. The fourth is to treat one topic at a time, fully applying it.

(1) The first feature responsible for the size of the book is the inclusion of the full amount (forty pages) of reading matter in Latin called for by the *Classical Report*. As it was pedagogically impossible to incorporate all of this in the lessons of the book without retarding the momentum of the pupil, nearly half the material will be found at the end of the lessons, where it can be taken up according to the desires of individual teachers.

(2) Of the teachers consulted in the Classical Investigation, 96 % requested that there be some collateral reading in English in the first year work. Practical school men know that they have not enough reference books to enable all pupils of the class to accomplish this end. The only way to effect it is by the somewhat radical departure of including this reading in the book. While various sources have been drawn upon for this material, it was found that the best treatments of the subjects required in the *Classical Report* were often found in West's *Early Progress*, and from that book the bulk of the readings have been taken with the author's courteous permission.

(3) The illustrations are not only unusually complete, but bear more directly upon the subject matter than is usual in a beginner's book. Many of them were made to order by such well-known artists as Carlo Romagnoli and Duilio Cambellotti of Rome. Some of these pictures were submitted to Professor Grant Showerman, of the American Classical School at Rome for approval. Contributions were also levied from the various movies, Ben Hur, Messalina, Julius Caesar, and so on. In this visual age it seemed wise to illustrate the book copiously, even though such illustration increased its bulk.

(4) This book is built on the pedagogical principle of giving one simple rule at a time and driving it home by many easy exercises. It is felt that the immature learner will progress more rapidly in this way than if several topics are treated at once and are followed by few sentences for translation. The division of the exercises is more or less arbitrary and it is not expected that each class will need to do them all.

A special feature is the insistence upon simplicity and lucidity in contrast with pedantic accuracy. Exceptions with which the pupil will seldom come in contact have been left out. In the matter of pronunciation it has seemed wise not to dampen the beginner's ardor by insistence upon an

accuracy which even college professors sometimes fail to attain. Similarly, all through the book care has been taken to maintain the pupil's enthusiasm rather than to parade the author's scholarship.

For more mature pupils and teachers desiring a shorter course an edition of the lessons is printed with the exercises somewhat condensed and with the collateral reading omitted.

Thanks are due to Mr. Jacob Greenberg, Supervisor of Languages in the New York City Junior High Schools, who helped in the general preparation of the book, and to my colleagues Professor Charles A. Downer, Emory B. Lease, and George V. Edwards, who were kind enough to read the proofs and to make many valuable suggestions. The galley proofs were read by Mr. George Hinman of Phillips Academy at Andover, and Mr. Bernard Allen of the Roxbury School at Cheshire, Connecticut. Professor Charles Knapp of Barnard College read both page and foundry proofs with his well-known incisiveness. To all these gentlemen I wish to express my gratitude, and at the same time, as not all their suggestions were adopted, to absolve them from responsibility for any of the book's shortcomings.

V. E. F.

C. C. N. Y.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	xiii
LESSON	
I. FIRST DECLENSION	1
Reading: Latin Sentences. Roman Children's Garments	5
II. FIRST DECLENSION	7
Reading: Octavia et Augusta. Roman Slavery	9
III. SUBJECT, PREDICATE, AND OBJECT	11
Reading: Amicitia et Diligentia. Roman Education	15
IV. FIRST CONJUGATION	16
Reading: Poeta et Nauta. Early Roman Money	20
V. FIRST DECLENSION	22
Reading: Octavia Laborat. Roman Agriculture, 367-200 B.C.	26
VI. REVIEW LESSON	28
Reading: I. Roma et Italia. II. Patria. The Via Appia	32
VII. FIRST DECLENSION. FIRST CONJUGATION	36
Reading: Amicae Carae Octaviae. Roman Roads	40
VIII. FIRST DECLENSION. FIRST CONJUGATION	42
Reading: Viae Romanae. Roman Houses (Early Period to 200 B.C.)	47
IX. FIRST DECLENSION. SECOND CONJUGATION	49
Reading: Muscae et Lucerna. Roman Houses after the Punic Wars (146-49 B.C.)	54
X. FIRST DECLENSION	56
Reading: Italia Antiqua. Land and Peoples of Italy	59
XI. REVIEW LESSON	63
XII. Reading: Italia. Roman Literature	68

LESSON		PAGE
XIII.	SECOND DECLENSION. PAST OF Esse	71
	Reading: Galba et Marcus. The Roman Navy	75
XIV.	SECOND DECLENSION. FIRST CONJUGATION	77
	Reading: Plautus, Servus Bonus. Rome the World Mistress	81
XV.	SECOND DECLENSION. SECOND CONJUGATION	83
	Reading: Lupus et Capra. Early Rome	86
XVI.	SECOND DECLENSION	89
	Reading: Puer et Agnus. The Roman Army	92
XVII.	REVIEW LESSON	95
XVIII.	Reading: Vergilius. Publius Vergilius Maro	100
XIX.	SECOND DECLENSION. FUTURE OF Esse	103
	Reading: Nunc et Cras. Quintus Horatius Flaccus	106
XX.	SECOND DECLENSION. FIRST CONJUGATION	109
	Reading: Roma Prospera. Rome's Prosperity	113
XXI.	SECOND DECLENSION. SECOND CONJUGATION	115
	Reading: In Ludo. Italian Allies	118
XXII.	SECOND DECLENSION	120
	Reading: Vae Victis! Rome Sacked by the Gauls and Saved by the Geese	123
XXIII.	VOCATIVE. IMPERATIVE	125
	Reading: Mi Fili! The Roman Gods	128
XXIV.	REVIEW LESSON	131
XXV.	Reading: De Gallia. Gaul	136
XXVI.	SECOND DECLENSION. VERB Esse	139
	Reading: Romani Oppidum Delent. Carthage "Blotted Out"	144
XXVII.	SECOND DECLENSION. FIRST CONJUGATION	146
	Reading: Romani et Galli. The Early Latins	150
XXVIII.	SECOND DECLENSION. SECOND CONJUGATION	152
	Reading: I. Iocus Romanus. II. Marcus et Poma. The Roman Camp	157
XXIX.	SECOND DECLENSION. FIRST AND SECOND CON- JUGATIONS	159
	Reading: De Periculis Belli. Rome Unites Italy	163

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ix

LESSON		PAGE
XXX.	AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES. ADVERBS . . .	165
	Reading: <i>Agricola Miser.</i> Roman Slavery . . .	169
XXXI.	REVIEW LESSON	172
	Word Formation	178
XXXII.	Reading: List of Latin Words, Phrases, and Prov- erbs. The Roman Character	180
XXXIII.	FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (PASSIVE) . . .	185
	Reading: <i>Puer Malus et Asinus.</i> The Provinces . . .	190
XXXIV.	FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (PASSIVE) . . .	193
	Reading: <i>Galli Romanorum Iniurias Vindicabunt.</i> Caesar in Gaul	197
XXXV.	FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (PASSIVE) . . .	200
	Reading: <i>Debentne Discipuli Mali a Bonis Iuvari?</i> Rural Estates	204
XXXVI.	FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (PASSIVE) . . .	207
	Reading: <i>Periculum Discordiae.</i> A Roman "Triumph"	211
XXXVII.	REVIEW LESSON	214
	Reading: <i>In Ludo.</i> Education and Learning under the Roman Empire, to 192 A.D.	219
XXXVIII.	THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION . . .	221
	Reading: I. <i>Silentio.</i> II. <i>Pavo et Ciconia.</i> III. <i>Diogenes.</i> IV. <i>Lupus et Capra.</i> The Consuls	225
XXXIX.	THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION . . .	229
	Reading: I. <i>Virtus Leonidae.</i> II. <i>Formica et Ci- cada.</i> Caesar (100-44 B.C.)	232
XL.	THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION . . .	236
	Reading: <i>Id Satis Erit.</i> Hannibal	240
XLI.	THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION . . .	243
	Reading: <i>Ranae et Iuppiter.</i> Writing Material . . .	248
XLII.	THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION . . .	252
	Reading: I. <i>Quam Pulchrum Caput!</i> II. <i>Mors</i> <i>Epaminondae.</i> The Roman Calendar	255
XLIII.	THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION . . .	260
	Reading: I. <i>Quid Deinde?</i> II. <i>Nomina Roma- norum.</i> Roman Names	264

LESSON		PAGE
XLIV.	REVIEW LESSON	267
	Reading: Travel under the Early Empire . . .	273
XLV.	Reading: Familia. A Roman Father's Power . .	276
XLVI.	THIRD DECLENSION (-i Stems). FOURTH CON- JUGATION	278
	Reading: I. Taurus et Musca. II. Servus Piger. III. Magister Scelestus. The Roman Citizen .	283
XLVII.	THIRD DECLENSION. FOURTH CONJUGATION . .	286
	Reading: I. Corvus et Vulpes. II. Sic Vos Non Vobis. Augustus	290
XLVIII.	THIRD DECLENSION. FOURTH CONJUGATION . .	294
	Reading: I. Lupus et Grus. II. Naufragium Simonidis. Pompeian Rooms	298
XLIX.	THIRD DECLENSION. FOURTH CONJUGATION . .	300
	Reading: I. Leo Aeger. II. Diluvium. Ship- ping — Trade — "The Good Roman Peace" .	304
L.	REVIEW LESSON	308
LI.	Reading: Urbis Romae Origo. Proditio Tarpeiae. The Seven Kings of Rome	314
LII.	THIRD DECLENSION. IMPERATIVE	319
	Reading: Horatii et Curatii. Camilla. Rivalry of Rome and Alba Longa	323
LIII.	THIRD DECLENSION	328
	Reading: I. De Amicitia. II. En Ea Ornamenta Mea! III. Agricola et Anguis. IV. Asinus Leonis Pelle Indutus. The Gracchi (133-121 B.C.)	332
LIV.	COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	336
	Reading: I. Responsum Laconicum. II. Rex Esuriens. III. Vacca, Capella, Ovis, Leo. IV. Anseres et Grues. V. Ego Me Ipse Curo. Roman Censors	340
LV.	THE SUPERLATIVE	343
	Reading: I. Origo Obscurissima Euripidis et De- mosthenis. II. Gorgias Leontinus, Vir Doc- tissimus. III. Vipera et Lima. IV. Helvetia. Greek Oracles and Roman Augurs	346

TABLE OF CONTENTS

xi

LESSON	PAGE
LVI. ADVERBS	350
Reading: I. <i>Somnium Verum Evasit.</i> II. <i>Fortitudo Arriae.</i> Women's Condition under the Empire	353
LVII. REVIEW LESSON	356
LVIII. Reading: I. <i>L. Iunius Brutus, Romanorum Consul Primus.</i> II. <i>C. Mucius Scaevola.</i> III. <i>Cloelia Virgo.</i> I. The Tiber. II. The Sacra Via	361
LIX. DEMONSTRATIVES. INDIRECT DISCOURSE	365
Reading: I. <i>Decepta Aviditas.</i> II. <i>Fabia Gens.</i> The "Fabian Policy"	369
LX. DEMONSTRATIVES	371
Reading: <i>Menenius Agrippa.</i> Patricians and Plebeians	375
LXI. RELATIVE PRONOUN—INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE	378
Reading: <i>Ciceronis Iocus, Responsum Laconicum, Leonidae Aliud Responsum, Enni Poetae Imago.</i> A Roman Funeral	382
LXII. FOURTH DECLENSION	384
Reading: I. <i>Horatius Cocles.</i> II. <i>T. Manlius Torquatus.</i> The Senate	389
LXIII. FIFTH DECLENSION	393
Reading: <i>Proelium Acre cum Ariovisto, Rege Germanorum.</i> Roman Daily Life	397
LXIV. REVIEW LESSON	401
LXV. Reading: I. <i>Cn. Martius Coriolanus.</i> II. <i>L. Quinctius Cincinnatus.</i> III. <i>Virginia.</i> IV. <i>M. Atilius Regulus.</i> V. Common Words, Phrases, and Proverbs	406
Additional Reading Lessons: <i>Historia Romana</i>	415
Appendix	437
First and Second Year Word List	451
List of Illustrations	467
Latin-English Vocabulary	3
English-Latin Vocabulary	51
Index	63



GALBA PUZZLING OVER HIS ENGLISH.

INTRODUCTION

I. **Simplicity of Latin.** — Suppose Galba, a Roman boy, should take up the study of English and should come upon the words

fate	fat	far	fall
thou	though	thought	through
head	hear	heard	heart

Four different sounds of *a*, of *ou*, and of *ea* ! And suppose he then runs across

cat	cent	go	gem
-----	------	----	-----

with two different sounds for *c* and for *g*.

What a contrast with his native Latin where a vowel has only two similar sounds — short and long, and the pronunciation of a consonant seldom varies. When he finds that English letters are often silent, or have varying sounds, he is likely to get discouraged.

II. **The Latin Alphabet.** — Now see how much easier Latin pronunciation is for an American boy. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English except that it has no *j* or *w*. Each consonant has usually only one sound and each vowel only two — short and long.

1. *Consonants.* All the consonants which have only one sound in English have the same sound in Latin except the letter *v*, which is pronounced like our *w*.

All the consonants which have more than one sound in English have only *one* of these sounds in Latin.

Here are the Latin sounds of the consonants which have more than one sound in English :

This Latin letter	<i>Learn this</i> always has the English sound in	<i>Avoid this</i> never has the English sound in
c	cat	city
ch	chorus	charade
g	go	gem
s	sun	rose
t	time	motion
th	thyme	though, through
x	box	exact
i (consonant)	union	
u (consonant)	persuade	
v	like <i>w</i> in <i>wood</i>	very

2. *Latin vowels* also are like their English equivalents. Each has really only one quality of sound, that is, a short Latin vowel is like a long one, except that it is spoken in half the time. Here are the sounds of Latin vowels :

This Latin vowel	<i>Learn this</i> always has the English sound in	<i>Avoid this</i> never has the English sound in
long <i>ā</i> <i>ā, fās, vās, hāc, pāx</i>	art	fate
short <i>a</i> <i>ab, ac, ad, at, ars, arma,</i> <i>amat, casa, castra</i>	artistic	fat

This Latin vowel	<i>Learn this</i> always has the English sound in they	<i>Avoid this</i> never has the English sound in he
long ē ē, dē, nē, rēs, rēx, dēns, lātē		
short e ex, et, nec, sed, vel, bene	net	butter
long ī sī, sīc, quī, hī, dīc, vīdī	police	fine
short i in, quis, si'milis, diffi'cilis	pin	
long ō dō, mōs, vōx, prō, nōn, ōrō	old	move
short o ob, mox, quot, tot, quod	obey	stop
long ū tū, plūs, dūc, rūs, ūsū	rule	futile
short u sub, ut, dum, tuus, tumul'tus	full	mud

3. *Latin diphthongs* are pronounced like the separate vowels run together. They are always long, that is, they take as much time to pronounce as a long vowel does.

ae : as *ai* in *aisle*

prae, vae, laetae, aegrae, aequae, aetās

au : as *ou* in *out*

aut, aurum, laudō, paulō, gaudium

oe : as *oi* in *oil*
 poe'na, proe'lium, foe'dus, moe'nia
 eu : as *eu* in *feud*
 ceu, heu, Eurō'pa, Teu'tonī
 ei : as *ei* in *eight*
 hei



ARĒNA.

This is the Colosseum at Rome, the greatest arena in the world. Here about 50,000 people could watch the fights of gladiators and other so-called games.

EXERCISE

Pronounce the following words after the teacher :

arēna	cēnsus	Caesar	Cicerō
campus	pulchra	schola	iūs
chorus	silva	rosa	summās
iam	patientia	toga	Themis
terra	via	rēx	vōx
Athēnae	Galba	gēns	gesta

III. **Accent.** — Suppose the Roman boy Galba keeps on with his English and runs across the following words :

accent

object

present

all of which occur early in grammar.

At *present* he *objects* to the lesson, whose *object* is to *present accent* so that he can *accent* English words correctly. He takes his problem to his teacher, who tells him that you cannot tell the accent of these words until they are used in a sentence.

Once more Galba is struck with the greater simplicity of his native Latin, where accent, like pronunciation, is uniform. There are only two simple rules for Latin accent.

(1) In words of two syllables always accent the first syllable.

(2) In words of more than two syllables accent the next to the last syllable when it is long ; otherwise the preceding one.

IV. **Syllable Length.** — It is easy to tell long syllables in Latin, for they are long when they contain a long vowel, a diphthong, or a short vowel followed by two consonants. Otherwise they are usually short. In this book long vowels have a straight line over them, so that you can recognize them more readily.

EXERCISE

1. Turn back to section II and pronounce all the Latin words on pages xiv, xv, and xvi, paying special attention to accent.

2. Pronounce again the words at the bottom of page xvi, this time without the teacher's help.

V. **Syllabication.** — Now imagine Galba going on with his English and trying to learn syllabication. He runs across such divisions of words as the following :

Rom-any	Ro-man
log-i-cal	lo-gi-cian
rat-i-fy	ra-tion-al

Poor Galba will begin to get discouraged, for his native Latin syllabication is simple and uniform.



VILLA.

This shows the ruins of part of the villa of the Emperor Hadrian. The ruins cover 170 acres.

A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs. The following rules will help us divide words correctly.

1. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second : **a-mī-cus**, **au-di-ō**, **dī-xit**.

2. Two like consonants, next to each other, are separated :
vīl-la, ter-ra.

3. The last of two or more different consonants goes with the following vowel : **rēg-num, ar-ma, temp-tō.**

Exceptions: (a) If the last consonant of the group is **h, l, or r**, the last two consonants go with the following vowel : **tri-um-phō, a-grum, pū-bli-cus.**

(b) In compound words, the division comes between the original parts : **dē-scen-dō, cōn-sti-tu-ō, prō-scri-bō, pēn-in-su-la.**

EXERCISE

Divide the following words into syllables :

1. Apply rule 1 : **dominus, ager, animus, fāma, fuga, homō, nātūra, caput, liber, casa, dēsiderō.**

2. Apply rule 2 : **annus, bellum, oppidum, puella, difficilis, dissimilis.**

3. Apply rule 3 : **cōnsilium, victōria, silva, princeps, fortūna, diligentia, signum, magnus.**

4. Apply Exception (a) : **templō, frātribus, agricola.**

VI. Identical Words. — 1. When Galba takes up the study of English words, he is surprised and delighted to find how like the Latin many of them are. Not only are more than half our English words derived from Latin, but many words are identical in both languages.

Study the following Latin words, pronouncing them according to the rules you have just learned. They are all accented as in English.

animal	cōnsul	horror	pēninsula
arēna	dictātor	inventor	status
cēnsor	furor	labor	terror
cēnsus	genus	minor	toga
clāmor	honor	ōmen	tūtōr
ulterior	victor	vīlla	

2. Some Latin words are not translated by the same English form, but their meaning is usually so near the English that it is easily understood. After each Latin word in the following list is given its literal English



VILLA.

This shows the swimming pool in Hadrian's Villa. Besides this it had libraries, halls, courts, squares, baths, a basilica, and a stadium.

translation. Pronounce the words carefully. Then see if you can explain the meaning of each translation.

arbor, *tree*

impetus, *attack*

integer, *entire*

interim, *meanwhile*

locus, *a place*

miser, *wretched*

neuter, *neither*

pāstor, *shepherd*

plūs, *more*

sinis'ter, *left-hand*

speculā'tor, *a spy*

vesper, *evening*

vetō, *I forbid*

VII. Similar Words. — Besides identical words there is an enormous number of Latin words so like their English equivalents that their meaning is clear.

EXERCISE

Pronounce the following words in 1, 2, and 3, and translate them.

1. *Nouns.* Nouns have various endings, as you can see from this list.

calamitās	fortūna	necessitās	prūdentia
captīvus	glōria	officium	regiō
causa	herba	opīniō	religiō
columna	mātrimōnium	ōrnāmentum	respōnsum
difficultās	memoria	palma	rosa
disciplīna	multitūdō	pictūra	ruīna
experientia	nātiō	poēta	scientia
figūra	nātūra	prōvincia	senātus

2. *Adjectives.* The first form of a Latin adjective usually ends in s.

dīvīnus	longus
dubius	mortālis
extrēmus	prīvātus
firmus	sānus
horribilis	sēcūrus

3. *Verbs.* The first form of a Latin verb regularly ends in ō.

compellō	convertō	exclāmō	persuādeō
cōfidō	dēfendō	exclūdō	perturbō
cōfirmō	dēscendō	impediō	resistō
cōsiderō	errō	indūcō	respondeō
contendō	ēvādō	intrōducō	salūtō



COLUMNA.

Here are the remains of columns about the court of a Roman house in Pompeii.

VIII. Advantages of Latin. — One day Galba picked up an American newspaper and saw the headlines

HIDES BURN

DRIVES CLOSE

He wondered why any one should conceal a burn and who drove close to what. On reading the articles, however, he found that the first was about a fire in a tannery, while the second told of the finish of the Red Cross drives.

Once more Galba was struck with the advantages of Latin where such confusion could not possibly occur. This is because Latin has special endings which distinguish nouns, verbs, and other parts of speech. It also

has endings to show gender, number, and case of nouns, and person, mode, and tense of verbs.

IX. Inflection. — The change of form by means of these endings is called *inflection*. For nouns it is called *declension*, for verbs, *conjugation*. Inflection helps us see just what a Latin sentence means. It also lets us shift the emphasis more easily.

For instance, here is Galba saluting Seneca. English says *Galba salutes Seneca*. Latin says **Galba Senecam salūtat**. If we wished to emphasize that it is Seneca, not Caesar, that Galba is saluting, English has to say *It is Seneca that Galba is saluting*. But Latin merely puts Seneca in the emphatic place in the sentence: **Senecam Galba salūtat**. It can do this without changing the meaning because the letter **m**, not the position of the word, shows which noun is the object.

English can get this emphasis with pronouns, as in the sentence *Himself he cannot save*, but Latin has the advantage of inflection also for nouns.



GALBA SENECAM SALŪTAT.

EXERCISE

Pronounce the following sentences carefully and tell in each case who is saluting and who is saluted. Point out also which words are emphatic.

1. Galba Senecam salūtat.
2. Galbam Seneca salūtat.
3. Senecam Galba salūtat.
4. Seneca Galbam salūtat.

X. Cases. — From these examples you can see the importance of Latin endings. Each case has its own ending and when learned these make translation easy. English has three cases: nominative, possessive, and objective, but in nouns we cannot tell nominative and objective apart. To correspond to these Latin has the *nominative*, the *genitive*, and the *accusative*. It has also the *dative*, by which the English indirect object is expressed, and the *ablative*, which has various uses, especially with prepositions. These cases will be taken up gradually in the following lessons.

EXERCISE

Pronounce carefully the following sentences, and see if you can translate them. They are all in the present tense. Remember that the object ends in **m** and that the regular Latin order is (1) subject, (2) object, (3) verb. Latin has no articles, so you may supply these as you wish.

Animal errat.

Toga Senecam impedit.

Cōsul victōriam cōfirmat.

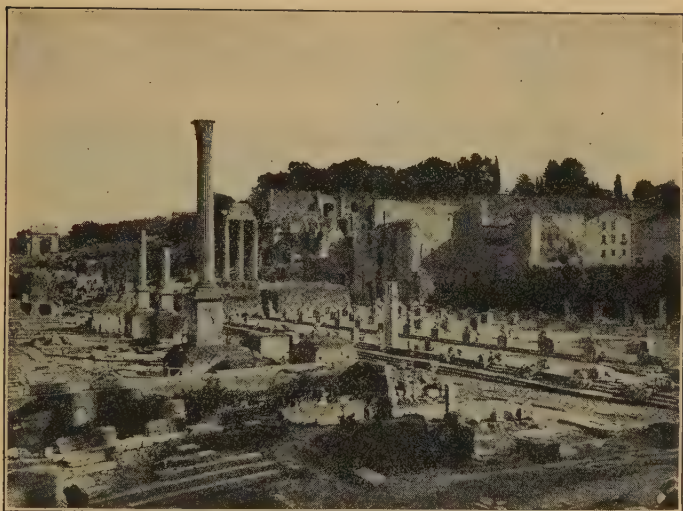
Cōsul prōvinciam occupat.

Victor villam dēfendit.

Terror Senecam convertit.

“Victōria!” exclāmat dictātor.

Columna forum dīvidit.



COLUMNA FORUM DIVIDIT.

This is one view of the Roman Forum, one of the most interesting places in the world. Many more pictures of it occur later in this book.

We must now take leave of Galba, letting him go on with his English as best he can, while we take up a systematic study of his native Latin. We can cheer ourselves at parting by the knowledge that our task is much easier than his.



TOGA LONGA. EST.

This was the street dress of a Roman boy. In the first picture in the Introduction Galba has laid aside his toga.

FIRST LATIN

LESSON I

FIRST DECLENSION

1. Nominative Singular (-a). — The *first declension* which we shall study has the nominative singular ending in **-a**. The part of a noun to which the ending is added is called the *base*¹: **toga** has for its base **tog-**, for its ending, **-a**.

Note the use of the nominative in the following sentences :

Toga longa est.

subject predicate
 adjective

The toga is long.

Ītalia pēninsula longa est.

subject predicate descriptive
 noun adjective

Italy is a long peninsula.

2. Word Order. — Generally a Latin sentence begins with the subject and ends with the verb. An unemphatic adjective follows its noun.

3. Definite and Indefinite Articles. — There is no word in Latin for *a*, *an*, or *the*. **Toga** may be translated *toga*, *a toga*, *the toga*, according to the sense.

¹ The base is obtained by dropping the termination of the genitive singular. (See page 7.)

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
Īta'lia	<i>Italy</i>	Italian
pēnīn'sula	<i>peninsula</i>	peninsular
pictū'ra	<i>picture</i>	picturesque
to'ga	<i>toga</i> (a Roman garment)	togaed
vi'a	<i>road, way</i>	viaduct
bo'na (feminine)	<i>good</i>	bonus
lon'ga (fem.)	<i>long</i>	longitude
mag'na (fem.)	<i>great, large</i>	magnify
pul'chra (fem.)	<i>beautiful</i>	pulchritude
est	<i>is</i> (<i>he is, she is, it is</i>)	
et	<i>and</i>	etc.

I. Oral.

EXERCISES

(a) The base of the noun **pictūra** is **pictūr-**; of **via**, **vi-**; of the adjective **bona**, **bon-**; of **longa**, **long-**. Remembering how to get the base of a noun, give the base of every other noun and adjective in the vocabulary.

(b) The noun **pictūra** is divided into syllables as follows: **pic-tū-ra**; **pēninsula** is **pēn-in-su-la** (see section V, exception (b)); **bona**, **bo-na**; **longa**, **lon-ga**. Recalling the rules in section V, divide into syllables the other nouns and adjectives of the vocabulary.

(c) Pronounce carefully the following words. Remembering the rules in sections III and IV, indicate which syllable must be accented in each word, and give the reason why.

pēninsula, toga, via, pictūra, via longa, pictūra pulchra, toga longa, pēninsula magna, toga bona et pulchra.

(d) Translate into English the nouns and phrases of (c), using (1) the definite article *the*; (2) the indefinite article *a* or *an*.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Pronounce carefully and translate into English :

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Pēnīnsula magna est. | 6. Ītalia pulchra est. |
| 2. Via longa est. | 7. Pictūra magna pulchra est. |
| 3. Toga magna est. | 8. Via longa et pulchra est. |
| 4. Pictūra pulchra est. | 9. Toga bona et longa est. |
| 5. Via magna est. | 10. Ītalia pēnīnsula longa est. |



VIA LONGA ET PULCHRA EST.

(b) Point out in II (a) (1) all the subjects ; (2) the predicate nouns ; (3) the predicate adjectives ; (4) the descriptive adjectives.

(c) Replace the dashes by appropriate nouns :

1. — bona est. 2. — magna est. 3. — longa est.
4. — pulchra est.

(d) Complete each sentence with an adjective :

1. Ītalia — est. 2. Toga — est. 3. Via — est.
4. Pictūra — est. 5. Pēninsula — est.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

- (a) 1. A road ; the road. 2. The peninsula ; a peninsula.
3. A picture ; the picture. 4. A long toga. 5. The large peninsula.
6. Beautiful Italy. 7. A good picture.

- (b) 1. The picture is good. 6. The toga is long and beautiful.
2. The peninsula is large.
3. The road is long. 7. A long toga is good.
4. The good road is long. 8. Italy is a large and long peninsula.
5. The picture is large.



A ROMAN BOY.

Galba belongs to the upper classes. This is a peasant lad.

READING LESSON¹

The following sentences contain Latin words of the first declension which are very like their English equivalents. Pronounce them carefully and see if you can translate them without any help :

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Ītalia pēninsula est. | 6. Fortūna timida est. |
| 2. Pēninsula longa est. | 7. Causa iūsta est. |
| 3. Rōma antīqua est. | 8. Glōria aeterna est. |
| 4. Prōvincia vāsta est. | 9. Nātūra fēcunda est. |
| 5. Victōria incerta est. | 10. Colōnia Rōmāna est. |

COLLATERAL READING

ROMAN CHILDREN'S GARMENTS

From his birth until he was seven years old, a young Roman was called *īnfāns* (that is, unable to talk), then *puer* till he became of age, *adulēscēns*, at seventeen. Children of free birth wore at home the *tunica*, a short-sleeved woolen garment falling to the knees, and outdoors the *toga prae-texta* (see page xxvi), a white woolen blanket (*toga*) bordered with a purplish band (*praetexta*) and worn in graceful folds about the body over the *tunica*.

At seventeen, boys would discard the *toga prae-texta* for the common *toga*, without any band.

Till boys were of age, and girls were married, they wore the *bullā*, a round or heart-shaped locket (see page xxvi) suspended from a necklace and holding amulets as a charm against the evil eye.

¹ The Reading Lessons and Collateral Readings may be omitted by teachers who wish a briefer course. See Preface.



CASA AGRICOLAE PARVA EST.

LESSON II

FIRST DECLENSION

4. Genitive Singular (-ae). — The genitive singular of the first declension is formed by replacing final **-a** of the nominative by **-ae**.

Note the use of the genitive (possessive) case in the following sentences :

Casa agricolae parva est.	<i>The farmer's cottage</i>
<small>genitive case</small>	<i>is small.</i>

Diligentia puellae parvae magna est.	<i>The diligence of the</i>
<small>genitive descriptive adjective</small>	<i>little girl is great.</i>

5. Gender. — Nouns of the first declension are feminine except a few which are obviously masculine from their meaning ; as **agricola**, *farmer* ; **poëta**, *poet*.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
agri'cola, -ae ¹	<i>farmer</i>	agriculture
ca'sa, -ae	<i>cottage</i>	
diligen'tia, -ae	<i>diligence, industry, care</i>	diligent
fā'ma, -ae	<i>fame, reputation</i>	famous

¹ In the vocabularies the genitive singular ending is placed after the nominative to indicate the declension. It must always be learned with the nominative singular.

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
Gal'ba, -ae	<i>Galba</i> (a boy's proper name)	
Octā'via, -ae	<i>Octavia</i> (a girl's proper name)	
poē'ta, -ae	<i>poet</i>	poetical
puel'la, -ae	<i>girl</i>	
vī'ta, -ae	<i>life</i>	vital
par'va, -ae (fem.)	<i>small, little</i>	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Give the base of every word in the vocabulary and divide each one into syllables, indicating which syllable must be accented.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate into good English :

1. Toga Galbae pulchra est.
2. Toga poëtae longa est.
3. Casa Octāviae pulchra est.
4. Fāma Ītalīae magna est.
5. Vīta agricolae longa est.
6. Diligentia puellae parvae magna est.
7. Pictūra Octāviae pulchra est.
8. Fāma poëtae parva est.

(c) Explain each case in the first four sentences of (b) and point out the examples of genitive cases in the other sentences.

(d) Give the genitive singular of :

agricola, toga, pictūra, fāma, puella, poëta, vīta longa, pictūra pulchra, fāma bona, via parva, toga magna, puella bona, Ītalīa pulchra, pēnīnsula longa.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Replace the dash by a noun in the genitive and translate :

1. Casa —.
2. Pictūra —.
3. Vīta —.
4. Toga —.
5. Fāma —.
6. Diligentia —.

(b) Review. Add the proper endings: 1. Cas— (subject) Galb— (possessive case) magn— (predicate) est. 2. Pictūr— (subject) puell— (possessive case) pulchr— (predicate) est. 3. Dīligenti— (subject) agricol— (possessive case) magn— (predicate) est. 4. Tog— (subject) poēt— (possessive case) long— (predicate) est.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Italy's fame is great. | 5. The little girl's picture is |
| 2. A farmer's life is long. | beautiful. |
| 3. Octavia's diligence is great. | 6. The poet's toga is long. |
| 4. Galba's picture is good. | 7. Galba's cottage is large. |

READING LESSON

OCTĀVIA ET AUGUSTA

Octāvia puella est. Puella Rōmāna (*Roman*) est. Octāvia parva est. Puella parva bona est. Octāvia puella pulchra est. Augusta quoque (*also, too*) puella bona et pulchra est. Augusta amīca (*friend, f.*) Octāviae est.

Domina (*lady of the house*) bona est. Serva (*slave, f.*) quoque bona est. Octāvia filia (*daughter*) dominae est. Augusta filia servae est. Octāvia amīca bona Augustae parvae est. Filia servae amīca filiae dominae est.

COLLATERAL READING

ROMAN SLAVERY

In ancient times slaves were commonly not of a different color or race from their masters. . . . Roman slaves came in large part from the cultured East ; and some of them became teachers, secretaries, and stewards. But others came

from wild barbarian tribes; and the most unfortunate of these were made savage herdsmen or branded and shackled workers, clothed in rags and herded at night into underground dungeons on the master's estate. . . .

. . . Slaves rarely left families. If they had children, the master "exposed" the infants, since it was easier and more convenient to buy a new slave than to rear one . . . for slaves were made cheap by wars of conquest.



ROMAN SLAVES.

This shows the three tiers of galley slaves, chained to their oars and rowing the boat shown on page 37.

In the closing period of the Roman Republic, there grew up a slavery beyond all parallel in extent and in horror. . . .

Under the Empire, slavery grew milder. Emancipation became so common that faithful household slaves were freed commonly after six years' service.

LESSON III

SUBJECT, PREDICATE, AND OBJECT

6. Agreement of Subject and Verb. — A Latin verb always shows by its ending the person and number of its subject. The verbal ending *ō*, for example, indicates that the subject is in the first person, singular (the pronoun, *I*).

Laudō.

I praise, I do praise, I am praising.

Nōn laudō.

I do not praise, I am not praising.



PICTŪRAM LAUDŌ.

This is a Roman festival in which boys and girls are taking part.

Note (a) that the English auxiliary *do* (*I do praise, do I praise? I do not praise*) has no equivalent in Latin;

(b) that the Latin adverb *nōn* is placed before the word it modifies.

7. Accusative Singular (-am). — The accusative singular of the first declension is formed by replacing the ending **-ae** of the genitive singular by **-am**.

Note the use of the accusative (objective) in the following sentences :

Pictūram laudō.

direct object

*I praise, I do praise, I am
praising the picture.*

Pictūram parvam nōn laudō.

direct descriptive
object adjective

*I do not praise, I am not
praising the small picture.*

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
disci'pula, -ae	pupil (fem.)	disciple
sil'va, -ae	forest	silvan
lā'ta, -ae (fem.)	wide, broad	latitude
nōn	not	nonsense
quo'que	also, too	
sed	but	
a'mō	<i>I like or I love, I do like, I am liking</i>	amiable
lau'dō	<i>I praise, I do praise, I am praising</i>	laudable
mōn'strō	<i>I show, I do show, I am showing</i>	demonstrate
vo'cō	<i>I call, I do call, I am calling</i>	vocal

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Vitam agricolae amō.

2. Diligentiam agricolae laudō.

3. Diligentiam discipulae quoque laudō.
4. Poētam, nōn agricolam, vocō.
5. Silvam magnam amō.
6. Octāviam vocō; parvam¹ discipulam nōn vocō.
7. Vitam amō sed vīta nōn longa est; longam vitam amō.
8. Viam mōnstrō; longam viam nōn mōnstrō; lātā viam mōnstrō; via lāta sed nōn longa est.

(b) Explain each case in sentences 1 and 8, and point out the direct objects (accusatives) in the other sentences.

(c) Give the genitive and accusative singular of
silva, vīta, puella, discipula, via lāta, vīta longa, puella pulchra, discipula bona.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Make the following sentences negative and translate:

1. Via lāta est.
2. Puellam parvam amō.
3. Silva magna est.
4. Discipulam bonam laudō.

(b) Supply a suitable verb and translate:

1. Silva parva —.
2. Silvam —.
3. Viam nōn —.
4. Octāvia pulchra —.
5. Discipulam bonam —.
6. Vīta nōn longa —.

(c) Review. Add the proper endings:

1. Tog— pulchr— est.
2. Puell— bon— vocō.
3. Pietūr— laudō.
4. Vit— amō.
5. Vit— nōn long— est.
6. Vi— lāt— nōn mōnstrō.
7. Octāvi— puell— parv— est.

¹ The adjectives precede the nouns in sentences 6, 7, and 8 because they are used emphatically (see § 2).



OCTĀVIA ET AUGUSTA.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) I love, I am loving, I do love, I praise, I am calling, I do show, I do not praise, I am not calling, I do not like, I am not showing.

(b) 1. I like the forest.

2. I do not like a large forest ; I like a small forest.

3. The forest is small.

4. I am calling Octavia.

5. I praise the good pupil (fem.).

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 6. I also praise Octavia's diligence. | 10. The road is not long but wide. |
| 7. Life is long; I like life. | 11. I am praising Galba's cottage. |
| 8. I show the long road. | |
| 9. I do not like a long road. | 12. I am also showing the poet's beautiful cottage. |

READING LESSON

AMĪCITIA (*friendship*) ET DĪLIGENTIA

Octāvia amīca Augustae est. Augusta amīca cāra (*dear*) Octāviae est. Octāvia Augustam amat (*likes*). Augusta quoque Octāviam amat. Octāvia discipula bona est. Augusta quoque discipula bona est. Quis (*who*) dīligentiam discipulae bonae nōn laudat (*does not praise*)? Quis amīcitiam et dīligentiam nōn laudat?

Serva dominam bonam amat (*likes*). Domina servam bonam laudat. Dīligentiam magnam servae bonae laudat.

COLLATERAL READING

ROMAN EDUCATION

Education was elementary. Until seven, the children were in the mothers' care. After that age, boys of the upper classes went to a private school, taught usually by some Greek slave. As in Greece, the pupil was attended by a trusted servant of his own family called a "pedagogue." He learned merely to read, write, and, in a limited degree, to compute with Roman numerals.

The only textbook was the Laws of the Twelve Tables (so called because they were engraved on twelve stone tables) which were learned by heart.

Physical training was found in athletic games in the CAMPUS MARTIUS (Field of Mars) where the young Romans contended in running, wrestling, and in the use of the spear, sword, and javelin.

LESSON IV

FIRST CONJUGATION

8. Dative Singular (-ae). — The dative singular of the first declension ends in **-ae**, like the genitive singular. Note the use of the dative (indirect object) in the following sentences :

Puellae viam mōnstrō.

indirect
object

I show the girl the way.

Puellae parvae viam mōnstrō.

indirect descriptive
object adjective

I show the way to the little girl.

Note the word order : the indirect object (dative) usually precedes the direct object (accusative). This sometimes helps us tell genitive and dative apart, since a genitive usually follows the noun it modifies.

Puellae pictūram mōnstrō.

I show the girl the picture.

Pictūram puellae mōnstrō.

I show (somebody) the girl's picture.

9. The Third Person Singular of the Present Indicative of the First Conjugation ends in -at.

FIRST PERSON SINGULAR

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR

Laudō, I praise

Laudat, he or she praises

Mōnstrō, I show

Mōnstrat, he or she shows

Note (a) that the letter t is the characteristic ending of the third person singular of every tense in the active voice ; (b) that every person of a Latin tense has a special ending. Therefore personal pronoun subjects are rarely used except for emphasis or contrast.



PUELLAE PARVAE VIAM MŌNSTRŌ.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
<i>amī'ca, -ae</i>	<i>friend (fem.)</i>	amicable
<i>do'mina, -ae</i>	<i>lady of the house, mistress</i>	dominate
<i>fā'bula, -ae</i>	<i>story, tale</i>	fable
<i>fi'lia, -ae</i>	<i>daughter</i>	filial
<i>nau'ta, -ae (masc.)</i>	<i>sailor</i>	nautical
<i>pecū'nia, -ae</i>	<i>money</i>	pecuniary

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
ro'sa, -ae	<i>rose</i>	roseate
ser'va, -ae	<i>slave (fem.)</i>	servile
cā'ra, -ae (fem.)	<i>dear</i>	caress
me'a, -ae (fem.)	<i>my</i>	
dō	<i>I give, I do give, I am giving</i>	
dat	<i>he gives, he does give, he is giving</i>	dative
nār'rō	<i>I tell, I do tell, I am telling</i>	narrate
nār'rat	<i>he tells, he does tell, he is telling</i>	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) (1) Give the base of each of the following words :

vita, rosa, pecunia, fabula, serva, agricola, fama, nauta, cara, magna, lata.

(2) Mark the long vowel, if there is any, in each of these words and divide them into syllables, indicating the syllable which must be accented.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Puellae rosam dō.
2. Serva puellae parvae rosam pulchram dat.
3. Octāvia filiae poētae rosam dat.
4. Agricola nautae viam mōnstrat.
5. Nauta agricolae pecūniam nōn dat.
6. Filiae cārae meae pecūniam dō.
7. Poēta Octāviae fābulam nārrat.
8. Discipulae bonae fābulam nārrō.
9. Servae parvae viam mōnstrō.
10. Puella parva amīcae cārae fābulam longam nārrat.

(c) Explain each case in the first three sentences of (b) and point out all the indirect objects (datives) in the other sentences.

(d) Give the genitive, dative, and accusative singular of :

fābula, amīca, rosa, puella, serva, domina, nauta, via lāta, filia cāra mea, serva parva, domina bona, pēninsula magna.



PECŪNIA.

These are Roman coins of the time of Caesar. Early Roman money is described at the end of this lesson.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) With **mōnstrō**, *I show*, and **mōnstrat**, *he or she shows*, as a model, give the third person singular of the present indicative of the following verb forms, and translate: **amō**, **laudō**, **nārrō**, **vocō**, **dō**; give also the negative form of the first and third persons of the same, and translate.

(b) Review. Add the proper endings:

1. Serv— (indirect object) cas— (direct object) mōnstrō.
2. Naut— (subject) poēt— (indirect object) fābul— (direct object) nārrat.
3. Octāvi— (subject) puell— (indirect object) vi— (direct object) mōnstrat.
4. Domin— (subject)

fili— (indirect object) agricol— (possessive case) pecūni— (direct object) dat.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels.

(a) I call, he calls, I do not call, he does not call, she praises, I praise, she is not praising, I am not praising, I give, I do not give, he is giving, he does not give, she is not giving.

(b) 1. I show my cottage to the poet.

2. The little girl shows the cottage to a friend (fem.).

3. I tell a story to the farmer.

4. The poet's daughter gives (to) Octavia a rose.

5. I show the way to the little girl.

6. The lady of the house is telling the story to a dear friend.

7. I am giving money to the sailor.

8. I am not telling a story to the pupil.

9. The lady of the house gives money to the good slave.

10. The farmer does not give the beautiful rose to my dear daughter.

READING LESSON

POĒTA ET NAUTA

Poēta puellae parvae fābulam nārrat. Fābula puellam dēlectat (*delights, pleases*). Puella poētae rosam dat. Rosa poētam dēlectat. Poēta rosam laudat.

Stella (*star*) quoque poētam dēlectat. Poēta stellam quoque laudat. Rosam et stellam amat.

Nauta quoque stellam amat. Stella nautae viam rēctam (*right*) mōnstrat. Nauta stellam laudat. Stella poētam et nautam dēlectat.

COLLATERAL READING

EARLY ROMAN MONEY

The oldest Roman word for money (*pecūnia*, from which comes our word *pecuniary*) came from the word for herd (*pecus*). This points to a time when payments were made chiefly in cattle. About 400 B.C., rude blocks of copper were stamped with the figure of an ox; and before 300 B.C., under the influence of Greece, Rome adopted true copper coins in form of circular discs. Even earlier, the Romans had "estimated" in copper (*aes*), counting by the pound weight; and now they made their copper coins each one twelfth of a pound. Such a coin was an "uncia," — one ounce (Troy weight). Silver was not used either for money or for household purposes until after the union of Italy.

LESSON V

FIRST DECLENSION

10. The Ablative Case. — We have seen that the Latin nominative, genitive, accusative, and dative



CUM DILIGENTIĀ LABŌRŌ.

correspond to the English nominative, possessive, objective, and indirect object.

The ablative has no single corresponding case in English. It is used with or without prepositions where

English would use *with, from, by, or in*. Thus it usually contains an idea of accompaniment (with), separation (from), means (by), or place where (in).

11. Formation of Ablative (-ā). — The ablative singular of the first declension is formed by replacing the ending -ae of the genitive singular by -ā.

Note the uses of the ablative in the following sentences :

Cum diligentiā labōrō.	<i>I work with diligence.</i>
Cum agricolā labōrō.	<i>I work with the farmer.</i>
Nauta ab insulā parvā nāvigat.	<i>The sailor sails from the small island.</i>
Rōma in Italiā est.	<i>Rome is in Italy.</i>

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
in'sula, -ae	<i>island</i>	insular
Rō'ma, -ae	<i>Rome</i>	Roman
ā, ab ¹	<i>from</i>	absent
cum	<i>with</i>	vade mecum
in	<i>in, on</i>	inlay, inscribe
labō'rō	<i>I work</i>	labor
labō'rat	<i>he, she, it works</i>	
nā'vigō	<i>I sail</i>	navigate
nā'vigat	<i>he, she, it sails</i>	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and give all the possible meanings of :

rosa, pecūniam, nautae, casā, Italiāe, puellam, servā.

¹ The preposition ā is used before consonants; ab must be used before vowels and h; it may be used before most consonants.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Rōma in Ītaliā est.
2. Casa agricolae nōn in silvā est.
3. Nauta ab ĩnsulā magnā nāvigat.
4. Cum nautā ab Ītaliā nāvigō.
5. Agricola nōn nāvigat ; vītam nautae nōn amat.



RŌMA IN ĪTALIĀ EST.

This is a view of Rome taken from the Vatican Palace, adjoining St. Peter's.

6. Octāvia in casā meā est, sed filiamea in casā Octāviae est.
7. Domina cum servā bonā in casā labōrat.
8. Agricola cum diligentiā labōrat, sed (cum ¹) magnā diligentiā nōn labōrō.
9. Puella parva nōn in casā est ; in viā est.

¹ The preposition **cum** is generally omitted when its object, expressing manner, is modified by an adjective.

(c) Explain each case in the first four sentences of (b), and point out all the ablatives in the other sentences.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Give the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular of :

insula, nauta, vīta, silva magna, serva parva.

(b) Supply the proper verb in the present indicative :

1. Puella cum diligentīā ——. 2. Octāvia nōn in casā agricolae est. 3. Nauta ab Italiā venit. 4. Domina servam amat. 5. Filiam cāram meam amat.

(c) Review. Add the proper endings :

1. In silva. 2. Ā casa. 3. Cum domina. 4. In insula. 5. Nauta (subject) in Italia est. 6. Serva (subject) cum diligenti labōrat.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) I work, I show, I give, I am sailing, I do call, I praise, she likes, I do not call, he is not sailing, I am not working, she works.

(b) 1. I like a small rose.

2. A small rose is beautiful.

3. I praise Rome's fame.

4. The little girl is in the forest.

5. I am working with diligence.

6. The lady of the house is on (in) the road.

7. The sailor does not work with a farmer's diligence.

8. Octavia is sailing from Italy.

9. I do not sail from the small island.

10. The slave is working with the good mistress.

READING LESSON

OCTĀVIA LABŌRAT

Octāvia filia agricolae est. Casa agricolae in insulā parvā est. Schola (*school*) prope (*near*, with accusative) casam puellae est. Via ā casā

ad (*to*, with accusative) scholam nōn longa est. Octāvia nōn in casā est; nōn in viā est. In scholā cum amīcā est. Scholam amat. In scholā laeta (*joyful*) est. Est discipula bona. Octāvia cum agricolā saepe (*often*) labōrat. Cum diligentīā labōrat. Agricola diligentiam magnam Octāviae laudat.



OCTĀVIA IN SCHOLĀ CUM AMĪCĀ EST.

COLLATERAL READING

ROMAN AGRICULTURE, 367–200 B.C.

From 367 to about 200 B.C. is the period of greatest Roman vigor. . . . The Roman citizens, in the main, patrician or plebeian by descent, were still yeomen farmers, who worked hard and lived plainly. . . . Each farmer tilled his few acres with his own hands and the help of his own sons. Every eighth day he came to the city with a load of produce for the “market,” — wheat, barley, garden vegetables, fruit, horses, cattle, sheep, or hogs. . . .

There was little wealth and little extreme poverty. . . . Manius Curio, the conqueror of the Samnites, and of Pyrrhus, was a peasant. Though he had “triumphed” thrice, he continued to live in a cottage on a little three-acre plot which

he tilled with his own hands. Here the Samnite ambassadors found him dressing turnips in the chimney corner, when they came to offer him a large present of gold. Curio refused the gift: "A man," said he, "who can be content with this supper hath no need of gold; and I count it as a glory, not to possess wealth, but to rule those who do."

LESSON VI

REVIEW LESSON

12. The First Declension. — Below is given the model for the singular of the first declension. When we give the forms of a noun or an adjective in this order, we are said to *decline* it.

	Silva Magna	ENDINGS
	BASE: silv- magn-	
Nominative:	<i>silva magna, the great forest</i>	-a
Genitive:	<i>silvae magnae, of the great forest</i>	-ae
Dative:	<i>silvae magnae, to the great forest</i>	-ae
Accusative:	<i>silvam magnam, the great forest</i>	-am
Ablative:	<i>silvā magnā, with, by, from, in, etc. the great forest</i>	-ā

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Translate into English the following words:

1. Nouns

agricola	fābula	pecūnia	rosa
amīca	fāma	pēninsula	serva
casa	fīlia	pictūra	silva
dīligentia	īnsula	poēta	toga
discipula	ītalia	puella	via
domina	nauta	Rōma	vīta

2. Adjectives (feminine form)

bona	lāta	magna	parva
cāra	longa	mea	pulchra

3. *Verbs*

amō	est	laudō	nārrō
dō	labōrō	mōnstrō	nāvigō
	vocō		

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

ā, ab	cum	et	in
	quoque	sed	



SILVA MAGNA.

This is the pine forest near Ravenna, the most famous wood in Italy.

(b) Indicate which syllable must be accented in each of the words in (a), and tell why. See page xvii.

(c) Indicate all the masculine nouns in (a) 1.

(d) Answer the following questions and illustrate :

1. What is the characteristic vowel of the first declension?
2. What is the final letter of the accusative singular?

3. What cases does the ending **-ae** indicate?
4. How is possession expressed (a) in English; (b) in Latin?
5. In what case do you put the indirect object?
6. What case does the ending **-ā** indicate?
7. What case does the preposition **cum** require?
8. Name two other prepositions used with the ablative.
9. How are the articles *the* and *a* (or *an*) rendered into Latin?
10. What is the characteristic ending (a) of the first person singular of the present indicative of *any* Latin active verb; (b) of the third person singular?
11. What Latin words are suggested by the following English words: fame, demonstration, filial, labor, latitude, longitude, magnify, navigation, vocal, silvan, poetic?
12. What do these English words mean? (Consult an English dictionary if you do not know their meanings.)

II. Written.

(a) Decline in the singular: (1) two of the nouns in I (a) 1;

(2) *vīta mea*; *Ītalia pulchra*.

(b) Give the third person singular of the verb forms in I (a) 3.

(c) Translate into Latin the following words, marking all long vowels:

1. Nouns

cottage	girl	money	rose
daughter	industry	peninsula	sailor
diligence	island	picture	slave (fem.)
fame	Italy	poet	story
farmer	lady of the house	pupil (fem.)	toga
forest	life	road	way
friend (fem.)	mistress	Rome	



THE ROMAN FORUM.

Here are two more views of the Forum to compare with the one toward the end of the Introduction. The upper view shows the Forum in 1858 before excavations were begun. Below is the same general view as it appears to-day. In the foreground is some of the original pavement of the Via Sacra.

2. *Adjectives (feminine form)*

beautiful	great	small	large	long
dear	good	wide	little	my

3. *Verbs*

I call	I like	I sail	I show
I give	I praise	he (she, it) is	I tell
	I work		

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

also	in	with
and	on	too
but	from	not

READING LESSON

I

RŌMA ET ĪTALIA

Rōma in Ītaliā est. Rōma magna et nōta (*famous*) est. Rōma domina Ītaliae est. Via Appia¹ via Rōmāna est. Via Sacra² quoque via nōta est. Via Appia longa est sed Via Sacra nōn longa est.

Ītalia pēninsula est. Ītalia longa sed nōn lāta terra (*country*) est. Ītalia domina Eurōpae et Asiae et Āfricae est. Glōria (*glory*) Ītaliae aeterna (*eternal*) est. Poēta glōriam Ītaliae laudat.

II

PATRIA (The Native Land)

Rōma patria poētae est. Poēta patriam amat. Glōria patriae poētam dēlectat. Poēta Ītaliā cantat (*sings of*). Glōriam Ītaliae laudat. Poēta patriae glōriam magnam dat.

¹ The Appian Way. See Collateral Reading, next page.

² The Sacred Way led from the Palatine Hill through the Forum (originally a market place) to the Capitol.

Poēta fāmam amat. Patria poētae glōriam magnam dat. Glōria poētae aeterna est. Poēta fāmam aeternam dēsīderat (*longs for*). Fāmam poētae laudō.

Patriam amō. Glōriam patriae dēsīderō (*I long for*) et laudō. Patriae vītam meam dō. Agricola patriam amat. Agricola pecūniam et terram (*land*) quoque amat. Agricola parsimōniā (*thrift*) et diligentīā ¹ pecūniam parat (*prepares, makes*).



VIA APPIA.

The Appian Way runs between the houses in the foreground past the Tomb of Caecilia Metella, the finest of the old sepulchral monuments that used to line this road.

COLLATERAL READING

THE VIA APPIA

The Via Appia, built by Appius Claudius about 300 years B.C., starts from Porta San Sebastiano, the southern gate of

¹ *parsimōniā et diligentīā*, expressing the means by which something is done, are in the ablative case without any preposition.



THE ALBAN HILLS.

The Appian Way passes over the shoulder of these hills on its way to
Naples.

Rome, and leads toward Naples. For the first 65 miles it runs as straight as a taut string, until it reaches the town of Terracina, where it passes under the cliff of Monte Sant' Angelo that overhangs the sea.

The Romans had to chisel off part of the rock to make space for the roadbed. After passing this point, it makes its first bend and then goes to Naples.



BLIND OLD APPIUS CLAUDIUS ENTERING THE SENATE.

When you leave the eternal city on this classic road, you pass at first along a wonderful array of old sepulchral monuments; then you climb up the Alban Hills, extinct volcanoes of prehistoric times, and from there you gradually descend upon a great plain, some 30 miles from Rome, known to history as the Pontine Marshes. . ." (*The Story and the Legends of the Pontine Marshes*, by Don Gelasio Caetani. *The National Geographic Magazine*, April 1924.)

LESSON VII

FIRST DECLENSION. FIRST CONJUGATION. ESSE

13. The Nominative Plural of the first declension ends in **-ae**. It is formed like the genitive singular.

Note the use of the nominative plural in the second example below :

Toga alba pulchra est. <small>subject descrip- predicate</small> <small> tive ad- adjective</small> <small> jective</small>	<i>A white toga is beautiful.</i>
--	-----------------------------------

Togae albae pulchrae sunt. <small>subject descrip- predicate</small> <small> tive ad- adjective</small> <small> jective</small>	<i>White togas are beautiful.</i>
--	-----------------------------------

14. The Third Person Plural of the present indicative of the first conjugation ends in **-ant**.

Nauta nāvigat.	<i>The sailor sails.</i>
-----------------------	--------------------------

Nautae nāvigant.	<i>The sailors sail.</i>
-------------------------	--------------------------

Note that **-nt** is the characteristic ending of the third person plural of *all* the tenses of *any* Latin active verb.

15. Present Indicative of the irregular verb **esse**, *to be*.

(Ego) sum in Ītaliā	<i>I am</i> in Italy.
(Tū) es in Ītaliā	<i>You are</i> in Italy.
(Is, m.) est in Ītaliā	<i>He is</i> in Italy.
(Nōs) sumus in Ītaliā	<i>We are</i> in Italy.
(Vōs) estis in Ītaliā	<i>You are</i> in Italy.
(Eī, m.) sunt in Ītaliā	<i>They are</i> in Italy.

Note (a) that the personal pronoun subjects are generally omitted in Latin. They are required only to express emphasis or contrast.

(b) In Latin the form *tū* is always used when addressing a single individual, whoever he may be.



NAUTAE NĀVIGANT.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
<i>in'cola, -ae (masc.)</i>	<i>inhabitant</i>	colony
<i>rēgi'na, -ae</i>	<i>queen</i>	
<i>al'ba, -ae (fem.)</i>	<i>white</i>	albino
<i>lae'ta, -ae (fem.)</i>	<i>joyful</i>	
<i>tu'a, -ae (fem.)</i>	<i>your (thy)</i>	
<i>sem'per</i>	<i>always</i>	sempiternal
<i>es'se</i>	<i>to be</i>	essence
<i>abes'se</i>	<i>to be away, to be absent</i>	absent
<i>ab'sum, etc.</i>	<i>I am away, I am absent</i>	
<i>ades'se</i>	<i>to be present, to be here</i>	
<i>ad'sum, etc.</i>	<i>I am present, I am here</i>	
<i>labō'rant</i>	<i>they work</i>	labor
<i>mōn'strant</i>	<i>they show</i>	demonstrate
<i>nā'vigant</i>	<i>they sail</i>	navigate

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and translate the following verb forms :
est, sunt, sumus, es, adsum, abestis, ades, absunt.
 (Model: **est** is the third person singular of the present indicative of the verb **esse** ; it is translated by *he, she, or it is.*)

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Toga alba et longa est ; togae albae et longae sunt.

2. Rēgīna laeta est ;
 rēgīnae laetae sunt.

3. Agricola labōrat ;
 agricolae labōrant.

4. Nauta ab īnsulā
 magnā nāvigat ; nautae
 ab Ītaliā nāvigant.

5. Nōn in Ītaliā sumus.

6. Nōn incola Ītaliae
 sum.

7. Laeta puella semper
 es ; laetae puellae semper
 estis.

8. Incolae Ītaliae cum
 diligentiā labōrant.



NAUTA AB ĪNSULĀ MAGNĀ NĀVIGAT.

9. Semper nautae absunt et agricolae adsunt.

10. Filiae tuae viam nautae mōnstrant.

(c) Point out in (b) the nouns in **-ae** which are
 (1) in the nominative plural ; (2) in the genitive singular ; (3) in the dative singular.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Give all the singular cases and the nominative plural of :

rēgīna, incola, silva, toga alba, puella laeta, filia cāra tua.

(b) Give the third persons singular and plural of :

amō, laudō, vocō, dō, labōrō, nāvigō, nārrō, mōnstrō.

(c) Give the complete present indicative of :

1. Ego in casā sum. 2. Semper absum. 3. Semper adsum.

(d) Put in the plural and translate :

1. Silva magna est. 2. Via nōn longa sed lāta est.
3. Agricola nōn nāvigat. 4. Serva labōrat. 5. Domina bona nōn adest.

(e) Put the italicized words in the singular and translate :

1. *Rosae pulchrae sunt.* 2. *Rēgīnae* nōn semper *laetae sunt.* 3. *Nautae* vītam agricolae *laudant.* 4. *Puellae parvae* rēgīnam *amant.* 5. *Filiae meae* semper *adsunt.*

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, omitting subject pronouns and marking all long vowels :

(a) We are ; I am ; he is ; they are ; you are (thou art) ; you are ; I am present ; they are absent.

(b) 1. I am not a sailor.

2. I do not like a sailor's life.

3. A sailor is always away.

4. I like your (thy) white toga ; white togas are always beautiful.

5. We are not on (in) an island.

6. The inhabitants are present ; they are always working.

7. You are (Thou art) a good girl ; you are good girls.

8. Queens are not always joyful.

9. The girls of the island are beautiful.

10. The poets are praising the queen of Italy.
11. Farmers always work with diligence.
12. The sailors do not sail from Italy; they sail from a small island.

READING LESSON

Amicae Cārae Octāviae



SCHOLA RŌMĀNA.

- Quis (*who*) es?
- Octāvia sum.
- Quae (*who*) amicae tuae sunt?
- Amicae meae Augusta et Iūlia sunt.
- Estisne¹ discipulae scholae parvae prope (*near*) silvam?
- Sumus.²
- Suntne¹ multae (*many*) puellae in scholā?
- Nōn multae sunt; paucae (*few*) sumus.

- Suntne discipulae bonae et laetae?
- Sunt; scholam amant et diligentiam laudant.
- Adsuntne¹ amicae cārae tuae in scholā?
- Nōn adsunt; nunc (*now*) in silvā sunt; saltant (*they dance*) et cantant (*they sing*).
- Estne¹ casa tua prope scholam?
- Casa mea ā scholā longē (*a long way*) abest; via ā casā ad (*to*) scholam longa est; viam longam nōn amō.

¹ *suntne*? . . . When a question does not begin with an interrogative word, the enclitic *ne* is added to the first word, which is usually the verb (*sum + ne = sumne? est + ne = estne? estisne?* etc.). The accent is always on the syllable before *-ne*.

² There are no exact Latin equivalents for *yes* or *no*; the verb is commonly repeated affirmatively or negatively.

COLLATERAL READING

ROMAN ROADS

The Roman roads were a real part of the Roman system of government. They were bonds of union. Rome began that system of magnificent roads . . . by building the Via Appia to the new possessions in Campania. This was the work of the censor Appius Claudius — the man who, old and blind, afterward held Rome firm against Pyrrhus, the chivalrous king of Epirus, and haughtily claimed for Rome the dominion of all Italy.



A SCENE ON THE APPIAN WAY.

Later, all Italy, and then the growing empire outside of Italy, was traversed by a network of such roads. Mountains were tunneled; rivers were bridged; marshes were spanned for miles by viaducts of masonry. . . . These roads made the best means of communication the world was to see until the time of railroads. They were so carefully constructed, too, that their remains, in good condition to-day, still "mark the lands where Rome has ruled." They were designed for military purposes; but they also held Italy together socially.

LESSON VIII

FIRST DECLENSION. FIRST CONJUGATION

16. Genitive Plural (-ārum). — The genitive plural of the first declension is formed by replacing the ending -ae of the genitive singular by -ārum.

Diligentiam puellae parvae laudō. *I praise the diligence of the little girl.*
genitive descriptive
case adjective

Diligentiam puellārum pulchrārum laudō. *I praise the diligence of the beautiful girls.*
genitive case descriptive
adjective

17. Present Infinitive of the First Conjugation (-āre). — Any Latin verb of which the present infinitive ends in -āre belongs to the first conjugation. This conjugation has -ā for its distinguishing vowel. Its present stem ends in -ā. The present stem of any verb is obtained by dropping the final syllable -re of the present infinitive.

laudāre, to praise

present stem: **laudā-**

vocāre, to call

present stem: **vocā-**

18. Personal Endings. — The regular personal endings of the active voice are

SINGULAR

-ō or -m

-s

-t

PLURAL

-mus

-tis

-nt

19. The Present Indicative of the first conjugation is formed by adding to the present stem the personal endings given above, *-ō*, not *-m*, being used in the first person singular.



DĪLIGENTIAM PUELLĀRUM PULCHRĀRUM LAUDŌ.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *laudāre*, to praise

Poētam lau'dō

I praise the poet

Poētam lau'dās

You praise the poet

Poētam lau'dat

He or she praises the poet

Poētam laudā'mus*We praise the poet***Poētam laudā'tis***You praise the poet***Poētam lau'dant***They praise the poet*

Note (a) that the characteristic vowel **ā** is contracted with the personal ending **ō** in the first person singular (**laudā-ō** contracted into **laudō**).

(b) The same vowel **ā** becomes short before the personal endings **-t** (third person singular) and **-nt** (third person plural).

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
glō'ria, -ae	<i>glory</i>	glorious
ī'ra, -ae	<i>anger</i>	ire, irascible
lin'gua, -ae	<i>language</i>	linguist
um'bra, -ae	<i>shade</i>	umbrella
fī'da, -ae (fem.)	<i>faithful</i>	fidelity
grā'ta, -ae (fem.)	<i>pleasant</i>	grace, gratitude
num'quam	<i>never</i>	
lau'dō, -ā're	<i>praise</i>	laud, laudable
pā'cō, -ā're	<i>calm, subdue</i>	pacify, pacific

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Give the present infinitive and the present stem of each of the following verb forms: **laudat, vocāmus, mōnstrās, datis,**¹ **labōrāmus, nāvīgō, pācās**; identify and translate them; make every form negative (1) with **nōn**; (2) with **numquam**, and translate.

¹ The verb *dare, to give*, has short **a** in the present stem, except in the form **dās**, the imperative **dā**, and the participle **dāns**.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Glōria poētae magna est ; glōria poētārum magna est.
2. Vīta servae nōn grāta est ; vīta servārum nōn grāta est.
3. Octāvia diligentiam filiae tuae laudat ; Octāvia diligentiam filiārum tuārum laudat.
4. Īram nautae pācāmus ; iram nautārum pācāmus.



PORTA SAN SEBASTIANO.

This is the gate by which the Appian Way enters Rome.

5. Filiae rēginārum nōn semper laetae sunt.
6. Umbra silvārum magnārum grāta est.
7. Linguam incolārum nōn amō.
8. Diligentiam agricolārum laudātis.
9. Semper abes ; numquam labōrās.
10. Diligentia servārum fidārum meārum magna est.

(c) Reread (b) and point out all the genitives singular and plural, explaining each case.

(d) Give (1) the nominative plural ; (2) the genitives singular and plural of :

rosa, pictūra pulchra, via longa, amīca fīda, toga alba.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Give the present indicative of :

1. *Casam mōnstrāre.* 2. *Numquam labōrāre.* 3. *Semper nāvigāre.*

(b) Review. Of the italicized words below make the plural ones singular, and vice versa :

1. *Glōriam poētae laudāmus.* 2. *Īram nautārum pācās.*
3. *Incolae īnsulae absunt.* 4. *Umbram silvae amō.* 5. *Fīliae rēgīnārum numquam labōrant.*

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) I call, we are giving, she likes, they do praise, you calm, we love, he does not sail, I never work, you (singular) show, I tell, they do not tell.

(b) 1. Your (thy) daughter is praising the glory and the fame of the poets.

2. I quiet the anger of the inhabitants.

3. You do not praise the diligence of the good pupils.

4. The anger of your (thy) slaves is great.

5. You (singular) love my daughter ; she is small but faithful.

6. The cottages of my friends are large but not beautiful.

7. The faithful slave shows the good mistress the way.

8. We like the pleasant shade of the forests.

9. They call your (thy) friend but she is away.

10. The language of the sailors is not pleasant.

READING LESSON

VIAE RŌMĀNAE

Viae Rŏmānae nōtae sunt; lātae sunt. Fāma viārum lātārum magna est. Via Appia in Ītaliā est. Longa et pulchra est, sed in Viā Appiā nūlla (*no*) umbra¹ est. Umbra silvārum magnārum grāta est. Umbram grātam amāmus. Agricolae umbram silvārum amant. Fāma Viae Appiae magna est.

Rōma domina Ītaliae est. Rōma Ītaliā pācat. Glōria Rōmae magna est. Rŏmam et Ītaliā laudāmus. Laudō quoque Viam Appiam.



DOMINA RŌMĀNA.

This shows the interior of a Roman house of a later period than that described in the following text.

COLLATERAL READING

ROMAN HOUSES (Early Period to 200 B.C.)

The houses of the early Romans were like those of the primitive people all about the Mediterranean, — small huts,

¹ *est* and *sunt* also mean *there is* and *there are*.

often only one room, with no chimney or window. The open door and an opening in the peaked roof let out the smoke from the hearth fire, and let in the light; and a slight cavity directly below the roof-opening received the rain.

During the period from 367 to 200 B.C., the Roman house added rooms on sides and rear, and openings for windows; but it was still exceedingly simple, like the life within. A plain table, wooden couches, a few stools, and simple cooking utensils comprised the furniture. Artificial warmth and light was secured by "braziers" and lamps like those of the Greeks.

LESSON IX

FIRST DECLENSION. SECOND CONJUGATION

20. Accusative Plural of the First Declension (-ās).

— It is formed by replacing the ending -ae of the genitive singular by -ās.



PUELLĀS PULCHRĀS VIDEO.

This picture shows Roman girls taking part in a spring festival.

Note the difference of endings in the accusative singular and the accusative plural:

Puellam pulchram video.

direct descriptive
object adjective

I see a beautiful girl.

Puellās pulchrās video.

direct descriptive
object adjective

I see (some) beautiful girls.

21. Present Infinitive of the Second Conjugation (*-ēre*). — Any verb of which the present infinitive ends in *-ēre* belongs to the second conjugation. The present stem ends in *-ē*.

vidēre, to see

present stem : *vidē-*

monēre, to warn

present stem : *monē-*

22. The Present Indicative of the Second Conjugation is formed, like the present of the first conjugation, by adding to the present stem the regular personal endings given in § 18.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *monēre, to warn*

Nautās mo'neō

I warn the sailors

Nautās mo'nēs

You warn the sailors

Nautās mo'net

He, she, or it warns the sailors

Nautās monē'mus

We warn the sailors

Nautās monē'tis

You warn the sailors

Nautās mo'nent

They warn the sailors

Note (a) that the distinguishing vowel of the second conjugation is *-ē* ;

(b) The *ē* of the stem is not contracted with the personal ending *ō* of the first person singular ;

(c) The quantity of this vowel *e* corresponds to that of *a* in the first conjugation, see § 19, *Note (b)*.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
<i>pa'tria, -ae</i>	<i>native land</i>	patriot
<i>stel'la, -ae</i>	<i>star</i>	stellar, constellation
<i>victō'ria, -ae</i>	<i>victory</i>	victorious
<i>rēc'ta, -ae (fem.)</i>	<i>straight, right</i>	rectify, direct

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
dē'beō, -ē're	<i>owe; must, ought</i>	debt, debit
dē'leō, -ē're	<i>destroy</i>	delete
ha'beō, -ē're	<i>have</i>	habit
mo'neō, -ē're	<i>warn</i>	admonish, monitor
ti'meō, -ē're	<i>fear</i>	timid
vi'deō, -ē're	<i>see</i>	provide, divide, vision
sae'pe	<i>often</i>	

Note that **dēbeō**, meaning *ought, must*, is followed by the infinitive.

Dēbētis patriam amāre. *You ought to love (your) native land.*

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Give the present stem of the verbs in the vocabulary; divide all the words in the vocabulary into syllables, indicating the accented one.

(b) Identify and translate:

sum, habēmus, vocat, vident, timēs, moneō, laudāre dēbet, pecūniam dēbent, timētis, vidēmus, dēlet.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Rēgīna filiam pulchram habet; rēgīna filiās pulchrās habet.

2. Glōriam patriae tuae laudās; victōriās patriae tuae laudās.

3. Domina puellam parvam pācat; domina puellās parvās pācat.

4. Nautae stellam saepe vident; nautae stellās saepe vident.



STELLAE NAUTĀS MONENT.

5. Incolās insulārum nōn vidēmus.
6. Nautae casūs incolārum insulae dēlent.
7. Discipulās bonās saepe laudāre dēbētis.
8. Stellae nautās monent ; viās rēctās mōnstrant.
9. Servae fīdae dominās nōn timent.

(d) Explain every case in sentences 1, 2, 3, and 4 of (c), and point out the accusatives in the other sentences.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Give (1) the nominative plural ; (2) the genitives singular and plural ; (3) the accusatives singular and plural of :

stella, silva parva, rēgīna bona, victōria magna, toga longa.

(b) Give the present indicative of :

1. *Nautās vocāre.* 2. *Īnsulās parvās vidēre.*

(c) Review. Replace the singular by the plural and vice versa :

1. *Puellae rosās amant.* 2. *Filias meās moneō.*
 3. *Stellam nōn mōnstrō.* 4. *Serva fida dominam nōn timet.*
 5. *Nautae īnsulās parvās nōn vident.* 6. *Fābulam nārrō.*
 7. *Dominās timēre nōn dēbēmus.*

(d) Review. Add the proper endings to the verbs :

1. *Puellae īram meam tim—.* 2. *Nautae stellās vid—.*
 3. *Rēgīna filiās tuās voc— et mōnstr—.* 4. *Ego vītam agricolārum am— et laud—.*
 5. *Tū togās pulchrās hab—.*
 6. *Nōs umbram silvae am—.*

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) I warn, you have, he does not fear, they owe money, I ought not to sail, we do not have, she does not warn, you (singular) do fear, he sees.

(b) 1. I often praise good pupils.

2. You (singular) do not warn the inhabitants.

3. I owe my ¹ life to my ¹ native country.

4. We show the beautiful roses to the little girl.

5. You see the small cottages of the island.

¹ The possessive adjective is omitted when the ownership is not doubtful.

6. The queen often tells long stories.
7. We ought to destroy Rome.
8. Sailors often see the beautiful stars.
9. I fear the inhabitants of the forests.
10. You have small but beautiful cottages.
11. Octavia loves my dear friends.
12. Poets always praise the great victories of Rome.

READING LESSON

MUSCAE ET LUCERNA (The Flies and the Lamp)

Casam agricolae intrō (intrāre, *to enter*) et multās (*many*) muscās videō. Muscās nōn amō; cōpia (*abundance*) muscārū in casā nōn grāta est. Muscae ālās (*wing*) habent; ālās parvās habent. Lucernam in mēnsā (*table*) videō. Muscās stultās (*foolish*) videō; flammās (*flame*) lucernae circumvolant (*fly around*). Flammās nōn timent. Flammae lucernae ālās muscārū dēlent. Muscae praeda (*prey*) flammārū et victimae (*victim*) stultitiae (*foolishness*) sunt. Dēbēmusne¹ miseriam (*misery*) muscārū stultārū dolēre (*deplore, be sorry for*)? Meretne (*merere, to deserve*) stultitia misericordiam (*pity*)?

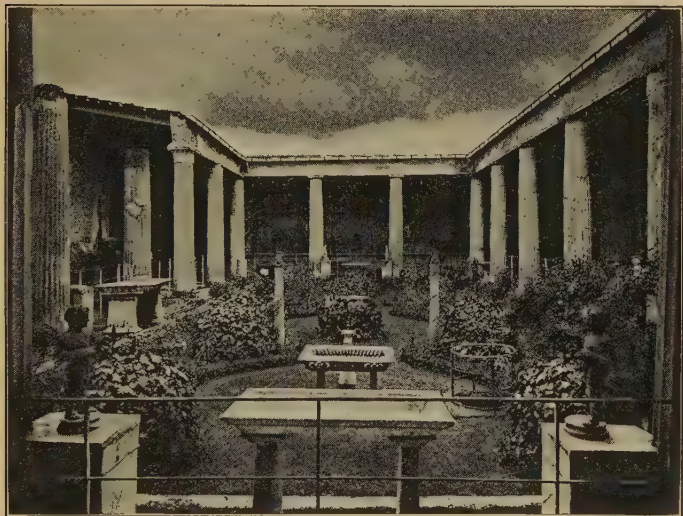
COLLATERAL READING

ROMAN HOUSES AFTER THE PUNIC WARS (146-49 B.C.)

The houses of the wealthy men had come to imitate the Greek type. The original "house" had become a central hall (atrium) with rooms on the sides and rear. The atrium now became a *front* hall, where the master of the house received his guests. It was shut off from the street by a vestibule and a porter's room. Its central court, open to the sky, still admitted light and air, and it now held a marble basin to

¹ Why is *ne* added to *Dēbēmus*?

catch the rain. . . . In the rear was a second court (peristyle) about which, as well as in the second story, were many rooms for the women and for household work.



A ROMAN HOUSE.

This shows the central court of the famous House of the Vettii at Pompeii, probably the best-known and best-preserved house of antiquity.

Each house had its kitchens, and several dining rooms, large and small, where stood tables, each surrounded on three sides by luxurious couches, in place of old-fashioned hard benches. . . . Each fashionable house, too, had its bathrooms, one or more, and its library.

LESSON X

FIRST DECLENSION

23. Dative and Ablative Plural (-īs). — The dative and ablative plural of the first declension are alike and are formed by replacing the ending **-ae** of the genitive singular by **-īs**.

Puellis parvis rosās dō.

indirect descriptive
object adjective

I give roses to the little girls.

Hastis pugnant.

ablative
of means

*They fight with (by means of)
spears.*

Note that means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. So do not confuse with denoting accompaniment and translated by cum, and with denoting means or instrument and omitted in Latin.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
convī'va, -ae (masc.)	guest	convivial
cō'pia, -ae	abundance	copious, cornucopia
cō'piae, -ārum (plur.)	troops	
has'ta, -ae	spear	hastate (leaf)
mul'tae, -ārum (fem. plur.)	many	multitude
nos'tra, -ae (fem.)	our	nostrum
ves'tra, -ae (fem.)	your	
ē or ex ¹	from	eject, extract
can'tō, -ā're	sing (of)	cantor, canticle
mo'veō, -ē're	move	movable
pug'nō, -ā're	fight	pugnacious

¹ Ex must be used before vowels or *h*; either form may be used before consonants.



HASTIS PUGNANT.

I. Oral.

EXERCISES

(a) Give the present stem of: **nārrāre**, **timēre**, **cantāre**, **movēre**, **dare**, **dēbēre**, and separate all the words below into syllables, indicating the syllable which must be accented.

(b) Identify and translate :

adsum, **amātis**, **monent**, **vidēmus**, **vocant**, **moveō**, **dat**, **pugnāmus**, **absunt**, **habent**.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Rēgīna puellae rosam dat ; rēgīna bonīs puellīs rosās pulchrās dat.



CONVIVAE.

The ancient Romans had no forks.

2. Cum convīvā cantāre dēbēs ; cum convīvīs cantāre dēbēs.

3. Nautae stellās vident ; stellae nautīs viam rēctam mōnstrant.

4. Cōpia rosārum in casīs grāta est.

5. Ē silvīs cōpiās nostrās movēmus.

6. Fīliae vestrae multās¹ et bonās amicās habent.

7. Silva magna agricolīs umbram dat.

8. Discipulis bonīs multās fābulās nārrō.

9. Incolae insulārum hastīs longīs pugnānt.

10. Nautae cum incolīs insulārum pugnāre dēbent.

(d) Point out in (c) all the datives and ablatives, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline (1) in the singular : **patria nostra, hasta mea** ; (2) in the plural : **victōriae vestrae, multae insulae**.

(b) Give the present indicative of :

1. In silvā nōn esse. 2. Cōpiās movēre. 3. Hastā longā pugnāre.

¹ Adjectives of quantity usually precede the noun they modify.

(c) Add first the proper singular ending ; then the proper plural ending :

1. Serva puell— (indirect object) rosās dat. 2. Agric— (indirect object) pecūniam damus. 3. Cum naut— nāvigāre dēbēmus. 4. Octāvia discipul— (indirect object) fābulam nārrat. 5. Ab insul— magn— nāvigant. 6. Ē silv— cōpiās moveō.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) I am, you have, he likes, you (singular) do not fear, we move, you give, they ought not, she is away, you (singular) are fighting, I do not show, we warn, you do not call.

(b) 1. The mistress gives money to the slave ; she gives money to the slaves.

2. We ought to sing with the guest ; you ought to sing with the guests.

3. Sailors do not fight with spears.

4. The farmer gives many roses to our dear friends.

5. I move my troops from the forests.

6. You (singular) tell many stories to your pupils.

7. The inhabitants of the island show the sailors the right way.

8. You ought to fight with the inhabitants, sail with the sailors, and work with the farmers.

READING LESSON

ĪTALIA ANTĪQUA (Ancient Italy)

Ītalia antīqua silvās magnās habet. Multae ferae (*wild beast*) in silvīs magnīs Ītaliae antīquae sunt. Incolae ferās silvārum nōn timent ; cum ferīs saepe pugnāt. Incolae hastās et sagittās (*arrow*) habent ; hastīs et sagittīs pugnāt et multās ferās silvārum necant (*kill*).

Multae aquilae (*eagle*) et columbae (*dove*) quoque in silvīs sunt. Columbae timidae aquilās timent; cum aquilīs avidis (*greedy*) nōn pugnant; aquilae multās columbās necant.



AQUILAE.

Ītalia terra (*land*) agricolārum est; nautārum quoque est terra. Agricolae et nautae Ītaliae patriam amant.

Poētae quoque patriam amant. Poētae Ītaliae dē (*about*) victōriis magnīs patriae semper cantant.

Pirātae (*pirate*) in nāviculīs (*boat*) ad ōrās (*sea-coast*) nāvigant; incolae cum pīrātis saepe pugnant.

COLLATERAL READING

LAND AND PEOPLES OF ITALY

In ancient times the Po valley was always considered part of Gaul. It was called Cisalpine Gaul or Gaul this side the Alps. The name Italy belonged only to the true peninsula with the Apennine range for its backbone.



ETRUSCAN TOMBS NEAR ORVIETO.

The center of the peninsula was the home of the Italians who were finally to give their language and law to the whole land. The western *Italians* were lowlanders, and were called Latins. One of their cities was Rome, on the Tiber. . . . The eastern and larger section of Italians were highlanders (Sabines, Samnites, Volscians). The more important of the other races were the *Greeks* in the south, the savage *Gauls*

of the Po valley, and the *Etruscans* in Etruria across the Tiber from the Latins. The Etruscans were a mysterious people — “the standing riddle of history.” They were the first civilized race in Italy, long before the Greek settlements began in the south.

LESSON XI

REVIEW LESSON

24. The First Declension. — Below is the model for both numbers of the first declension.



PICTŪRA PULCHRA.

Pictūra pulchra, a beautiful picture

BASE: pictŭr- pulchr-

SINGULAR

ENDINGS

Nom. :	pictŭra pulchra, <i>the beautiful picture</i>	-a
Gen. :	pictŭrae pulchrae, <i>of the beautiful picture</i>	-ae
Dat. :	pictŭrae pulchrae, <i>to the beautiful picture</i>	-ae
Acc. :	pictŭram pulchram, <i>the beautiful picture</i>	-am
Abl. :	pictŭrā pulchrā, <i>with, by, from, etc., the beautiful picture</i>	-ā

	PLURAL	ENDINGS
Nom. :	pictūrae pulchrae , <i>the beautiful pictures</i>	-ae
Gen. :	pictūrārum pulchrārum , <i>of the beautiful pictures</i>	-ārum
Dat. :	pictūrīs pulchrīs , <i>to the beautiful pictures</i>	-īs
Acc. :	pictūrās pulchrās , <i>the beautiful pictures</i>	-ās
Abl. :	pictūrīs pulchrīs , <i>with, by, from, etc., the beautiful pictures</i>	-īs

25. Present Indicative of the First and Second Conjugations.

FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION
laudāre , <i>to praise</i>	monēre , <i>to warn</i>
Characteristic vowel : ā	Characteristic vowel : ē
Present stem : laudā	Present stem : monē

Person	SINGULAR			Common Personal Endings
1st	laudō	monēō	-ō	
2d	laudās	monēs	-s	
3d	laudat	monet	-t	
PLURAL				
1st	laudāmus	monēmus	-mus	
2d	laudātis	monētis	-tis	
3d	laudent	monent	-nt	

26. Present Indicative of *esse*, to be.

Person	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
		Endings		Endings
1st	sum	-m	sumus	-mus
2d	es	-s	estis	-tis
3d	est	-t	sunt	-nt

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Translate into English the following words :

1. *Nouns*

conviva	glōria	īra	rēgina
cōpia	hasta	lingua	stella
cōpiae	incola	patria	umbra
victōria			

2. *Adjectives (feminine form)*

alba	grāta	multae	tua
fida	laeta	nostra	vestra

3. *Verbs*

abesse	dēbēre	habēre	pācāre
adesse	dēlēre	monēre	pugnāre
cantāre	esse	movēre	timēre

vidēre

4. *All Other Parts of Speech*

ē or ex	numquam	saepe	semper
---------	---------	-------	--------

(b) Tell which syllable must be accented in each of the words in (a). Explain why.

(c) Which verbs in (a) 3 belong to the first conjugation ; which to the second ? How can you tell ?

(d) Answer the following questions and illustrate :

1. What is the characteristic vowel of the first declension ?

2. What cases does the ending *-ae* indicate ?

3. What cases do the endings *-ārum*, *-ās*, *-īs* indicate ? By what case is *means* or *instrument* expressed ? Is that case used with or without a preposition ?

4. What is the ending of the present infinitive of any verb of the first conjugation ; of the second ?

5. What do you do to the present infinitive of the first conjugation to get the present stem; to the present infinitive of the second conjugation?

6. What is the characteristic vowel of the present indicative (a) of the first conjugation; (b) of the second?

7. What are the personal endings of the present indicative of any verb in the active voice?

8. What vowel disappears in the first person singular of the present indicative of the first conjugation?

9. Does the characteristic vowel *ē* of the second conjugation disappear in the first person singular of the present indicative?

10. In what persons do the characteristic vowels *ā* of the first conjugation and *ē* of the second become short?

11. What is the verb whose first person singular of the present indicative does not end in *-ō*?

12. Why are the personal pronoun subjects generally omitted in Latin?

13. When are they required?

14. What is the personal pronoun subject used when addressing a single individual?

15. (a) What Latin words are suggested by the following English words: pugnacious, convivial, caress, debtor, irascible, admonition, umbrage, stellar, movable, patriotic, habit, timid, copious? (b) Give the meaning of each English word.

II. Written.

(a) Decline (1) in the singular: **lingua nostra**; (2) in the plural: **multae stellae**; (3) in both numbers: **via lāta**.

(b) Give the present indicative of:

1. In umbrā esse. 2. Fābulās nārrāre. 3. Glōriam magnam habēre.

(c) Translate the following words :

1. *Nouns*

abundance	glory	language	spear
anger	guest	queen	star
(native) country	inhabitant	shade	troops
	victory		

2. *Adjectives (feminine form)*

faithful	many	pleasant	your (plur.)
joyful	our	your (singular)	white

3. *Verbs*

to be	to destroy	to have	to owe
to be away	to fear	to move	to quiet
to be present	to fight	ought	to see
to calm	to warn		to sing (of)

4. *All Other Parts of Speech*

always	from	never	often
--------	------	-------	-------

LESSON XII

REVIEW

READING LESSON

ĪTALIA

- Quam (*what*) terram vidētis?
- Ītaliā vidēmus.
- Ubi (*where*) Ītaliā vidētis?
- Ītaliā in tabulā (*map*) vidēmus.
- Estne Ītalia insula?
- Nōn est. Pēninsula Ītalia est.
- Quam fōrmā (*shape*) Ītalia habet?
- Ītalia longa sed nōn lāta terra est.
- Suntne ¹ silvae in Ītaliā?
- Magnae silvae sunt.
- Suntne bēstiae (*beasts*) in silvīs Ītaliae?
- Multae ferae in silvīs sunt.
- Quās (*what*) bēstiās incolae nōn timent?
- Ferās silvārum nōn timent.
- Quid (*what*) habent?
- Hastās et sagittās (*arrow*) habent.
- Quōmodo (*how*) pugnant?
- Hastīs et sagittīs pugnant.
- Quās bēstiās necant (*kill*)?
- Multās ferās silvārum necant.

¹ See footnote 1, page 40.

- Estne Ītalia terra agricolārum?
- Est. Nautārum quoque terra est.
- Labōrantne agricolae Ītaliae cum diligentīā?
- Magnā diligentīā labōrant.
- Estne parsimōnia agricolārum Ītaliae magna?
- Est. Agricolae Ītaliae pecūniam amant.
- Patriamne quoque incolae Ītaliae amant?
- Patriam quoque amant.
- Habetne Ītalia puellās pulchrās?
- Habet. Laetae quoque puellae Ītaliae sunt.
- Habetne Ītalia poētās?
- Habet.
- Quam terram poētae amant et laudant?
- Ītaliā semper amant et laudant.

EXERCISES

I. Dictation.

Teachers may use the reading lesson or a part of it as a dictation.

II. Oral.

One of the pupils reads the questions, and his classmates, at the call of their names by the teacher, answer them fully.

III. Written.

Form two questions with

(a) **quid** (*what?* interrogative pronoun, neuter singular nominative or accusative);

(b) **quam** (*what?* interrogative adjective, accusative feminine singular);

(c) **quās** (*what?* interrogative adjective, accusative feminine plural);

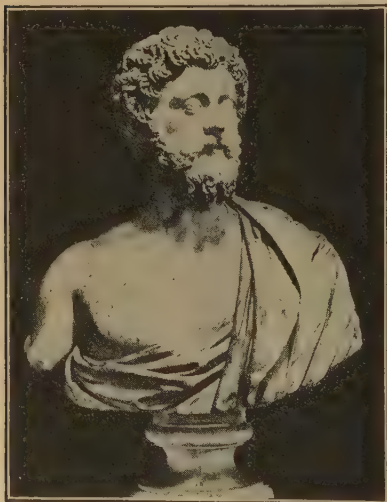
(d) **ubi** (*where?*);

(e) **quōmodo** (*how?*).

COLLATERAL READING

ROMAN LITERATURE

Literature played a small part in Roman life until just before the Empire. This is the list of the most important names for the four periods down to the Emperor Marcus Aurelius (161–180 A.D.).



MARCUS AURELIUS.

1. The "Age of Cicero" gave us *Lucretius*, perhaps the most sublime of all Latin poets, and *Caesar's* concise graphic historical narrative. *Cicero* himself remains the foremost orator of Rome and the chief maker of the graceful Latin prose essay.

2. For the glorious "Augustan Age," only a few of the many important writers can be mentioned: the great poets *Horace* and *Vergil*, and

the historians *Livy*, *Dionysius*, and *Strabo*. The last two authors wrote in Greek.

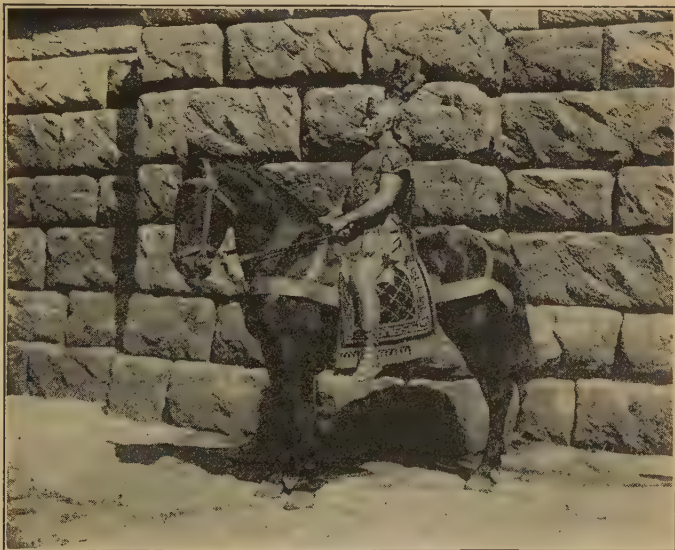
3. Among the great writers of the second half of the first century (after the Augustan age) are the Jewish historian *Josephus*, the scientist *Pliny the Elder*, the Stoic philosophers *Epictetus* and *Seneca*.

4. For the second century, we have the *Letters* of *Pliny the Younger*, the satirical poetry of *Juvenal*, the *Thoughts* of *Marcus Aurelius* (in Greek), the histories and biographies (in Greek) of *Appian*, of *Arrian*, of *Plutarch*, and (in Latin) of *Tacitus*.

LESSON XIII

SECOND DECLENSION. PAST OF *ESSE*

27. The Nominative Singular Masculine of the Second Declension ends either in *-us* or in *-er*.



EQUUS NIGER PULCHER EST.

Note the agreement of the adjectives in the following sentences :

Puer parvus est.

subject predicate
 adjective

The boy is small.

Equus niger pulcher est.

subject descrip- predicate
 tive ad- adjective
 jective

The black horse is beautiful.

28. Agreement of Adjectives. — Be sure to remember to use a masculine adjective, ending in **-us** or **-er**, with any masculine noun, even when it ends in **-a**.

Agricola bonus est.

The farmer is good.

Nauta pulcher est.

The sailor is handsome.

29. Appositives. — An appositive¹ is in the same case as the noun to which it refers and generally follows it.

Cassius, agricola bonus, labōrat.

Cassius, the good farmer, is working.

30. Past of *esse*, to be. — Note that the endings are the personal endings given in § 18, except that **-m**, not **-ō**, is used in the first person singular.

SINGULAR

Masculine Subject

(I was a small boy, etc.)

puer parvus e'ram

puer parvus e'rās

puer parvus e'rat

Feminine Subject

(I was a small girl, etc.)

puella parva e'ram

puella parva e'rās

puella parva e'rat

PLURAL

in casā erā'mus

in casā erā'tis

in casā e'rant

we were in the cottage

you were in the cottage

they were in the cottage

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS

Cas'sius

e'quus

fī'lius

ENGLISH MEANINGS

Cassius (a proper name)

horse

son

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

equine

filial

¹ An appositive is a noun which explains something about a preceding noun.

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
pu'er	<i>boy</i>	puerile
Vergi'lius	<i>Vergil</i>	Vergilian
bo'nus (m.), bo'na (f.) ¹	<i>good</i>	bonus
lae'tus (m.), lae'ta (f.)	<i>joyful</i>	
mag'nus (m.), mag'na (f.)	<i>large, great</i>	magnify
me'us (m.), me'a (f.)	<i>my</i>	
ni'ger (m.), ni'gra (f.)	<i>black, dark</i>	negro
nō'tus (m.), nō'ta (f.)	<i>well known, famous</i>	noted
pul'cher (m.), pul'chra (f.)	<i>beautiful, handsome</i>	pulchritude

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Explain the agreement of every adjective :

equus niger, umbra nigra, agricola bonus, rēgīna bona, poēta nōtus, insula nōta, puer pulcher, puella pulchra, filius meus, filia mea, nauta laetus, serva laeta.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Puer bonus est.
2. Filius bonus eram.
3. Vergilius poēta magnus et nōtus erat.
4. Octāvia, filia mea, nōn laeta erat.
5. Cassius, agricola bonus, cum diligentīā labōrat.
6. Equus niger est ; equus niger pulcher est.
7. Nauta es, semper abes ; nautae estis, semper abestis.
8. Nauta erās, semper aberās ; nautae erātis, semper aberātis.

9. Aderam ego, sed Cassius, filius meus, nōn aderat.

(c) Point out in (b), (1) the subjects ; (2) the predicate nouns and adjectives ; (3) the descriptive adjectives ; (4) the appositive nouns.

¹ Henceforth the feminine form of each adjective will follow the masculine form. They must be learned together.

(d) Give the masculine form of the following adjectives (a) on the model of *bona, bonus* :

longa, lāta, laeta, magna, cāra, grāta, mea, tua, rēcta, fida ;

(b) on the model of *pulchra, pulcher* :

Nostra, vestra, nigra.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Replace the dashes by fitting nouns :

1. — pulcher est. 2. — nōtus erat. 3. — niger est. 4. — bonus erat.

(b) Complete each sentence by supplying the proper adjective :

1. Equus — erat. 2. Puella — est. 3. Nauta — erat. 4. Puer nōn — erat. 5. Via — est. 6. Vergilius poēta — erat.

(c) Write the present and past indicative of :

1. In *Ītaliā* esse. 2. Saepe abesse. 3. Numquam adesse.

(d) Review. Replace (1) the singular by the plural and vice versa ; (2) the present by the past :

1. Adsum. 2. Nōn in *Ītaliā* es. 3. In *silvā* sumus. 4. Puella laeta est. 5. Semper adestis. 6. Filiae meae pulchrae sunt.

III. Written.

Write in Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) I am, I was, she was not, we are, you were not, they were, he was away, you (sing.) were not present, I was present, we were absent.

- (b) 1. Cassius, my son, is a little boy.
 2. He is good and joyful.
 3. You¹ were good, too.
 4. I was good, too, and joyful.
 5. The poet Vergil was good.
 6. He was famous, too.
 7. My horse was black and small, but he was not beautiful.
 * 8. You were always away.
 9. We were present, but the poet's daughters were absent.
 10. They are never present.

READING LESSON

GALBA ET MĀRCUS (Galba and Marcus)

Puer parvus sum. Galba amīcus (*friend*, m.) fīdus meus est. Puer bonus est. Mārcus amīcus noster est. Puer quoque parvus est.

Discipulus (*pupil*, m.) bonus sum. Galba, amīcus meus, discipulus quoque bonus est. Scholam amāmus; cum diligentīā labōrāmus. Mārcus stultus (*foolish*) est; scholam nōn amat; in scholā nōn laetus est; numquam labōrat; discipulus malus (*bad*) est.

Filius agricolae sum. Galba quoque filius agricolae est. Mārcus, amīcus noster, filius nautae est. Equus parvus Galbae niger est; pulcher quoque est. Equus meus nōn niger, sed albus est; pulcher quoque est.

COLLATERAL READING

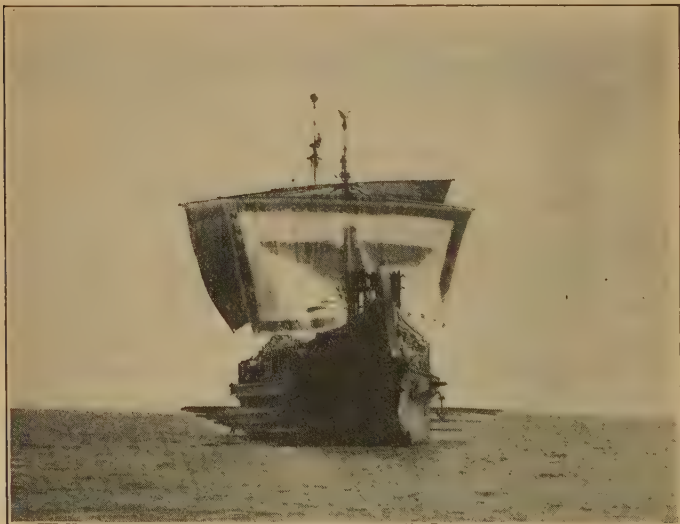
THE ROMAN NAVY

The first Punic or Carthaginian war lasted twenty-three years (264–241 B.C.). Carthage, an ancient Phoenician colony on the finest harbor in North Africa, was mistress of an

¹ Use *Tū* in sentence 3 and *Ego* in sentence 4. Why?

empire huge but scattered and heterogeneous. Rome was the head of a small but compact nationality. Each state ruled about 5,000,000 people. . . .

At first the Carthaginians were undisputed masters of the sea. But the Romans, with sagacity and boldness, built their first war fleet and soon met the ancient Queen of the Seas on her own element. . . .



A ROMAN SHIP.

Here the three banks of oars are plainly seen. For an interior view, compare this with the picture on page 10.

Terrible reverses befell inexperienced Rome upon the sea. In quick succession she lost four great fleets with large armies on board. . . . One sixth of her citizens had perished; the treasury was empty; and, in despair, the Senate was about to abandon the effort to secure the sea. In this crisis Rome was saved by the public spirit of her private citizens. *Lavish loans built and fitted out two hundred vessels*, and this huge fleet won an overwhelming victory, which closed the war.

LESSON XIV

SECOND DECLENSION. FIRST CONJUGATION

31. Genitive Singular of the Second Declension (-ī). — Nouns and adjectives ending in **-us** form the genitive singular by replacing **-us** by **-ī**; those ending in **-er** by adding **ī**.



DOMINUS EQUĪ ALBĪ SUM.

Diligentiam puerī parvī laudō. *I praise the little boy's diligence.*

genitive descrip-
case tive ad-
jective

***Dominus equī albī sum.**

genitive descrip-
case tive ad-
jective

I am the master of the white horse.

Note that all words in **-ius** like **Vergilius**, **filius**, etc., have the genitive singular in **-ī** instead of **-iī**. The accent rests on the penult: **Vergi'li**.

Glōria Vergi'li, poētae nōti, magna est.

genitive case appositive descriptive adjective

The glory of Vergil, the famous poet, is great.

32. Past of the First Conjugation (-ābam). — The past tense is formed by adding to the present stem (**laudāre**, present stem: **laudā-**) the tense sign **-bā-** and the usual personal endings, **-m**, not **-ō**, being used in the first person singular.

PAST INDICATIVE OF **laudāre**

SINGULAR

PLURAL

(I praised, I was praising, I did praise the queen, etc.)

rēginam laudā'bam

rēginam laudābā'mus

rēginam laudā'bās

rēginam laudābā'tis

rēginam laudā'bat

rēginam laudā'bant

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
a'ger, a'grī ¹	<i>field</i>	agriculture
amī'cus, -ī	<i>friend</i> (masc.)	amicable
disci'pulus, -ī	<i>pupil</i> (masc.)	discipline
do'minus, -ī	<i>master, owner</i>	domination
lēgā'tus, -ī	<i>lieutenant, ambassador</i>	legate, delegate
mun'dus, -ī	<i>world</i>	mundane
po'pulus, -ī	<i>people</i>	popular
ser'vus, -ī	<i>slave</i> (masc.)	servile
mi'ser, mi'sera ¹	<i>wretched, unhappy</i>	misery, miserable

¹ Nouns and adjectives in this book ending in **-er** lose the **e** when inflected, except **puer**, **miser**. So, the base of **ager** is **agr-**, but that of **puer** is **puer-**.

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
pi'ger, pi'gra	lazy	
Rōmā'nus, -a	Roman	Romanism
sa'cer, sa'cra	sacred	sacrament
tum	then	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Indicate (1) the base of :

amīcus, dominus, mundus, servus, populus, Rōmānus,
puer, miser, niger, ager, pulcher, sacer, piger ;

(2) the present stem of :

amāre, labōrāre, nāvigāre, pācāre, vocāre, dare, cantāre,
mōnstrāre, pugnāre, nārrāre.

(b) Identify and translate :

laudō, laudābam, amās, amābās, pācat, pācābat, vocāmus,
vocābāmus, datis, dabātis, pugnant, pugnābant.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Vīta servī nōn sacra
est.

2. Tum Rōma domi-
na mundī erat.

3. Cassius, lēgātus,
amīcus Vergilī, poētae
nōtī, erat.

4. Īram dominī pā-
cābās.

5. Diligentiam servī
bonī laudābātis.

6. Dominus agrī parvī
agricola piger est.



AGRĪ RŌMĀNĪ.

7. Casam agricolae miserī vidēmus.
8. Filius Cassī lēgātī discipulus bonus erat.
9. Puer parvus dominus equī nigrī est.
10. Vergilius, poēta nōtus, multās victōriās populī Rōmānī cantābat.

(d) Point out every genitive in (c), and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Give the genitive singular of :

dominus bonus, populus Rōmānus, ager parvus, amīcus fīdus, puella pulchra, Vergilius poēta, nauta piger, agricola laetus, Cassius lēgātus, puer miser.

(b) Give the present and past of :

1. Glōriam amāre.
2. Īram populī Rōmānī pācāre.

(c) Review. Add the proper endings :

1. Casa amīc— (genitive case) parva est.
2. Servus ĩram domin— (genitive case) pācābat.
3. Vergilius amīcus Cassi— (genitive case) lēgāt— (appositive) erat.

(d) Review. Replace the dashes by (1) the present ; (2) the past of the italicized infinitive :

1. *Abesse*: Filia amīcī meī —.
2. *Amāre*: Populus Rōmānus glōriam —.
3. *Nāvigāre*: Tū semper —.
4. *Laudāre*: Vōs diligentiam servī fīdī —.
5. *Cantāre*: Poētae Ītaliā semper —.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) I like, I did not like, you (singular) were not showing, we called, she was singing, you quieted, they used to give, you were fighting.

(b) 1. The master's anger is great.

2. My son's horse was not black.

3. Your friend's daughters were always singing.

4. The field of the wretched farmer is small.

5. Then the life of a slave was not sacred.

6. The good poet was the friend of Cassius, the famous ambassador.

7. He was singing (of) the victories of Rome, mistress of the world.

8. We showed the cottage of the great Roman poet Vergil.

9. You (singular) were lazy; you were never working.

10. I was praising the glory of the Roman people.

READING LESSON

PLAUTUS, SERVUS BONUS (The Good Slave Plautus)¹

Cassius lēgātus nōtus populī Rōmānī erat. Plautus servus Cassī erat. Plautus bonus servus, sed Cassius malus (*bad*) dominus erat.

Ager dominī malī magnus erat. Plautus semper labōrābat. Nōn piger erat. Dominus Plautī dīligentiam servī fidī numquam laudābat. Plautus miser erat. Miseria servī impigrī (*impiger, industrious*) magna erat. Vīta Plautī, bonī servī, nōn grāta erat.

Mārcus filius dominī Plautī erat. Puer bonus erat. Plautus amīcus fidus puerī bonī erat. Iūlia et Augusta filiae lēgātī nōti populī Rōmānī erant. Bonae puellae erant.

Servus bonus filiās dominī malī amābat. Puellis parvīs fābulās saepe nārrābat. Iūlia et Augusta fābulās amābant. Fābulae Plautī, servī bonī, puellās parvās dēlectābant (*charmed, pleased*).

¹ Plautus means *flat-foot*.

COLLATERAL READING

ROME THE WORLD MISTRESS

In 264 B.C., Rome had been one of the five Great Powers (Syria, Egypt, Macedonia, Carthage, Rome). By the peace of 201, after the battle of Zama, Carthage disappeared from that list. In the next fifty years, arrogant Roman "diplomacy" removed her other three rivals. In 146, Rome was



GENERAL VIEW OF CARTHAGE TO-DAY.

Looking southeast. Compare this with the pictures on pages 145, 191 241, and 295.

the *sole* Great Power. Carthage and Macedonia were provinces. Egypt and Syria had become protectorates and were soon to be provinces. All the smaller states had been brought within the Roman "sphere of influence." Rome held the heritage of Alexander as well as that of Carthage. There remained no state able to dream of equality with her. *The civilized world had become a Graeco-Roman World, under Roman sway.*

LESSON XV

SECOND DECLENSION. SECOND CONJUGATION

33. Accusative Singular (-um). — The accusative singular of the second declension is formed by replacing the ending *-ī* of the genitive singular by *-um*. Compare the accusative singular ending of the first declension, *-am*.



EQUUM NIGRUM VIDĒMUS.

Equum nigrum vidēmus.

direct descriptive
object adjective

We see a black horse.

Poētam nōtum amābātis.

direct descriptive
object adjective

You liked the famous poet.

34. The Past of the Second Conjugation is formed like that of the first, that is, by adding to the present

stem (**monēre**, present stem: **monē-**) the tense sign **-bā-** and the regular personal endings.

PAST OF **monēre**, to warn

SINGULAR

PLURAL

(I warned, I did warn, I used to warn, I was warning a friend, etc.)

amīcum monē'bam

amīcum monēbā'mus

amīcum monē'bās

amīcum monēbā'tis

amīcum monē'bat

amīcum monē'bant

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
iniū'ria, -ae	<i>injury, wrong</i>	injurious
memo'ria, -ae	<i>memory</i>	memorial
ma'lus, -a	<i>bad</i>	malice
nos'ter, nos'tra	<i>our</i>	pater noster
tar'dus, -a	<i>slow</i>	tardy
ves'ter, ves'tra	<i>your</i>	
lī'berō, -ā're	<i>free</i>	liberty
te'neō, -ē're	<i>hold, keep</i>	tenet, tenure
(in) memo'riā tenē're	<i>remember (hold in memory)</i>	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) What is the present stem of the following verbs :
habēre, timēre, movēre, dēbēre, vidēre, dēlēre, tenēre?

(b) Identify and translate :

**habet, habēbam, timēs, timēbat, dēbet, dēbēbātis, tenē-
mus, tenēbam, moneō, monēbāmus, vident, vidēbās.**

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Dominus servum liberat.
2. Dominus bonus erās ; servum bonum liberābās.
3. Malus servus dominum nōn amābat.
4. Tardus servus erās ; iram dominī timēbās.
5. Agrum magnum agricolae bonī vidēbāmus.
6. Discipulum pigrum saepe monēbātis.
7. Vergilium, poētam nōtum, amābāmus.
8. Filius Cassī, amīcī nostrī, equum nigrum habēbat.
9. Vergilius, poēta nōtus, populum Rōmānum laudābat.
10. Iniūriās populī Rōmānī (in) memoriā tenēbam.

(d) Point out in (c), (1) all the accusatives ; (2) all the genitives.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Give (1) the accusative singular ; (2) the genitive singular of :

populus Rōmānus, puella Rōmāna, poēta Rōmānus, amīcus noster, dominus vester, servus miser tuus, equus pulcher, puer parvus, ager magnus, discipulus piger.

(b) Give the present and past indicative of :

1. Servum liberāre. 2. Dominum timēre.

(c) Review. Supply the necessary endings :

1. Cassi— (subject) amīc— (predicate noun) fīd— (descriptive adjective) erat. 2. Domin— (direct object) nōn amābam. 3. Serv— (subject) ir— (direct object) domin— (genitive case) nōn timēbat. 4. Serv— (direct object) mal— (descriptive adjective) nōn liberābās.

(d) Review. Replace the dashes (1) by the present ; (2) by the past of the italicized infinitive :

1. *Habēre* : Ego amicum fidum —.
2. *Vidēre* : Puer parvus equum pulchrum —.
3. *Monēre* : Nōs populum Rōmānum —.
4. *Dēbēre* : Tū patriae vitam —.
5. *Tenēre* : Vōs iniuriās dominī (in) memoriā —.
6. *Timēre* : Puellae iram nostram —.
7. *Dēlēre* : Vōs cōpiās Rōmānās —.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) I warn, I warned, we fear, we did not fear, you held, he did not free, we used to call, you (singular) destroyed, I was working, she did not see.

- (b)
1. I praised the good pupil (m.).
 2. The master did not free the bad slave (m.).
 3. The lazy slave (m.) feared the master.
 4. They warned the Roman people.
 5. I often saw my son.
 6. He had a small horse.
 7. We loved the great Roman poet.
 8. They saw the field of the good farmer.
 9. You (sing.) used to warn the slow and lazy pupil (m.).
 10. You did not remember the great wrongs of Cassius, the ambassador of the Roman people.

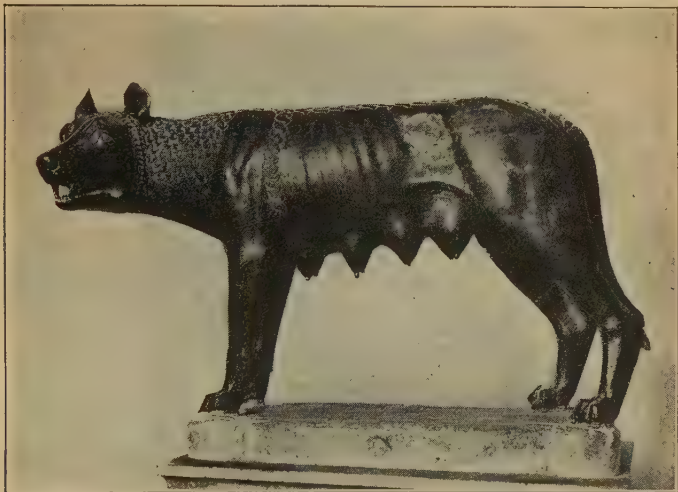
READING LESSON

LUPUS ET CAPRA (The Wolf and the Goat)

Caprae praeda (*prey*) lupī saepe sunt. Caprae lupum timent.

Agricola capram parvam habēbat. Ager dominī caprae prope (*near*) silvam erat. Lupus magnus cum cēterīs (*the other*) ferīs in silvā erat. Lupus circum (*around*, with accusative) agrum agricolae semper errābat (*prowl*) et capram saepe

vidēbat, sed capra timida lupum avidum vidēbat et prope casam dominī, ubi (*where*) tūta (*safe*) erat, manēbat (*remain*).
 . Capra parva rīdēbat (*laugh*) et ira lupī avidī magna erat.



LUPUS.

This is the Capitoline Wolf, erected on the Capitol in memory of the wolf which suckled Romulus.

COLLATERAL READING

EARLY ROME

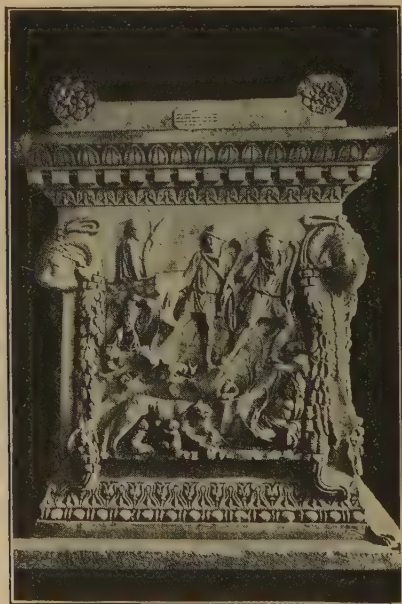
The Romans had no Homer.¹ Their early history, as it was first put together by their historians about 200 B.C., was a mass of curious legends. . . .

According to these legends, Rome was founded in 753 B.C.,² and for the next century and a half was ruled by a line of seven kings. The founder, *Romulus*, was the son of Mars

¹ The great epic poet of Greece.

² Later Romans counted time from this year, as we do from the birth of Christ.

(God of War) and of a Latin princess. As a babe he had been exposed to die, but was preserved and suckled by a wolf. He grew up among rude shepherds; with their aid he built a city on the Palatine Mount above the old wolf's den; here



A ROMAN ALTAR.

This altar shows the shepherd Faustulus finding Romulus and Remus and the wolf.

he gathered about him outlaws from all quarters, and these men seized the daughters of a Sabine tribe for wives. This led to war, and finally to the union of the Romans and the Sabines, who then settled upon one of the neighboring hills.

LESSON XVI

SECOND DECLENSION

35. Dative and Ablative Singular of the Second Declension (-ō). — They are alike and are formed by replacing the ending -ī of the genitive singular by -ō.



PUELLAE CUM PUERŌ PULCHRŌ SUNT.

Puerō parvō librum dō.
indirect descrip-
object tive ad-
 jective

*I give a book to the
little boy.*

Puellae cum puerō pulchrō sunt.
 ablative descrip-
 of accom- tive ad-
 paniment jective

*The girls are with a
handsome boy.*

36. The Possessive Adjective *suus, sua, his own, her own, its own, their own*, agrees with the thing possessed, not with the possessor as in English.

Cassius dominum suum timet.	<i>Cassius fears HIS OWN master.</i>
Octāvia dominum suum timet.	<i>Octavia fears HER OWN master.</i>
Cassius et Octāvia dominum suum timent.	<i>Cassius and Octavia fear THEIR OWN master.</i>
Cassius patriam suam amat.	<i>Cassius loves HIS country.</i>
Octāvia patriam suam amat.	<i>Octavia loves HER country.</i>
Cassius et Octāvia patriam suam amant.	<i>Cassius and Octavia love THEIR OWN country.</i>

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
cam'pus, -ī	<i>plain</i>	camp
li'ber, li'brī	<i>book</i>	library
no'vus, -a	<i>new</i>	novice
su'us, -a	<i>his, her, its; their</i>	suicide
nūn'tiō, -ā're	<i>announce</i>	annunciation

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and translate :

(1) vocat, timēmus, estis, liberābam, dant, movent, pugnābātis, movēbāmus, nārrant, dēlēbam, nūntiābās.

(2) amīcī novī, librum tuum, nautae tardī, cum convīvā tuō, amīcus miser, discipulum pigrum, servō miserō.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Puer nōn in silvā sed in agrō erat.
2. Amicō cārō tuō pecūniam dēbēbās.
3. Servus miser cum equō tardō in agrō dominī labōrābat.
4. Puellae parvae poētae nōtō rosās pulchrās dabant.
5. Populō Rōmānō victōriam nūntiābāmus.

6. Dominus cum convīvā suō cantāre dēbet.
7. Puer Cassiō librum suum dat.
8. Octāvia amīcae suae fābulam nārrābat.
9. Discipulō pigrō librum novum nōn dabās.
10. Agricola filiae cārae suae fābulās longās nārrat.
11. Cassius, lēgātus, ē campō parvō cōpiās suās movēbat.
12. Lēgātī ē silvā cōpiās suās movent.

(c) Point out in (b), (1) all the datives; (2) all the ablatives, and explain each case; (3) all the forms of the adjective **suus**, **sua**, and explain the gender of each form.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline in the singular:

ager parvus, campus magnus, filius pulcher suus, filia pulchra sua, convīva laetus suus.

(b) Review. Add the necessary endings:

1. In camp— magn— erāmus. 2. Cassius puer— (indirect object) librum dat. 3. Popul— (indirect object) victōriam nūntiō. 4. Cum serv— in agr— labōrāre dēbēmus. 5. Discipul— (indirect object) fābulam nārrābās.

(c) Give the present and the past indicative of:

1. Populō victōriam nūntiāre. 2. Ē campō cōpiās movēre.
3. In agrō esse.

(d) Review. (1) Make the verb plural; (2) replace the present by the past:

1. Amicō librum dō. 2. Īram dominī timēs. 3. Rēgīnae rosam dabat. 4. Agrum parvum habet. 5. Stel-lās vidēs. 6. Cum diligentīā labōrō.

(e) Review. (1) Make the verb singular. (2) Replace the past by the present :

1. In agrō nōn erant. 2. Cum nautā laetō nāvigābāmus.
3. Cassium lēgātum monēbātis. 4. Campum magnum mōnstrābāmus. 5. Iniūriās (in) memoriā tenēbant.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) You were, they had, we used to warn, I was not sailing, she held, you feared, you (singular) moved, I used to give, they told, we were not announcing, he used to work.

(b) 1. We were in a large plain.

2. Cassius gave a new book to his son.

3. I was telling stories to the good boy.

4. The lady of the house gives money to her faithful slave (m.).

5. The master ought to (**dēbēre**) work with his slow slave (m.).

6. They owed money to their friend (m.), to their friend (f.).

7. I was working with a bad pupil (m.).

8. We used to sail with a wretched sailor.

9. Cassius, the lieutenant, was announcing his victory to the Roman people.

10. You were moving your troops from the forest and from the plain.

READING LESSON

PUER ET AGNUS (The Boy and the Lamb)

Mārcus puer parvus erat. Fīlius agricolae miserī erat. Casa parva Mārcī in campō magnō erat. Puer agnum parvum habēbat. Agnus puerī parvī albus erat. In agrō parvō agricolae semper manēbat (*remain*). Mārcus bonus agnō cārō herbam (*grass*) saepe dabat. Laetitia (*joy*) agnī albī magna erat. Agnus parvus herbam amābat.

Cōpia cibī (*food*) semper grāta est. Mārcus agnum album amābat. Agnus dominum nōn timēbat. Vīta agnī in agrō parvō nōn misera erat. Dominus parvus cum agnō albō saepe erat. Laetitia Mārci bonī magna erat.



PUER ET AGNUS.

COLLATERAL READING

THE ROMAN ARMY

The ranks of the Roman army were broken up into three successive lines, and each line was divided further into small companies, forming the *flexible legion*.

The companies were usually six men deep, with twenty in each rank. . . . The front rank of the companies contained the raw recruits.

Experienced soldiers made up the second line of companies. The third line contained only veterans, and was usually held in reserve, to deliver a decisive blow at a critical moment in a battle. . . .



ROMAN SOLDIERS.

The legion used the hurling javelin to disorder the enemy's ranks before immediate contact, and the famous Roman short sword for close combat. . . .

The legion numbered about five thousand, and was made up of Roman citizens. Each legion was accompanied by about five thousand men from the allies. These *auxiliaries* served on the wings of the legion as light-armed troops, and they furnished also whatever cavalry the army had.

LESSON XVII

REVIEW

SINGULAR OF SECOND DECLENSION MASCULINE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN -us AND IN -er

	Puer parvus	Ager noster	Nauta bonus	<i>Endings</i>
Base :	puer- parv-	agr- nostr-	naut- bon-	
Nom. :	puer parvus	ager noster	nauta bonus	-us or -er
Gen. :	puerī parvī	agrī nostrī	nautae bonī	-ī
Dat. :	puerō parvō	agrō nostrō	nautae bonō	-ō
Acc. :	puerum par- vum	agrum nos- trum	nautam bo- num	-um
Abl. :	puerō parvō	agrō nostrō	nautā bonō	-ō

FIRST CONJUGATION

Present stem : laudā-

PRESENT	PAST
laudō	laudābam
laudās	laudābās
laudat	laudābat
laudāmus	laudābāmus
laudātis	laudābātis
laudant	laudābant

SECOND CONJUGATION

Present stem : monē-

PRESENT	PAST
moneō	monēbam
monēs	monēbās
monet	monēbat
monēmus	monēbāmus
monētis	monēbātis
monent	monēbant

Esse

PRESENT			PAST
sum	sumus	eram	erāmus
es	estis	erās	erātis
est	sunt	erat	erant

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Translate into English :

1. Nouns

FIRST DECLENSION

iniūria

memoria

SECOND DECLENSION

A. Nouns in -us

amicus	discipulus	filius	populus
campus	dominus	légātus	servus
Cassius	equus	mundus	Vergilius

B. Noun in -er, gen. -erī

puer

C. Nouns in -er, gen. -rī

ager

liber

2. Adjectives (masculine and feminine forms)

A. Adjectives in -us, -a

albus	lātus	magnus	parvus
bonus	laetus	meus	Rōmānus
cārus	longus	nōtus	suus
fīdus	malus	novus	tardus
grātus			

B. Adjective in -er, -era

miser

C. Adjectives in -er, -ra

niger	noster	piger	pulcher
	sacer	vester	

3. *Verbs*

FIRST CONJUGATION

liberō

nūntiō

SECOND CONJUGATION

teneō

4. *Adverb*

tum

5. *Idiom*

(in) memoriā tenēre



Equī Rōmānī.

(b) Divide into syllables all the words mentioned in (a), and indicate which syllable must be accented in each of them.

(c) Answer the following questions, and illustrate :

1. What are the endings of the nominative singular of masculine nouns and adjectives of the second declension?

2. What is the ending of the genitive singular of nouns in -ius?

3. Name (a) two words, ending in **-er**, which retain the **e** ;
 (b) two which lose the **e**.
4. What cases do the endings **-ī** and **-ō** indicate?
5. What case do the endings **-am** and **-um** indicate?
6. How does the adjective agree with its noun?
7. If the nominative singular of a noun ends in **-a**, how does the adjective which modifies it agree?
8. How does the possessive adjective **suus**, **sua**, agree?
9. What is the tense sign of the past tense?
10. How do you form the past tense of any verb?
11. How do the present and the past indicative differ?
12. Is the past tense of the verb **esse** regular?
13. What are the feminine Latin nouns corresponding to **dominus**, **discipulus**, **servus**, **amicus**?
14. What English words are suggested by the Latin words : **amicus**, **niger**, **tardus**, **populus**, **miser**, **mundus**, **grātus**, **campus**, **malus**, **liber**?

II. Written.

(a) Decline in the singular :

populus Rōmānus, **liber vester**, **convīva laetus suus**.

(b) Write the present and past tenses of :

1. **In campō esse**. 2. **Populum liberāre**. 3. **Librum tenēre**.

(c) Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

1. Nouns

book	friend (masc.)	memory	slave (masc.)
boy	horse	people	son
Cassius	lieutenant	plain	Vergil
field	master	pupil (masc.)	world
	injury	wrong	

2. *Adjectives (masculine and feminine forms)*

bad	good	long	sacred
beautiful	his own	my	slow
black	her own	new	their
dear	joyful	our	your
faithful	large	pleasant	white
famous	lazy	Roman	wide
		wretched	

3. *Verbs*

to announce	to free	to hold	to remember
-------------	---------	---------	-------------

4. *Adverb*

then

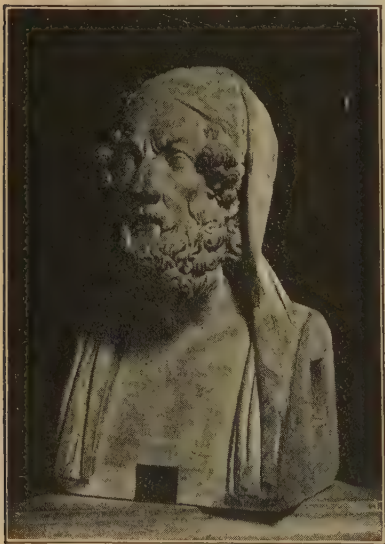
LESSON XVIII

REVIEW

READING LESSON

VERGILIUS

Ītalia patria Vergilī est. Vergilius, nātus (*born*) prope Mantuam,¹ poēta magnus Ītaliae est. Vergilius vērus (*true*) amīcus Augustī² erat. Tum Rōma domina superba (*haughty*) mundi erat. Ītalia magnum numerum (*number*) poētārum habēbat. Vergilius discipulus (*follower*) Homēri poētae Graeci (*Greek*) dīvinī (*divine*) erat.



HOMĒRUS.

Vergilius vītā rūs-
ticā (*rural*) amābat.
Poētae nātūrā (*nature*)
amant. Diligentiam et
parsimōniam agricolārum
Ītaliae laudābat; dē mag-
nā glōriā patriae semper
cantābat. Vergilium,
poētā nōtū, Ītaliae
amāre dēbēmus. Fāma

Vergilī, poētae dīvinī, aeterna est.

¹ Mantua, a city in Northern Italy.

² Augustus (B.C. 63–A.D. 14), the first Roman Emperor.

Oral.

EXERCISES

Answer the following questions, based on the preceding text :

1. Estne Gallia (*Gaul*) patria Vergili? [Answer: Nōn est.]
2. Quis (*Who*) Vergilius erat?
3. Cuius (*Whose*) amicus vērus erat?
4. Eratne Mantua domina superba mundi?
5. Habēbatne Ītalia magnum numerum poētārum?
6. Cuius Vergilius discipulus erat?
7. Eratne Homērus poēta Rōmānus?
8. Quis Homērus erat?
9. Quid Vergilius amābat?
10. Quid poētae amant?
11. Quid Vergilius laudābat?
12. Quid cantābat?
13. Cūr (*Why*) Vergilium amāre debētis? [Answer: Quia (*because*), etc.]
14. Cūr glōria Vergili aeterna est?

One of the pupils reads the questions, and his classmates answer them in complete sentences.

The Reading Lesson above may be used as a dictation.



AUGUSTUS.

COLLATERAL READING

PŪBLIUS VERGILIUS MARŌ (70-19 B.C.)

Vergil was born on a small estate near the city of Mantua in what was then called Cisalpine Gaul. When he

was twelve years old, his father sent him to school at Cremona, then later to Milan, and finally to Rome, where he devoted himself to the study of philosophy and rhetoric.

His masterpieces which won for him the favor of the Emperor Augustus and of his minister Maecenas are the *Bucolics*, ten poems of pastoral life, which are a close imitation of the *Idylls* of the Greek poet Theocritus, the *Georgics*, "exquisite poems of country life," and the *Aeneid*, an epic poem on the growth of the greatness of Rome.

For centuries, especially during the Middle Ages, the *Aeneid* was accounted the greatest work of human genius, and probably no poem has been so widely known and studied, at least in the Western world, since the Christian era.

Vergil may be lacking in originality, but "as an artist in words, he stands supreme." He is the great poet of Nature and of rural life.

LESSON XIX

SECOND DECLENSION. FUTURE OF *ESSE*

37. Nominative Plural (-ī). — The nominative plural of nouns and adjectives in **-us** or **-er** of the second declension ends in **-ī** and is formed like the genitive singular.

Note the different endings of the nominative singular and the nominative plural in the following sentences :



Equi Nigrī Sunt.

Equus niger est.

subject predicate
 adjective

The horse is black.

Equi nigrī sunt.

subject predicate
 adjective

The horses are black.

Note. The noun **vir**, *man*, has a peculiar nominative singular. The rest of the declension is like that of **puer**.

Vir bonus.

The good man.

38. Future of *esse*, to be.

MASCULINE

(I shall be an industrious
man, etc.)

Vir impiger e'rō

Vir impiger e'ris

Vir impiger e'rit

Virī impigrī e'rimus

Virī impigrī e'ritis

Virī impigrī e'runt

FEMININE

(I shall be a proud girl, etc.)

Puella superba e'rō

Puella superba e'ris

Puella superba e'rit

Puellae superbae e'rimus

Puellae superbae e'ritis

Puellae superbae e'runt

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
Horā'tius, -tī	<i>Horace</i>	Horatian
magis'ter, -trī	<i>teacher</i>	magistrate
Rōmā'nī (plur.)	<i>the Romans</i>	Romanic
so'cius, -cī	<i>ally, companion</i>	social, sociable
vir, -ī	<i>man</i>	virile
im'piger, -gra	<i>industrious</i>	
in'teger, -gra	<i>unhurt, sound</i>	integral
pau'cī, -ae (plur.)	<i>few</i>	paucity
super'bus, -a	<i>haughty, proud</i>	superb
tū'tus, -a	<i>safe</i>	tutor, tutelage
vē'rus, -a	<i>true</i>	verity
crās	<i>tomorrow</i>	procrastinate
nunc	<i>now</i>	quidnunc
quan'dō	<i>when (only interrogative)</i>	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and translate :

sum, erat, adest, eritis, es, erō, adsunt, erāmus, aberō,
estis, aberam, erunt, est, aderitis.

(b) Read carefully and translate :

1. Vir bonus amīcus vērus est ; virī bonī amīcī vērī semper erunt.

2. Socius Rōmae erō ; sociī populī Rōmānī erimus.

3. Rōmānī superbī dominī mundī erunt.

4. Horātius et Vergilius magnī poētae Ītaliae erant.

5. Discipulus impiger semper laetus erit ; discipulī pigri numquam laetī erunt.

6. Sociī nostrī paucī erant.

7. Paucī erimus, sed integrī et tūtī.

8. Quandō aberitis?

9. Crās aberimus.

(c) Point out every nominative plural in (b), and explain its use.

(d) Give the nominative plural of :

dominus bonus, puer pulcher, agricola tardus, amīcus vērus, vir superbus, socius integer, via tūta, campus lātus, ager longus, magister impiger, servus piger.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Write (1) the present, past, and future of :

1. Nōn tardus sum. 2. Nōn tarda sum.

(2) the same tenses of :

1. Paucī, sed integrī et tūtī, sumus. 2. Paucae, sed integrae et tūtae, sumus.

(b) Review. Replace (a) the singular by the plural ; (b) the present by (1) the past ; (2) the future :

1. Amīcus vērus sum. 2. Puella parva misera est.
3. Dominus mundī es. 4. Ager meus parvus est.

(c) Review. Replace (a) the plural by the singular ;
(b) the past by (1) the future ; (2) the present :

1. Agricola^{erant} impigri^{erant} erant. 2. Socii^{erant} populi Rōmāni^{erant} erātis. 3. Viae Italiae bonae erant. 4. Viri boni erāmus.
5. Nōn aderātis.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) They were, I shall be, you are not, she will be, we were, you (sing.) are, I was not, they will be away, we shall not be present.

(b) 1. I am a faithful friend (m.) ; we are faithful friends (m.) ; I was a faithful friend (f.) ; we were faithful friends (f.).

2. You will be a good pupil (m.) ; you will be good pupils (m.) ; you will be a good pupil (f.) ; you will be good pupils (f.).

3. Horace is a famous poet ; Vergil also is a great poet ; they are famous poets of Italy.

4. We (m.) shall be joyful ; we shall always be industrious.

5. I shall not be present to-morrow.

6. When will she be absent ?

7. Now the Romans are our allies.

8. The slaves (m.) of a good master will never be lazy.

9. Our teachers are good men.

10. We (m.) shall always be your true friends.

11. Our friends (m.) are few but true.

12. The allies of Rome will always be safe.

READING LESSON

NUNC ET CRĀS

Nunc pueri Rōmāni sumus ; Rōma patria nostra est ; discipuli boni sumus ; impigri, nōn tardī sumus ; cum

diligentiā labōrāmus. In scholā laetī, nōn miserī sumus; scholam amāmus. Magistrī diligentiā nostram semper laudant.

Crās virī erimus; virī probī (*honest*) erimus; nōtī erimus; nec (*neither*) malī agricolae, nec (*nor*) tardī nautae, nec pigri poētae, sed bonī agricolae, aut (*or*) perītī (*skillful*) nautae,



ATHENS.

This view shows the Acropolis and the Parthenon.

aut magnī poētae erimus. Patria prōspera (*prosperous*) erit. Socii nostrī multī (*numerous*) erunt; integrī erunt. Amīcī vērī nostrī tūti semper erunt. Superbī dominī mundi erimus.

COLLATERAL READING

QUINTUS HORATIUS FLACCUS (65–8 B.C.)

Horace was born at Venusia (Apulia). His father, a former slave, was a poor farmer, but he managed to give his son the best education the world then offered.

The boy studied at Rome and Athens (Greece) and fought at the battle of Philippi (Macedonia). On his return to

Italy, he began to write and became the author of humorous *satires*, graceful *odes*, delightful *epistles*, and the famous treatise *Art of Poetry*.

His writings, like those of Vergil, were studied in schools and known throughout the Roman Empire.

LESSON XX

SECOND DECLENSION. FIRST CONJUGATION

39. Genitive Plural (-ōrum).—The genitive plural of the second declension ends in **-ōrum**. It is formed by replacing the ending **-ī** of the genitive singular by **-ōrum**. Compare it with that of the first declension, which ends in **-ārum**, and note the different endings of the genitive singular and the genitive plural:

Diligentiam discipulī bonī laudō. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: center; gap: 20px; margin-top: 5px;"> <div style="text-align: center;">genitive case</div> <div style="text-align: center;">descrip- tive ad- jective</div> </div>	<i>I praise the diligence of the good pupil.</i>
--	--

Diligentiam discipulōrum bonōrum laudō. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: center; gap: 20px; margin-top: 5px;"> <div style="text-align: center;">genitive case</div> <div style="text-align: center;">descriptive adjective</div> </div>	<i>I praise the diligence of the good pupils.</i>
--	---

40. The Future of the First Conjugation is formed by adding to the present stem (**laudā-**) the tense sign **-bi-** and the usual personal endings.

FUTURE INDICATIVE OF **laudāre**, *to praise*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

(I shall or will praise the teacher, etc.)

magistrum laudā'bō

magistrum laudā'bimus

magistrum laudā'bis

magistrum laudā'bitis

magistrum laudā'bit

magistrum laudā'bunt

Note that **i** of the tense sign **-bi-** is dropped before **ō** in the first person singular, and becomes **u** in the third person plural.



CAPTIVĪ.

This relief shows the way the Romans sometimes treated their captives. It is one of many from Trajan's Column, a tall shaft erected in Trajan's Forum at Rome. Around the column runs a spiral band over six hundred feet long with about twenty-five hundred figures in relief. These depict various scenes from Trajan's wars with the Dacians.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH WORDS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
captī'vus, -ī	<i>captive, prisoner</i>	captivity
fu'ga, -ae	<i>flight, escape</i>	fugitive
Gal'li, -ōrum	<i>the Gauls</i>	Gallie
nu'merus, -ī	<i>number</i>	numerous
con'vocō, -ā're	<i>call together, summon</i>	convoke
iu'vō, -ā're	<i>help, aid</i>	adjuvant
pa'rō, -ā're	<i>prepare</i>	compare
ser'vō, -ā're	<i>save, rescue</i>	conserve, preserve

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and translate :

pācant, parābō, pugnātis, aderō, dabit, nūntiās, nāvigābāmus, iuvābō, nūntiābunt, servābitis, convocābimus.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Rōma patria virōrum nōtōrum erat.
2. Fāma Rōmānōrum magna est.
3. Librī puerōrum bonī esse dēbent.
4. Patriam servābis.
5. Fugam captīvōrum nōn parābitis.
6. Īram dominōrum pācābimus.
7. Magistrī diligentiam discipulōrum impigrōrum laudābunt.
8. Magnum numerum sociōrum vestrōrum convocābitis.
9. Amīcum vērum Gallōrum iuvābō.
10. Cassiō lēgātō victōriam magnam Rōmānōrum nūntiābis.

(c) Point out all the genitive plurals in (b), and explain their use.

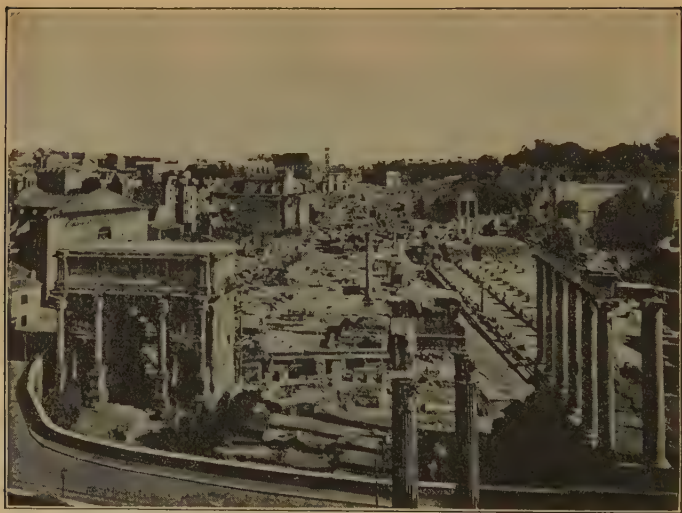
(d) Review. Add the necessary endings (1) in the singular ; (2) in the plural :

1. Fugam captīv— (genitive case) parābat.
2. Fāmam magist— (genitive case) laudābimus.
3. Glōria poēt— (genitive case) magna erit.
4. Librī puer— (genitive case) bonī esse dēbent.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Give the nominative and genitive plural of :

socius meus, poēta vērus, liber noster, vir bonus, magister vester, stella nova.



THE ROMAN FORUM.

The upper view is taken from the Capitoline hill looking southeast; the lower picture is taken from the opposite end of the Forum, looking toward the Capitoline. Compare this with the pictures on pages xxv, 31, and 150.

(b) Write the present, past, and future of **amīcum meum iuvō**, and replace **meum** by the other possessive adjectives.

Model: **amīcum tuum iuvās**, etc.

(c) Review. Replace the dashes by (a) the present ; (b) the past ; (c) the future :

1. *Nūntiāre:* Ego victōriam Gallōrum —.
2. *Iuvāre:* Gallī socium Rōmānōrum nōn —.
3. *Convocāre:* Tū magnum numerum amīcōrum —.
4. *Servāre:* Dominus servum bonum —.
5. *Parāre:* Nōs fugam nōn —.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) They will fight, I shall not give, we shall not announce, she will help, you (singular) will not rescue, he will summon, they will not prepare, I shall show, we shall not work.

(b) 1. You will announce the victory of the Gauls.
 2. They will rescue a great number of slaves (m.).
 3. The prisoners will prepare their escape.
 4. You will not like the language of the sailors.
 5. I shall show the cottages of the wretched inhabitants.
 6. We shall sing (of) the glory of the famous poets.
 7. Cassius will summon a great number of the faithful allies of Rome.

8. You (singular) will not calm the anger of the bad masters.

9. They will not help an ally of the Romans.

READING LESSON

RŌMA PRŌSPERA (Prosperous Rome)

Rŏma prŏspera erit. Rŏmānī terrās populŏrum finitimŏrum (*neighboring*) occupābunt. Fāma campŏrum fēcun-

dōrum (*fertile*) Ītalīae invidiam (*envy*) multōrum bellicōsōrum (*warlike*) barbarōrum excitābit. Victōriae Rōmānōrum crēbrae (crēber, -bra, *frequent*) erunt. Numerus captīvōrum magnus erit.

Fāma poētārum nōtōrum Ītalīae magna erit. Poētae magnī animum (*spirit*) sociōrum, dīligentiam et parsimōniam incolārum impigrōrum, scientiam magistrōrum nōtōrum laudābunt; glōriam magnam Rōmānōrum, dominōrum superbōrum mundī, cantābunt. Semper Rōma patria superba virōrum bellicōsōrum erit.

COLLATERAL READING

ROME'S PROSPERITY

Rome began as a village of rude shepherds and peasants. The village grew up into a city state and then into the queen city of a united Italy. Later, Italy was to organize the fringes of the three continents bordering the Mediterranean into one Graeco-Roman society.

But it was not Rome's genius in war, great as that was, which made the world Roman. *It was her political wisdom and her organizing power.* As Greece stands for art and intellectual culture, so Rome stands for government and law.

The poet Vergil wrote :

" . . . To rule the nations with imperial sway be thy care, O Roman. These shall be thy arts : to impose terms of peace, to spare the humbled, and to crush the proud."

LESSON XXI

SECOND DECLENSION. SECOND CONJUGATION

41. Accusative Plural (-ōs). — The accusative plural of nouns and adjectives in **-us** or **-er** of the second declension ends in **-ōs**. It is formed by replacing the ending **-ī** of the genitive singular by **-ōs**. Compare it with the ending **-ās** of the first declension.

Note the different endings of the accusative singular and the accusative plural.



EQUŌS ALBŌS VIDEŌ.

Equum **album** **videŏ.**
 direct descriptive
 object adjective

I see a white horse.

Equōs **albōs** **videŏ.**
 direct descriptive
 object adjective

I see the white horses.

42. The Future of the Second Conjugation is formed like that of the first (see § 40).

FUTURE OF *monēre*, to warn

SINGULAR

PLURAL

(I shall or will warn the Gauls, etc.)

Gallōs monē'bō

Gallōs monē'bimus

Gallōs monē'bis

Gallōs monē'bitis

Gallōs monē'bit

Gallōs monē'bunt

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
o'culus; -ī	<i>eye</i>	oculist
irā'tus, -a	<i>angry</i>	irate
perī'tus, -a	<i>skillful</i>	expert
ter'reō, -ē're	<i>frighten</i>	terrible
vās'tō, -ā're	<i>devastate</i>	waste

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and translate :

movent, timēbunt, dēbētis, dēbēbātis, dēbēbitis, nōn terrēbimus, vidēbit, tenēbis, vāstābunt, habēbō, dēlēbunt.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Multōs amīcōs habēbimus.
2. Gallī agrōs incolārum vāstābunt.
3. Rōmānī multōs captīvōs habēbunt.
4. Magistrōs irātōs timēbō.
5. Nautae perītō vītā dēbēbis.
6. Oculōs habent et nōn vidēbunt.
7. Populus Rōmānus sociōs suōs semper iuvābit.
8. Magister discipulōs tardōs nōn terrēbit.

9. Amīcī vēri sumus ; amīcōs nostrōs semper iuvābimus.
10. Amīcī vēri nōn estis ; amīcōs vestrōs numquam iuvātis.
11. Multōs perītōs nautās nōn vidēbitis.
12. Gallī Rōmānōs numquam timēbunt.

(c) Indicate all the accusative plurals in (b), and explain their use.

(d) Give the nominative, genitive, and accusative plural of :

amicus cārus vester, convīva laetus, liber nōtus, incola
īrātus, magister perītus, equus niger.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Write the present, past, and future of :

1. Puerōs nōn terrēre.
2. Agrōs vāstāre.

(b) Put the italicized words in the plural :

1. Discipulī *magistrum* nōn timent.
2. *Virum bonum* laudās.
3. Puerī *nautam perītum* iuvant.
4. *Servum* terrēbam.
5. *Campum magnum* vāstāmus.

(c) Review. Replace the present by (1) the future ;
(2) the past :

1. Oculōs bonōs habēō et vidēō.
2. Cassiō pecūniā dēbēs.
3. Ītaliā vāstātis.
4. Incolās terrent.
5. Multās iniūriās Gallōrum (in) memoriā tenēmus.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) We shall have, you (singular) will not move, you will owe, he will not fear, I shall frighten, she will destroy, we shall devastate.

(b) 1. The Romans will have many allies.

2. You will have few friends.

3. Slaves will always fear bad masters.

4. We shall warn the slow sailors.
5. You (singular) will call together joyful guests.
6. We shall help the wretched captives.
7. The teacher will frighten his new pupils.
8. The Gauls will devastate the fields of Italy.
9. The lieutenant ought (dēbēre) to summon the faithful allies of the Romans.
10. You have good eyes and you will not see.



THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS (Restored).

Gladiatorial games were held in the Colosseum (page xvi), but chariot races took place here. Compare this with the pictures on pages 83, 97, and 115.

READING LESSON

IN LŪDŌ¹ (At School)

Crās in lūdō eritis. Ibi (*there*) manēbitis. Magister multōs discipulōs habēbit. Discipulōs novōs terrēbit. Multōs sociōs, sed paucōs vērōs amīcōs, habēbitis. Bonī discipulī magistrōs irātōs nōn timēbunt. Impigrī eritis et magistrōs nōn timēbitis. Magister vester puerōs bonōs laudābit. Puerō parvō fābulam nārrābit. Impigrō discipulō librōs

¹ Lūdus, -ī, m., *game, play*, means also *school*.

pulchrōs dabit. Magistri discipulōs pigrōs et tardōs monēbunt sed nōn terrēbunt. Magistrōs novōs timēbimus.

Crās in lūdō manēre dēbēbimus, quia (*because*) pigrī sumus.

COLLATERAL READING

ITALIAN ALLIES

Most numerous of all the inhabitants of Italy stood the mass of subject Greeks, Italians, and Etruscans, under the general name of *Italian Allies*. These cities differed greatly in condition among themselves. Each one was bound to Rome by its separate treaty, and these treaties varied widely. None of the "Allies" had either the private or public rights of the Romans, and they were *isolated jealously one from another*; but in general they bore few burdens and enjoyed local self-government and Roman protection.

LESSON XXII

SECOND DECLENSION

43. Dative and Ablative Plural (-īs).— The dative and ablative plural of the second declension both end in -īs. Both are formed by replacing the ending -ī of the genitive singular by -īs, so that all dative and ablative plurals of both first and second declensions have the same ending: -īs.



A ROMAN SWORD IN ITS SHEATH.

Note the different endings of (a) the dative singular and the dative plural; (b) the ablative singular and the ablative plural:

- | | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| (a) Puerō | parvō | librum | dabō. | <i>I shall give a book to the</i> |
| indirect | descriptive | | | <i>little boy.</i> |
| object | adjective | | | |
| Puerīs | parvīs | librōs | dabō. | <i>I shall give books to the</i> |
| indirect | descriptive | | | <i>little boys.</i> |
| object | adjective | | | |
| (b) Gladiō | longō | pugnat. | | <i>He fights with a long</i> |
| ablative | descriptive | | | <i>sword.</i> |
| of means | adjective | | | |
| Gladiīs | longīs | pugnant. | | <i>They fight with long</i> |
| ablative | descriptive | | | <i>swords.</i> |
| of means | adjective | | | |

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
amīci'tia, -ae	<i>friendship</i>	amity
gla'dius, -dī	<i>sword</i>	gladiator
fīni'timus, -a	<i>neighboring</i>	finite
quid?	<i>what?</i>	quid pro quo
dē (with ablative)	<i>of, about</i>	deviate, deject
cōnfir'mō, -ā're	<i>establish</i>	confirm
pu'tō, -ā're	<i>think</i>	putative
amicitiā cōfirmāre	<i>make a treaty of alliance</i>	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and translate :

pugnābit, dēbēs, vocāmus, timēbant, cōfirmābō, putābam, vāstābimus, terrēbit, putābimus, habēbitis.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Incolae in agrīs, nōn in silvīs sunt.
2. Magister discipulīs fābulās nārrābit.
3. Nautīs perītis pecūniā dabunt.
4. Quid dē lēgātīs novīs putās?
5. Rōmānī gladiīs parvīs pugnābant.
6. Sociīs nostrīs victōriā nūtiābimus.
7. Quandō ē silvīs cōpiās vestrās movēbitis?
8. Cum Rōmānīs superbīs pugnābimus.
9. Cum populīs finitimīs amīcitiam cōfirmābis.
10. Cum servīs tardīs et pigrīs labōrāre dēbēbunt.

(c) Point out in (b) : (1) all the datives ; (2) all the ablatives. Explain each case.

(d) Decline in both numbers :

puer parvus, puella parva, nauta laetus, filius meus, vir miser, ager noster.

(e) Review. Add the necessary endings (a) in the singular ; (b) in the plural :

1. Amīc— (indirect object) pecūniam dēbēbam. 2. Quid dē libr— nov— putātis? 3. Cum naut— perīt— nāvigō.
4. Cum popul— finitim— amīcitiam cōfirmābāmus.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Write the present, past, and future of :

1. Quid putāre? 2. Quid vidēre?

(b) Review. Replace the past by (a) the present ; (b) the future :

1. Puerīs librōs bonōs dare dēbēbant. 2. Cassius captīvōs iuvābat. 3. Rōmānī incolās terrēbant. 4. Agrōs vāstābāmus.

(c) Review. Put the verb :

- (a) in the singular : Cum servīs labōrāmus.
- (b) in the plural : Oculōs habēs, sed nōn vidēs.
- (c) in the present : Librī pulchrī grātī erunt.
- (d) in the future : Rōmam vāstātis.
- (e) in the past : Servōs terrēre dēbeō.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) We show, you used to fear, they will not free, you (singular) are thinking, she must, we shall devastate, I did not announce, you will frighten.

- (b) 1. The cottages are in large plains.
2. What do you think of our new teachers?
3. I shall not work with slow pupils.
4. Teachers will give new books to good pupils.
5. The wretched farmer owes money to my friends.
6. The teacher will not tell stories to lazy pupils.

7. You (singular) will announce the victory to our faithful allies.

8. The Gauls ought not to form an alliance with the haughty Romans.

9. We shall navigate with skillful sailors.

10. They fight with¹ swords; we fight with long spears.



VAE VICTĪS!

Brennus throwing his sword into the scales. See page 124.

READING LESSON

VAE VICTĪS! (Woe to the Vanquished!)

Dominī mundī erimus. Multōs sociōs habēbimus. Cum cūctis (*all*) populis finitimis amicitiam cōfirmābimus. Gallōs nōn amāmus. Cum sociis nostris in pugnīs (*pugna, -ae, battle*) crēbris (*frequent*) pugnant. Socii Rōmānōrum nōn tūtī sunt. Galli sociōs nostrōs terrent. Sociōrum nostrōrum casās dēlent et agrōs vāstant. Sed sociōs nostrōs iuvābimus et servābimus. Iniūriās Gallōrum (*in*) memoriā

¹ See § 23, note.

tenēbimus et vindicābimus (*avenge*). Gallōs superābimus (*vanquish*). Numerus captīvōrum magnus erit. Galliam occupābimus, incolās terrēbimus, casās dēlēbimus, agrōs vāstābimus. Vae victīs!

COLLATERAL READING

ROME SACKED BY THE GAULS, AND SAVED BY THE GEESE (390 B.C.)

A horde of Gauls, who had overrun Etruria, defeated the Roman army and cut it off from the city. . . . A small garrison, under the soldier *Marcus Manlius*, garrisoned the Capitoline citadel. Later Romans told the story that one night the barbarians had almost surprised even this last defense, but some hungry geese, kept there for religious sacrifices, awakened Manlius by their noisy cackling just in time for him to hurl back the first-comers from the walls.

The Gauls sacked the rest of the city and held it seven months. But their host was ravaged by the deadly malaria of the Roman plain, and they had little skill or patience for a regular siege. Finally they withdrew on the payment of a ransom.

When the sum was being paid, the Romans accused the victors of using false weights. Then the Gallic leader, *Brennus*, throwing his heavy sword into the scales, uttered the famous phrase: "Vae victīs!"

LESSON XXIII

VOCATIVE. IMPERATIVE

44. The Vocative or case of address has the same form as the nominative in all the declensions, with the following exceptions :

1. The vocative singular of nouns and adjectives in **-us** of the second declension ends in **-e**.

2. But in **filius** and proper nouns ending in **-ius** the **-ie** contracts to **-ī**. See § 31, note.

3. The vocative of **meus** is **mī**.

(\bar{O}) poēta!	(\bar{O}) domine!	(<i>O</i>) <i>poet!</i>	(<i>O</i>) <i>master!</i>
(\bar{O}) Domine!		(<i>O</i>) <i>Lord!</i>	
(\bar{O}) Vergi'li!	(\bar{O}) mī fili!	(<i>O</i>) <i>Vergil!</i>	(<i>O</i>) <i>my son!</i>

45. The Present Imperative has only two forms, the second person singular and plural.

The second person singular of the present imperative of *any* verb in the active voice is like the present stem.

The second person plural of the first and second conjugations is formed by adding **-te** to the singular.

PRESENT IMPERATIVE OF **laudāre**, *to praise*

Dominum laudā.	<i>Praise thou the Lord.</i>
Dominum laudāte.	<i>Praise ye the Lord.</i>

PRESENT IMPERATIVE OF **monēre**, *to warn*

Malōs monē.	<i>Warn (thou) the wicked.</i>
Malōs monēte.	<i>Warn (ye) the wicked.</i>

PRESENT IMPERATIVE OF *esse*, to *be*

Bonus (m.), **bona** (f.) **es**. *Be good* (singular).

Bonī (m.), **bonae** (f.) **este**. *Be good* (plural).

Note. The verb form **es** may mean *you* (singular) *are*, or *be*; the reader must be guided by the context.



DOMINUM LAUDĀTE.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS

ENGLISH MEANINGS

RELATED
ENGLISH WORDS

ta'bula, -ae

map

table

do'leō, -ē're

be sorry for, lament

dolorous

gau'deō, -ē're

rejoice

gaudy

ō'rō, -ā're

beseech, pray

oratory

rī'deō, -ē're

laugh, laugh at

deride

Ō!

O! oh!

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) (1) Give the present stem of:

mōnstrāre, dēlere, vāstāre, terrēre, ōrāre, nūntiāre, gaudēre, dare, vocāre;

(2) Divide these infinitives into syllables, indicating which one must be accented.

(b) Identify and translate:

pācā, es, timē, ōrā, rīdēte, nārrāte, este, habē, liberā, pugnāte, dolē, gaudē, dā (see footnote, page 44).

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Puellae parvae rosās dā, Octāvia.¹
2. Amīcōs tuōs iuvā, mī cāre amīce.
3. Impigrī este, meī cārī amīcī.
4. Bona es, mea cāra amīca ; bonōs iuvā et laudā.
5. Servum bonum liberā, domine, et servum tardum monē.
6. Tabulam vidēte, discipulī, et magistrō Rōmam mōnstrāte.
7. Dominum ōrā et timē, mī fili.
8. Sociōs Rōmānōrum iuvā, Cassī, et cum Gallīs amicitiam cōfirmā.
9. Laetī este, puerī ; numquam dolēte ; semper ridēte et gaudēte.
10. Victōriās patriae cantā, Vergilī, et populum Rōmānum laudā.



TABULAM VIDĒTE.

(d) Indicate all the vocatives in (c).

(e) Give the vocatives of the following words :

Rōma, nauta, puer laetus, servus tardus, populus Rōmānus, magister irātus, socius meus, Cassius superbus, filius bonus, agricolae pigri (plural).

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Write the present imperative of :

parāre, vidēre, habēre, nārrāre, esse, dare, nūntiāre, dolēre, dēlēre, servāre.

(b) Review. Make plural the verb forms which are in the singular, and vice versa :

¹ A Latin vocative is seldom the first word of the sentence.

1. Discipulum bonum laudā. 2. Puerīs fābulās nārrāte.
 3. Puer bonus es (*translate two ways*). 4. Puellae impi-
 grae este. 5. Captīvōs
 servāte. 6. Stellās pul-
 chrās vidēte. 7. Victō-
 riās nūntiā.



HEAD OF A VESTAL VIRGIN.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin,
 marking all long
 vowels:

(a) (Use both forms
 of the present impera-
 tive) Call, warn, see,
 pray, show, fear, have,
 love, be, never praise,
 rejoice, laugh.

(b) 1. Cassius,¹ show
 the map of the world.

2. Daughters,¹ beseech and love the Lord.
3. My son, work, and be joyful.
4. Teachers, tell pleasant stories to your pupils.
5. Roman people, make a treaty of alliance with the Gauls.
6. Dear friend, prepare my escape.
7. Farmers, see the fields and the plains, and rejoice.
8. Allies, never help the Romans.
9. Slaves, be good, work with diligence.
10. Cassius, laugh, and rejoice; never lament.

READING LESSON

MĪ FĪLĪ!

Bonus es, mī fīlī; sī (*if*) bonus es, semper laetus eris. Dis-
 cipulus impiger es; magistrī discipulōs impigrōs laudant.

¹ Remember the footnote on page 127.

Semper cum diligentia labōrā. Multōs amīcōs habē sed sociōs malōs vitā (*avoid*). Amīcōs vērōs amā et laudā; miseris pecūniā dā, pueris viam rēctam mōnstrā, bonōs iuvā, numquam irātus es; numquam iniuriās tuās vindicā. Sī (*if*) miser es, ridē et gaudē. Dominum mundi laudā et timē.



THE SO-CALLED TEMPLE OF VESTA AT ROME.

COLLATERAL READING

THE ROMAN GODS

The Romans were pagans. Religion centered about the home and the daily tasks. For each house the door had its protecting god *Janus*, two-faced, looking in and out; and

each hearth fire had the goddess *Vesta*. When the city grew powerful, it had a city *Janus* and a city *Vesta*. In the ancient round temple of *Vesta*, the holy fire of the city was kept always bright by the priestesses (*Vestal Virgins*). For the fire to go out or to be defiled in any way would mean disaster.

Next to the *house gods* came the *gods of the farm*: *Saturn*, the god of sowing; *Ceres*, the goddess who made the grain grow; . . . and *Terminus*, a god who dwelt in each boundary pillar, to guard the bounds of the farm, and, later, the boundaries of the state.

. . . Each Latin tribe had its ancestral deity. The war god, Mars, was at first the special god of Rome. But at the head of all the tribal gods of Latium stood Jupiter (Father Jove); and when Rome became the central Latin power, Jupiter became the center of the Roman religion.

LESSON XXIV

REVIEW LESSON

46. Review of Second Declension Words in *-us* and *-er*.

	SINGULAR			<i>Endings</i>
	Puer parvus	Ager noster	Nauta bonus	
Base :	puer- parv-	agr- nostr-	naut- bon-	
Nom. :	puer parvus	ager noster	nauta bonus	-us or -er
Gen. :	puerī parvī	agrī nostrī	nautae bonī	-ī
Dat. :	puerō parvō	agrō nostrō	nautae bonō	-ō
Acc. :	puerum parvum	agrum nostrum	nautam bonum	-um
Abl. :	puerō parvō	agrō nostrō	nautā bonō	-ō

	PLURAL			
Nom. :	puerī parvī	agrī nostrī	nautae bonī	-ī
Gen. :	puerōrum	agrōrum	nautārum	-ōrum
	parvōrum	nostrōrum	bonōrum	
Dat. :	puerīs parvīs	agrīs nostrīs	nautīs bonīs	-īs
Acc. :	puerōs parvōs	agrōs nostrōs	nautās bonōs	-ōs
Abl. :	puerīs parvīs	agrīs nostrīs	nautīs bonīs	-īs

47. The Conjugation of Verbs.

PRESENT	PAST	FUTURE
	FIRST CONJUGATION	
laudō	laudābam	laudābō
laudās	laudābās	laudābis
laudat	laudābat	laudābit
laudāmus	laudābāmus	laudābimus
laudātis	laudābātis	laudābitis
laudent	laudābant	laudābunt

PRESENT	PAST	FUTURE
SECOND CONJUGATION		
moneō	monēbam	monēbō
monēs	monēbās	monēbis
monet	monēbat	monēbit
monēmus	monēbāmus	monēbimus
monētis	monēbātis	monēbitis
monent	monēbant	monēbunt

Esse

sum	eram	erō
es	erās	eris
est	erat	erit
sumus	erāmus	erimus
estis	erātis	eritis
sunt	erant	erunt

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION	Esse
laudā	monē	es
laudāte	monēte	este

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Translate the following words :

1. *Nouns*

FIRST DECLENSION		
amicitia	fuga	tabula

SECOND DECLENSION

A. *Nouns in -us*

captīvus	gladius	numerus	Rōmānī
Gallī	Horātius	oculus	socius

B. Noun in -er, gen. -ri
magister

C. Noun with Special Form
vir

2. Adjectives (masculine and feminine forms)

A. Adjectives in -us, -a

finitimus	irātus	paucī	perītus
superbus	tūtus	vērūs	

B. Adjectives in -er, -ra
impiger **integer**

3. Verbs

FIRST CONJUGATION

cōfirmō	iuvō	parō	servō
convocō	ōrō	putō	vāstō

SECOND CONJUGATION

doleō	gaudeō	rīdeō	terreō
--------------	---------------	--------------	---------------

4. Other Parts of Speech

crās	dē	nunc	quandō?	quid?
-------------	-----------	-------------	----------------	--------------

5. Idiom

amicitiā cōfirmāre

(b) Divide all the words in (a) into syllables, indicating which one must be accented.

(c) Answer the following questions and illustrate your answers:

1. What cases does the ending **-ī** indicate?

2. How does the genitive plural of the first declension differ from that of the second?

3. (a) What is the common ending of the dative and the ablative plural of both declensions? (b) By what case is the preposition **dē** followed?

4. How does the accusative plural of the second declension differ from that of the first?

5. What is the meaning of the term "vocative"?

6. What is the ending of the vocative singular of (a) nouns and adjectives in **-us** of the second declension; (b) of proper nouns in **-ius**; (c) of **filius** and **meus**; (d) of any other noun singular or plural?

7. What is the tense sign of the future?

8. How are the futures of the first and second conjugations, active voice, formed?

9. Is the future of **esse** formed regularly?

10. How is the present imperative of the first and second conjugations in the active voice formed?

11. What is the present imperative of **esse**?

12. What Latin words are suggested by the following English words:

virile, numerous, oculist, gladiator, table, deride, pugnacious, caress, vocative, dative, gaudy, expert, viaduct, procrastinate?

II. Written.

(a) Write all the case forms, including the vocative, of the following Latin words:

(1) in the singular: **Horātius poēta**;

(2) in both numbers: **populus finitimus, magister peritus, incola irātus**;

(3) in the plural: **paucī amicī**.

(b) Give the present, past, future, and the present imperative of: 1. **Sociōs servāre**. 2. **Captīvōs terrēre**.

(c) Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

1. *Nouns (nominative and genitive singular)*

ally	flight	Horace	the Romans
captive	friendship	man	sword
eye	the Gauls	map	teacher
		number	

2. *Adjectives (masculine and feminine forms)*

angry	industrious	safe	sound
few	neighboring	skillful	true

3. *Verbs (1st person singular, and infinitive)*

to beseech	to help	to pray	to save
to devastate	to lament	to prepare	to summon
to establish	to laugh	to rejoice	to think
to frighten			

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

now	to-morrow	what?	when?
	of (about)		

5. *Idiom*

to make a treaty of alliance

LESSON XXV

READING LESSON

DE GALLIĀ (Gaul)

Gallia patria Gallōrum erat. Incolae Galliae Galli erant. Trēs (*three*) populī, Belgae (*the Belgians*), Celtae (*the Celts*), Aquitānī (*the Gascons*) in Galliā habitābant (*live*). Rōmānī suā linguā Celtās Gallōs appellābant (*call, name*).



THE DYING GAUL.

A famous statue in Rome, formerly called the "Dying Gladiator."

Gallia multās et magnās silvās sed paucōs fēcundōs campōs habēbat. Incolae miserī in vicīs (*hamlet*) parvis habitābant. In silvis multae ferae errābant (*prowl*).

Gallia ab oceanō ad Germāniam et Helvētiam (*Switzerland*) et Ītaliā pertinēbat (*extend*).

Gallī, virī bellicōsī, cum sociīs Rōmānōrum saepe pugnant ; Rōmānōs nōn amant ; cum Rōmānīs amicitiam nōn cōfirmant ; sociōs Rōmānōrum terrent.

Mox (*soon*) Rōmānī iniūriās sociōrum suōrum vindicābunt, Gallōs superābunt, Galliam occupābunt ; casās dēlēbunt et agrōs vāstābunt et incolās terrēbunt ; numerus captīvōrum magnus erit. Vae victīs !

Oral.

Answer the following questions, based on the preceding text :

1. Eratne Germānia patria Gallōrum? 2. Cuius (*of what*) terrae incolae erant? 3. Quī (*what*) populī in Galliā habitābant? 4. Quōs (*whom*) Rōmānī suā linguā Gallōs appellābant? 5. Habēbatne Gallia paucās silvās et multōs fēcundōs campōs? 6. Erantne silvae in Galliā? 7. Quae (*what*) bēstiae in silvīs Galliae errābant? 8. Eratne Gallia magna terra?

9. Suntne Gallī bellicōsī? 10. Quibuscum (*with whom*) saepe pugnant? 11. Amantne Rōmānōs? 12. Suntne sociī Rōmānōrum? 13. Quōs Gallī terrent? 14. Quid Rōmānī vindicābunt? 15. Quem (*what*) populum superābunt? 16. Quam (*what*) terram occupābunt? 17. Quid dēlēbunt? 18. Quid vāstābunt? 19. Quōs terrēbunt?

Note. The preceding text or part of it may be used for drill in dictation.

COLLATERAL READING

GAUL

Gaul was the name of two distinct regions. One was *Cisalpine Gaul* (that is, Gaul this side of the Alps, from the Roman standpoint), which included northern Italy and was for a long time peopled by Gallic tribes (see Collateral Reading, page 61). It became a Roman possession in 222 B.C.

The other was *Transalpine Gaul* (that is, Gaul beyond the Alps, from the Roman standpoint), which was bounded by the Alps, the Pyrenees, the ocean, and the Rhine. It was peopled by numerous warlike tribes, and covered with immense forests. Most of this was conquered by Caesar



ROMAN RUINS IN GAUL.

This is known as the Imperial Palace at Treves (Trier) on the Moselle.

It shows how elaborately the Romans built, even in the provinces.

(58-50 B.C.) and enjoyed real prosperity under the Roman Empire, which protected it from German invasions, built in it many great public works, roads, aqueducts, temples, amphitheatres, triumphal arches, etc., and founded or developed such large towns as Lyons, Arles, Toulouse, Bordeaux, Orleans, and Lutetia Parisiorum (the old name of Paris).

LESSON XXVI

SECOND DECLENSION. VERB ESSE

48. Gender. — There are three genders in Latin as in English: masculine, feminine, and neuter. The second declension includes nouns in **-us** and **-er** (all used in these lessons are masculine), and nouns in **-um** (all are neuter).

49. Nominative, Genitive, and Accusative Neuter Singular of the Second Declension. — The nominative and accusative singular of neuter nouns and adjectives of the second declension have a common ending: **-um**.

The genitive singular ends in **-ī**, like that of the nouns and adjectives in **-us** and **-er**. It is formed by replacing the ending **-um** of the nominative singular by **-ī**. See § 31, note.

Templum pulchrum est.

subject predicate
 adjective

The temple is beautiful.

Fāma templī antīquī magna est.

genitive descriptive
case adjective

The fame of the ancient temple is great.

Templum pulchrum videō.

direct descriptive
object adjective

I see the beautiful temple.

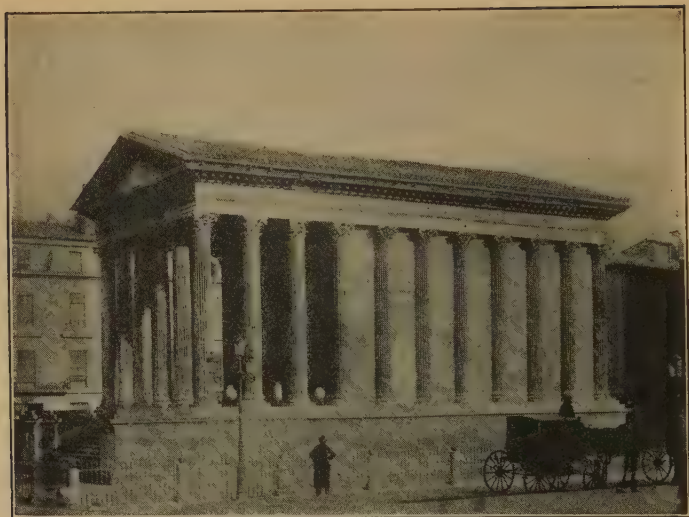
50. Perfect Tense. — The endings of the perfect indicative of *every* Latin verb in the active voice are:

SINGULAR

- 1st person: **-ī**
- 2d person: **-istī**
- 3d person: **-it**

PLURAL

- imus**
- istis**
- ērunt**



TEMPLUM PULCHRUM EST.

This temple at Nîmes in Southern France is the best preserved Roman temple in the world.

PERFECT INDICATIVE OF **esse**, *to be*; perfect stem : **fu-**

SINGULAR

PLURAL

(I was or I have been lazy, etc.)

piger (m.), pigra (f.) fu'ī	pigrī (m.), pigrae (f.) fu'imus
piger (m.), pigra (f.) fuis'tī	pigrī (m.), pigrae (f.) fuis'tis
piger (m.), pigra (f.) fu'it	pigrī (m.), pigrae (f.) fuērunt

Note. The past is also called the *imperfect* or the *past descriptive* to distinguish it from the perfect. It denotes verbal action as unfinished or habitual: **piger eram**, I was lazy, in the sense that *I used to be lazy*, I continued to be, it was a habit. The perfect, on the other hand, denotes single or finished verbal action: **piger fui**, *I have been lazy*, *I was lazy* at one time, but perhaps I'm not lazy now.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
op'pidum, -ī	<i>town</i>	
perī'culum, -ī	<i>danger</i>	peril
proe'lium, -lī	<i>combat</i>	
sig'num, -ī	<i>sign, signal</i>	signify
tem'plum, -ī	<i>temple</i>	templar
antī'quus, -a, -um ¹	<i>ancient</i>	antique
Grae'cus, -a, -um	<i>Greek</i>	Graeco-Roman
mag'nus, -a, -um	<i>large, great</i>	magnitude
nos'ter, -tra, -trum	<i>our</i>	paternoster
no'vus, -a, -um	<i>new</i>	novice
pū'blicus, -a, -um	<i>public</i>	publicist
pul'cher, -chra, -chrum	<i>beautiful, hand- some, fine</i>	pulchritude

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and translate :

sumus, eris, erant, fuimus, erimus, es, fuistī, sunt, fuērunt, erō, fuistis, abes, adfui, aderunt, āfui (instead of abfui).

(b) Translate the following expressions, and explain the agreement of every adjective :

ager magnus, silva magna, oppidum magnum, puerum pulchrum, rosam pulchram, templum pulchrum, glōria Rōmae antiquae, fāma templi antiqui.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Proelium longum fuit.

2. Cassius signum proeli dat.

¹ Henceforth the feminine and neuter forms of every adjective will follow the masculine form : antīquus, antiqua, antiquum.

3. Templum pūblicum magnum fuit.
4. Perīculum nōn timētis.
5. Templum novum pulchrum est.
6. Fāma templī Graecī magna erat.
7. Puerī templum antīquum vidēbunt.
8. Oppidum magnum vidēbitis.
9. Incolae oppidī antīquī laetī fuērunt.
10. Aduimus; nōn adfuistis.

(d) Point out in (c), (1) the neuter singular nominatives; (2) the neuter singular accusatives; (3) the neuter singular genitives, and explain their uses.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) (1) On the model of **magnus**, m., **magna**, f., **magnum**, n., give the masculine, feminine, and neuter forms, nominative case, of :

bonus, **longus**, **lātus**, **laetus**, **cārus**, **parvus**, **meus**, **tuus**, **suus**, **perītus**, **tardus**, **tūtus**;

(2) on the model of **pulcher**, m., **pulchra**, f., **pulchrum**, n., give the masculine, feminine, and neuter forms, nominative case, of :

noster, **niger**, **vester**, **piger**, **impiger**, **sacer**, **integer**;

(3) form a few sentences, using some of these adjectives in connection with neuter nouns, such as **templum**, **oppidum**, **perīculum**, **proelium**, **signum**.

(b) Give the genitive and accusative singular of :

oppidum parvum, **perīculum novum**, **templum sacrum**, **proelium longum**, **signum bonum**.

(c) Give the present and perfect of :

1. **Cum amīcīs esse.**
2. **Nōn semper adesse.**

(d) Review. Replace the dash by (a) the present ; (b) the perfect ; (c) the past ; (d) the future of *esse* :

1. Ego cum magistrō ——. 2. Vōs peritī ——. 3. Nōs laetī ——. 4. Oppidum nōtum ——. 5. Tardus —, mī amice.



RŌMĀNĪ OPPIDUM OPPUGNANT.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, using the perfect tense when the verb form is italicized, and marking all long vowels :

(a) I am, I used to be, he *was*, we shall not be, they are, we *were*, she *was* present, they *were* absent.

(b) 1. The beautiful temple was new.

2. The town was small but famous.

3. The danger of the town *was* great.

4. He will not see the new signal.

5. I see the ancient temple.

6. The inhabitants of the large town *were* safe.

7. You (singular) will give the signal of the combat.

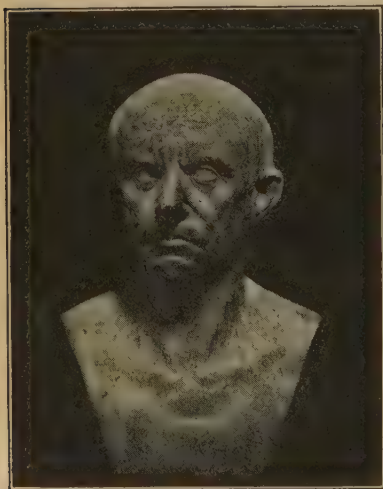
8. She praises the fame of the public temple.

9. You *were* away, but I *was* present.
10. The allies of the famous town *were* many.
11. They were fearing a new danger.
12. We shall see a long combat.

READING LESSON

RŌMĀNĪ OPPIDUM DĒLENT

Oppidum antīquum et nōtum est. Rŏmānī oppidum op-



CATŌ.

This is the old Roman who used to end all his speeches in the Senate with the words: "Carthage must be blotted out."

pugnant (*besiege*). Incolae oppidī antīquī periculum timent. Periculum oppidī magnum est. Tubae (*trumpet*) signum proelī dant. Cōpiae Rŏmānōrum multae sunt, incolae paucī sunt. Rŏmānī oppidum expugnant (*take by storm*). Incolās miserōs oppidī fugant (*put to flight*) aut (*or*) necant (*kill*). Cōpiae Rŏmānōrum casās et templum oppidī dēlent. Templum novum erat; templum novum nōtum erat; parvum sed pulchrum erat. Fāma templī novī magna erat.

COLLATERAL READING

CARTHAGE¹ "BLOTTED OUT"

. . . The Roman fleet and army proceeded to Carthage, and played out an act of masterful treachery by successive steps.

¹ Carthage, an ancient Phoenician colony on the finest harbor in North Africa, the great rival of Rome.

First, at the demand of the Roman general, Carthage sent as hostages to the Roman camp three hundred boys of the noblest families. . . . Then, on further command, the city dismantled its walls and stripped its arsenal. . . . Next, the shipping was all surrendered. Finally, now that the city was supposed to be utterly defenseless, came the announcement that it must be destroyed and the people removed to



CARTHAGE.

View of the citadel across the commercial harbor. Compare this with the pictures on pages 82, 191, 241, and 295.

some spot *ten miles inland*, away from the sea from which, from dim antiquity, they had drawn their living.

Despair blazed into passionate wrath, and the Carthaginians chose death rather than ruin and exile, . . . and, to the angry dismay of Rome, Carthage stood a four years' siege, holding out heroically against famine, pestilence, and war.

At last the legions forced their way over the walls. . . . Then, *by express orders from Rome*, the city was burned to the ground, and its site was plowed up, sown to salt, and cursed.

LESSON XXVII

SECOND DECLENSION. FIRST CONJUGATION

51. The Dative and Ablative Singular of neuter nouns and adjectives of the second declension have the common ending **-ō**. They are formed like the same cases of words ending in **-us** and **-er** (see § 35).



IN PERICULŌ MAGNŌ EST.

Praesidiō parvō frūmentum damus. *We give grain to the small garrison.*
 indirect object descriptive adjective

In periculō magnō est. *He is in great danger.*
 ablative of place descriptive adjective

52. The Perfect Stem of a verb is obtained by dropping the vowel *-ī* of the perfect indicative, first singular: **laudāvi**; perfect stem: **laudāv-**.

The perfect indicative of all verbs is formed by adding to the perfect stem (**laudāv-**) the personal endings: *-ī, -istī, -it, -imus, -istis, -ērunt* (see § 50).

PERFECT OF **laudāre**, *to praise*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

(I praised or I have praised the garrison, etc.)

praesidium laudā'vī

praesidium laudā'vimus

praesidium laudāvis'tī

praesidium laudāvis'tis

praesidium laudā'vit

praesidium laudāvē'runt

Exceptions. All the verbs of the first conjugation met so far are conjugated like **laudāre**, except two: **dare** and **iuvāre**, whose principal parts ¹ are:

PRESENT
INDICATIVE

PRESENT
INFINITIVE

PERFECT

PAST
PARTICIPLE

dō

dare

dedī

datus

iuvō

iuvāre

iūvī

iūtus

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS

ENGLISH MEANINGS

RELATED
ENGLISH WORDS

bel'lum, -ī

war

bellicose, belligerent

frūmen'tum, -ī

grain

praesi'dium, -dī

garrison

presidio

tu'ba, -ae

trumpet

tube

i'bi

there

alibi

col'locō, -ā're, -ā'vī,

-ā'tus

place

collocate

oc'cupō, -ā're, -ā'vī,

-ā'tus

occupy

occupation

¹ Henceforth the principal parts will be given in the special vocabularies in this same order.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Give the perfect stem of :

vocāre, mōnstrāre, parāre, labōrāre, nārrāre, nūntiāre,
dare, iuvāre, collocāre.



TUBA.

(b) Identify and translate :

vocāvimus, convocāvistis, occupāvit, parāvistī, servāvī,
dedistis, iūvērunt, collocāvimus.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. In templō nōtō fuimus.
2. Incolae oppidī in periculō magnō fuērunt.
3. Bellum longum parāvimus.
4. Praesidiō victōriam nūntiāvī.
5. Tubae sīgnūm proelī dedērunt.
6. E periculō novō sociōs servāvistis.
7. Cōpia magna frūmentī in oppidō parvō erat.
8. Incolīs miserīs frūmentum dedimus.
9. Sociōs Rōmānōrum nōn iūvistī.
10. Cassius lēgātus oppidum occupāvit et ibi praesidium collocāvit.

(d) Point out in (c), (1) the datives ; (2) the ablatives,
and explain their uses.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline in the singular :

frūmentum bonum, bellum magnum, praesidium parvum.

(b) Review. Add the suitable singular endings :

1. In templ— Graec— erat. 2. Puellae pericul— (direct object) timent. 3. Praesidi— (direct object) ibi collocāvit. 4. Cassium ē pericul— magn— servāvērunt.
5. Incolae in oppid— nōn sunt.

(c) Write the perfect of :

1. **Oppidum occupāre.** 2. **Signum proelī dare.**

(d) Review. Replace the dash by (a) the present ; (b) the perfect ; (c) the future ; (d) the past indicative of the italicized infinitive.

1. *Esse*: Puerī in templō —.
2. *Occupāre*: Rōmānī oppidum —.
3. *Dare*: Nōs oppidō frūmentum —.
4. *Collocāre*: Vōs praesidium in oppidō —.
5. *Parāre*: Tū bellum —.
6. *Iuvāre*: Incolae sociōs nostrōs —.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, using the perfect in every sentence, and marking all long vowels :

(a) They called, he showed, I did not give, she helped, you (singular) placed, we announced, you have occupied.

(b) 1. The Romans prepared a new war.

2. The danger of war was great.

3. Our town was in a new danger.

4. The garrison was in the town.

5. I placed a small garrison there.

6. They gave grain to their friends.

7. He rescued his allies from a new danger.

8. We helped the wretched garrison.

9. You (singular) did not announce our great victory to the inhabitants of the town.

10. The troops of the Romans occupied our country.

READING LESSON

RŌMĀNĪ ET GALLĪ

Gallī gaudēbant; laetī erant; bellum parābant. Cōpiam frūmentī habēbant. Rŏmānī quoque bellum parābant. Oppidum magnum occupāvērunt et ibi praesidium collocāvērunt. Oppidum antīquum erat et templum pulchrum ibi erat.



A RESTORATION OF THE FORUM LOOKING NORTHWEST.

Compare this with the pictures on pages xxv, 31, 112, and 161.

Gallī tubā longā signum proelī dedērunt et gladiīs magnīs pugnāvērunt. Rŏmānī in periculō magnō erant, sed nōn timēbant. Gallī campum Rŏmānōrum occupāvērunt et agrōs vastāvērunt, Rŏmānī tūtī in oppidō manēbant.

Crās Gallī cum Rŏmānīs amīcitiam cōfirmābunt.

COLLATERAL READING

THE EARLY LATINS

The Latins called their district Latium . . . and the straggling village *Alba Longa* (The Long White Town) was

the recognized leader of the Latin tribes in war . . . against the powerful Etruscans across the Tiber. . . . But in many ways those dangerous neighbors had become necessary to Latin comfort. The Latins themselves were peasant farmers. There were no smiths or artisans among them. If a farmer needed a plowshare or a knife, he drove an ox across the plain to the bank of the Tiber, or sometimes carried grain there, to trade it to some Etruscan for the tool.

. . . About 12 miles up the Tiber from its mouth, . . . the river could be crossed by a ford. . . . To this place Etruscan traders very early began to bring wares of metal and wood on regular "market days," . . . and to the same point the Sabines from the foothills of the Apennines floated down their wine and grain on flat barges. Just south of the ford rose a remarkable group of seven low hills. The level space between these hills, opening on the river, became the regular marketplace, or *Forum*, for all this trade.

LESSON XXVIII

SECOND DECLENSION. SECOND CONJUGATION

53. (a) The Nominative and Accusative Neuter Plural of the second declension have a common ending (-a). They are formed by replacing the ending -ī of the genitive singular by -a.

(b) The Genitive Neuter Plural ends in -ōrum. It is formed like that of the other nouns of the second declension (see § 39).



TEMPLA GRAECA ANTĪQUA SUNT.

Templa subject	Graeca descriptive adjective	antīqua predicate adjective	sunt.	<i>The Greek temples are ancient.</i>
Templa direct object	Graeca descriptive adjective	videō.		<i>I see Greek temples.</i>
Fāmam	templōrum genitive case	Graecōrum descriptive adjective	laudō.	<i>I praise the fame of the Greek temples.</i>

54. The Perfect of the Second Conjugation is formed, like that of the first, by adding the personal endings of the perfect to the perfect stem (see § 52). The perfect stem of the second conjugation usually ends in -u.

PERFECT OF *monēre*, to warn: perfect stem: *monu-*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

(I warned or have warned the inhabitants, etc.)

incolās mo'nui

incolās monu'imus

incolās monuis'ti

incolās monuis'tis

incolās mo'nuit

incolās monuē'runt

Exceptions: The verbs of the second conjugation met so far have the perfect formed on the model of *monui*, with the following exceptions:

dēleō

dēlēre

dēlēvi

dēlētus

moveō

movēre

mōvi

mōtus

rideō

ridēre

rīsi

rīsus

videō

vidēre

vidi

visus

The perfect of *gaudēre* is especially irregular and will be given and explained later.

55. Place. In general, place is expressed as follows:

(a) Place *in, at, or on* which — *in* with the ablative case.

(b) Place *from* which — *ā* or *ab* with the ablative case.

(c) Place *out of* which — *ē* or *ex* with the ablative case.

(d) Place *into* which — *in* with the accusative case.

(e) Place *to* which — *ad* with the accusative case.

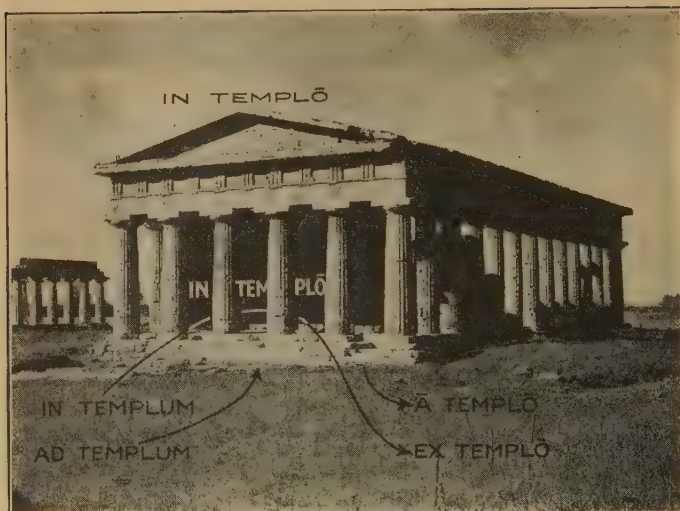
(a) *In templō est.* *He is in (or on) the temple.*

(b) *Ā templō properat.* *He hastens from the temple.*

(c) *Ex templō properat.* *He hastens out of the temple.*

(d) *In templum properat.* *He hastens into the temple.*

(e) *Ad templum properat.* *He hastens to the temple.*



PLACE USES IN LATIN.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
ar'ma, -ōrum (plur.)	arms, weapons	army
cas'tra, -ōrum (plur.)	camp	Chester
de'us, -ī	god	deity
dō'num, -ī	gift	donation
exem'plum, -ī	example	exemplary
Labiē'nus, -ī	Labienus (a proper name)	
ad (with accusative)	to, toward	admit
pro'perō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus	hasten	
prōvi'deō, -ē're, prō- vī'dī, prōvī'sus	foresee	provide
cas'tra movē're	break up camp	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Give the perfect stem of :

habēre, timēre, tenēre, dēbēre, dolēre, terrēre, dēlēre
(see § 54, Exceptions), **movēre, vidēre.**

(b) Identify and translate :

dēbuistī, habuērunt, timuimus, terruistis, tenuit, mōvī,
dēlēvērunt, vīdimus.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Multa et bona exempla habuimus.
2. Perīcula nova incolās oppidōrum terruērunt.
3. Labiēnus lēgātus castra mōvīt.
4. Perīcula proeliōrum nōn timuistī.
5. Rōmānī multa oppida Gallōrum dēlēvērunt.
6. Bellum novum prōvidī et virōs ad arma convocāvī.
7. Amīcī vērī dōna deōrum sunt.
8. Numerus templōrum antīquōrum in Ītaliā magnus est.
9. Iniūriās vestrās (in) memoriā tenuimus.
10. Ex agrō ad templum properāvimus.
11. Ab agrō in templum properat.
12. Arma ex casā in castra movēbunt.
13. Arma ā casā ad castra movēmus.

(d) Indicate in (c) : (1) the nominatives ; (2) the accusatives ; (3) the genitives ; (4) the place uses.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Give (1) the nominative, genitive, and accusative plural of :

exemplum bonum, dōnum grātum, oppidum novum,
perīculum magnum ;

(2) the genitive and accusative of :

multa arma, castra nostra.

(b) Review. Put in the plural :

1. Templum oppidī nōtum est.
2. Amīcō dōnum dedit.
3. Bellum nōn timeō.
4. Novum perīculum oppidum terret.
5. Vīta bonī virī exemplum bonum semper fuit.

(c) Review. Put the italicized words in the singular :

1. *Dōna grāta sunt.*
2. *Proelia longa erant.*
3. *Rōmānī bella amābant.*
4. *Exempla mala esse nōn dēbent.*
5. *Templa Deī vērī sacra sunt.*
6. *Fāma oppidōrum Graecōrum antīquōrum magna fuit.*

(d) Write the perfect of :

1. Perīcula timēre.
2. Castra movēre.

(e) Review. Replace the present by (1) the perfect ; (2) the past ; (3) the future :

1. Bellum timēmus.
2. Multōs amīcōs habeō.
3. Perīculum magnum incolās oppidī terret.
4. Templā Rōmāna antīqua vidētis.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, putting every past tense in the perfect and marking all long vowels :

(a) I had, he warned, they frightened, you (singular) did not fear, we destroyed, he saw, you moved.

(b) 1. We had many gifts.

2. Examples ought always to be good.

3. They feared great dangers.

4. He foresaw new wars.

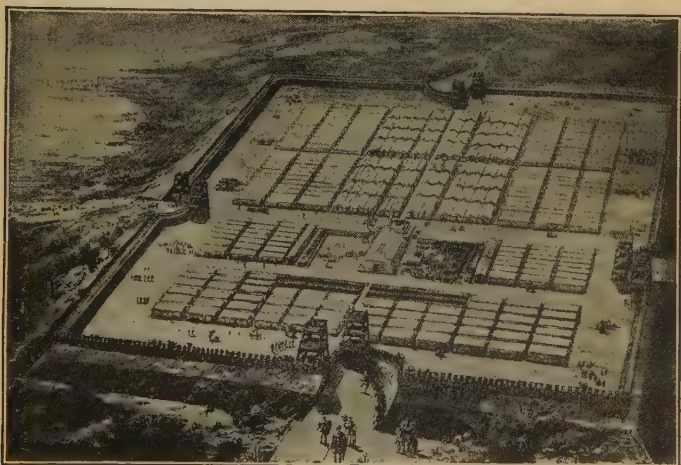
5. The dangers of a long war frightened the towns.

6. A true friend is a pleasant gift of God.

7. The temples of the Roman gods were sacred.

8. We shall move the arms out of the town into the camp.

9. The fame of the ancient Roman temples was great.
10. Labienus hastened from (his) house to the camp.
11. The lieutenant did not break up camp.
12. The number of famous ancient towns in Italy was great.



CASTRĀ RŌMĀNA.

READING LESSON

I

IOCUS RŌMĀNUS (A Roman Joke)

Cicerō¹ facētus (*witty*) erat. Quondam (*once*) Lentulum (*Lentulus*, a proper name), generum (gener, -erī,² *son-in-law*) suum, parvae statūrae (*height*) virum, longō gladiō accīnctum (*girded*) vīdit. “Quis,” inquit (*said he*), “generum meum ad gladium alligāvit (*tie*)?”

¹ Cicerō, -ōnis (third declension), Cicero, the great Roman orator (106-43 B.C.).

² Note that this noun keeps the *e* when inflected, like *puer* and *miser* (see footnote, p. 78).

II

MĀRCUS ET PŌMA (Marcus and the Fruits)

Mārcus, filius agricolae, puer bonus erat, sed malōs amīcōs habēbat. Agricola exempla mala amīcōrum Mārcī timuit et puerum monuit, "Periculum, ō mī fili, prōvidē; amīcōs tuōs renūntiā (*give up*); multa mala exempla habēs." Sed Mārcus rīsit, "Exemplum meum meōs malōs amīcōs mūtābit (*reform*)."

Agricola nōn respondit (*answer*). Mārçō filiō suō magnum numerum pōmōrum dedit. Multa pōma bona sed pauca mala erant. Dōnum puerum dēlectāvit, sed mox (*soon*) pauca mala pōma bona vitiāvērunt (*spoil*).

Tum agricola Mārcum monuit, "Pauca mala pōma bona vitiant. Sic (*Thus*) amīcī malī bonum puerum vitiābunt."

Mārcus amīcōs malōs renūntiāvit.

COLLATERAL READING

THE ROMAN CAMP

The Roman camp was characteristic of a people whose colonies were garrisons. Where the army encamped — even if for a single night — there grew up in an hour a fortified city, with earth walls and regular streets. This system allowed the Romans often "to conquer by sitting still," declining or giving battle at their own option; while, too, when they did fight, they did so "under the walls of their city," with a fortified and guarded refuge in their rear.

The importance of these camps, as the sites and foundation plans of cities over Europe, is shown by the frequency of the Roman word *castra* (camp) in English place-names, as in *Chester*, *Rochester*, *Winchester*, *Dorchester*, *Manchester*, and so on.

LESSON XXIX

SECOND DECLENSION. FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

56. The Dative and Ablative Neuter Plural of the Second Declension have the common ending **-īs**. They are formed like those of other nouns of the second declension (see § 43).

Praesidiīs parvīs frūmentum dedimus. *We gave grain to the small garrisons.*
indirect object descriptive adjective

Pilīs pugnābant. *They were fighting with javelins.*
ablative of means



GLADIUS ET PILUM.

"Thine, Roman, be the pilum,
Roman, the sword be thine!" — MACAULAY.

57. The Past Perfect (-eram). — The past perfect of any verb in the active voice is formed by adding the past of **esse** to the perfect stem.

PAST PERFECT¹

esse	laudāre	monēre
(I had been in town, etc.)	(I had praised the Gauls, etc.)	(I had warned the boy, etc.)
in oppidō fu'eram	Gallōs laudā'veram	puerum monu'eram
in oppidō fu'erās	Gallōs laudā'verās	puerum monu'erās

¹ Remember that the perfect stem of **esse** is **fu-**; of **laudāre**, **laudāv-**; of **monēre**, **monu-**.

esse	laudāre	monēre
in oppidō fu'erat	Gallōs laudā'verat	puerum monu'erat
in oppidō fuerā'- mus	Gallōs laudāverā'- mus	puerum monuerā'- mus
in oppidō fuerā'tis	Gallōs laudāverā'tis	puerum monuerā'tis
in oppidō fu'erant	Gallōs laudā'verant	puerum monu'erant

58. Synopsis. — The synopsis of *esse*, *laudāre*, and *monēre*, in the first person singular of the tenses learned so far, is as follows :

PRESENT	PAST	FUTURE	PERFECT	PAST PERFECT
sum	eram	erō	fuī	fueram
laudō	laudābam	laudābō	laudāvī	laudāveram
moneō	monēbam	monēbō	monuī	monueram

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
fac'tum, -ī	<i>fact, deed</i>	factor
pī'lum, -ī	<i>javelin</i>	pile
ver'bum, -ī	<i>word</i>	verb
glōriō'sus, -a, -um	<i>glorious</i>	glorify

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and translate :

fuī, vocāvistī, timuerat, fuerāmus, labōrāverātis, terruerant, viderās, mōveram.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Cōpiaē Labiēnī lēgātī in castrīs erant.
2. In periculīs magnīs fuerātis.
3. Incolās oppidōrum nōn monueram.
4. Rōmānī gladiīs et pilīs pugnant.
5. Sociī oppidīs frūmentum dederant.

6. Praesidiīs Rōmānīs victōriam nostram nūntiāverātis.
7. Puerīs facta glōriōsa bellī nārrāverās.
8. Factīs, nōn verbīs, sociōs nostrōs iūverāmus.
9. Cassius lēgātus oppida occupāverat et ibi praesidia collocāverat.



RESTORATION OF THE FORUM LOOKING SOUTHEAST.
Compare this with the other pictures of the Forum.

(c) Point out in (b): (1) the datives; (2) the ablatives, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline in both numbers:

factum novum, verbum longum, proelium glōriōsum.

(b) Review. Supply the proper endings (1) in the singular; (2) in the plural:

1. Oppid— (indirect object) victōriam nūntiāvī. 2. Ē pericul— (ablative of separation) amīcōs servant. 3. Lēgātus praesidi— (indirect object) arma dedit.

(c) Write the perfect and past perfect of :

1. In templō esse. 2. Pīlis pugnāre. 3. Bellum timēre.
4. Perīcula prōvidēre.

(d) Review. Replace the dash by (1) the perfect ;
(2) the past perfect of the italicized infinitive :

1. *Esse*: Cōpia in castrīs —.
2. *Timēre*: Gallī bellum nōn —.
3. *Convocāre*: Cassius virōs ad arma —.
4. *Terrēre*: Perīculum rēgīnam nōn —.
5. *Dare*: Ego exemplum bonum semper —.
6. *Vidēre*: Tū facta glōriōsa Cassī nōn —.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) She has been, they had been, I had shown, you had had, I have seen, they had given, she has called, you (singular) had frightened.

(b) 1. You had been in many towns.

2. The Gauls had feared a new war.

3. Glorious deeds are always good examples.

4. We fought by (means of) javelins and swords.

5. I had announced the victory of the allies to the neighboring towns.

6. You had frightened the Romans by your glorious deeds.

7. The trumpets had given (to) the garrisons the signal for (Latin genitive) the battle.

8. You (singular) had rescued your allies from great dangers.

9. Your words had quieted the people.

10. We had made a treaty of alliance with many towns.

11. Labienus had moved his camp from the forest into the plain (see § 55).

READING LESSON

DE PERICULIS BELLĪ

Invidia (*envy*) causa crēbra bellōrum fuit (fuerat). Tum bella crēbra fuērunt (fuerant). Periculum bellōrum novōrum magnum fuit (fuerat). Rōmānī cum oppidīs finitimīs amicitiam cōfirmāvērunt (cōfirmāverant). Sociōs ad arma convocāvimus (convocāverāmus). Multae cōpiae in castrīs fuērunt (fuerant). Incolae oppidōrum et campōrum bella timuērunt (timuerant). Perīcula oppida et campōs terruērunt (terruerant). Saepe tuba signum proelī dedit (dederat). Bellicōsī fuistis (fuerātis). Bella numquam ego amāvī (amāveram). Proelia crēbra vōs amāvistis (amāverātis). † Magister discipulīs facta glōriōsa bellōrum nārrāvit (nārrāverat).

Campōs, Labiēne, vāstāvistī (vāstāverās), multa oppida oppugnāvistī (oppugnāverās), expugnāvistī (expugnāverās), occupāvistī (occupāverās), dēlēvistī (dēlēverās). Templā deōrum nōn sacra fuērunt (fuerant). Cōpiae tuae incolās in templīs necāvērunt (necāverant). In silvīs cum ferīs manēre (*remain*) dēbuimus (dēbuerāmus). Iniūriās bellōrum (in) memoriā semper tenuimus (tenuerāmus).

COLLATERAL READING

ROME UNITES ITALY

. . . Other states in Italy had suffered by the invasion of the Gauls in 390 B.C., as much as Rome or more. Rome at once stood forth as the champion of Italian civilization against the barbarians and she forced them to withdraw to the Po valley. In return, she seized for herself half of Etruria and much territory elsewhere.

Next Campania and Latium were added to the Roman dominion. The leadership of central Italy now lay between Rome, the great city-state of the lowlands, and the warlike

Samnite tribes, which were spread widely over the southern Apennines. The Samnites built up a great alliance which



PYRRHUS.

soon came to contain nearly all the states of Italy, together with the Cisalpine Gauls. But Rome *beat her foes one by one*, before they could unite their forces. By 290 B.C., she had become mistress of all the true peninsula, except the Greek cities of the south.

The great victory at Beneventum (275 B.C.) over Pyrrhus, the chivalrous king of Epirus, gave Rome the sovereignty of

Italy. In 266, she rounded off her work by conquering that part of the Cisalpine Gaul which lay south of the Po.

LESSON XXX

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES. ADVERBS

59. Agreement of Predicate Adjectives. — (a) If the subjects of a verb are of the same gender, the predicate adjective is in the plural of that gender.



FORUM ET TEMPLA PULCHRA SUNT.

- | | |
|--|---|
| Labiēnus et Cassius tūtī sunt. | <i>Labienus and Cassius are safe.</i> |
| subjects predicate
adjective | |
| Octāvia et filia bonae sunt. | <i>Octavia and (her) daughter are good.</i> |
| subjects predicate
adjective | |
| Forum et templa pulchra sunt. | <i>The forum and the temples are beautiful.</i> |
| subjects predicate
adjective | |

(b) If the subjects are of different genders, the predicate adjective is

(1) masculine plural when the subjects are beings ;

Puer et puella boni sunt.	<i>The boy and the girl are</i>
subjects predicate	<i>good.</i>
	adjective

(2) neuter plural when the subjects are things.

Ager et silva magna sunt.	<i>The field and the forest are</i>
subjects predicate	<i>large.</i>
	adjective

60. Formation of Adverbs (-ē). — An adverb, derived from an adjective of the first and second declensions (-us, or -er, -a, -um), is formed by adding -ē to the base.

ADJECTIVE	BASE	ADVERB
lentus, -a, -um (<i>slow</i>)	lent-	lentē, <i>slowly</i>
pulcher, -a, -um	pulchr-	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i>

Note. Distinguish such an adverb as **lentē** from the vocative masculine singular of the adjective **lente**. What is the difference?

Note also the irregular form **bene**, *well*, from **bonus**, -a, -um.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
hor'tus, -ī	<i>garden</i>	horticulture
prae'mium, -mī	<i>reward</i>	premium
cer'tus, -a, -um	<i>certain, sure</i>	certify
incer'tus, -a, -um	<i>uncertain</i>	incertitude
be'ne	<i>well</i>	benefactor
cer'tē	<i>certainly</i>	
len'tē	<i>slowly</i>	

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
ma'le ¹	<i>badly</i>	malefactor
pul'chrē	<i>finely, beautifully</i>	pulchritude
rēc'tē	<i>(all) right</i>	rectitude
clā'mō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus	<i>cry out, shout</i>	exclaim

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) (1) Give the base of the following adjectives :

lentus, cārus, grātus, rēctus, malus, tardus, vērus, tūtus,
pulcher, piger, impiger, integer, miser.

(2) Give the adverb formed from each of them, and translate.

(b) Identify and translate :

longē, lātē, pūblicē, glōriōsē, perītē, laetē.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Puer et puella parvī sunt.
2. Dominus et servī nōn tardī fuerant.
3. Domina et serva laetae erant.
4. Ager et hortus parvī sunt.
5. Casa et templum antīqua erant.
6. Agricola et nauta bonī et perītī sunt.
7. Vergilius et Horātius nōtī fuērunt.
8. Casa et hortus magna sunt.
9. Bella et proelia incerta semper erunt.
10. Poēta et filia mea certē miserī sunt.

11. Magister noster numquam clāmat, " Bene labōrātis, discipulī, laetus sum ; pulchrē ! bene ! rēctē ! " Semper clāmat, " Pigrī estis, discipulī, lentē labōrātis, praemia certē nōn dabō ; male ! male ! "

¹ Note that the e of male is short by exception, like the e of bene.

(d) (1) Explain the agreement of every adjective in (c); (2) point out every adverb in (c), and explain its formation.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Supply the proper endings :

1. *Filia mea et Augusta pulchr— sunt.*
2. *Ager et silva magn— erant.*
3. *Cassius et Octāvia parv— sunt.*



COURT OF A HOUSE IN POMPEII.

In the distance you can see Vesuvius smoking.

4. *Rēgina et filiae laet— fuērunt.*
5. *Agricola et servus nōn tard— erant.*
6. *Filius et filia agricolae bon— sunt.*
7. *Hortus et casa nōn magn— erant.*
8. *Nautae et agricolae perīt— sunt.*
9. *Vir et puella tūt— erant.*
10. *Oppidum et templum nov— sunt.*
11. *Silva et campus parv— sunt.*
12. *Glōria et fāma incert— semper erunt.*

(b) Write the first and second persons singular and plural of all the tenses you know of : **saepe clāmāre.**

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

1. Cassius and Octavia are diligent.
2. The farmer and the sailor are not lazy.
3. The man and the girl were joyful.
4. The garden and the field are beautiful.
5. The plain and the forest are large.
6. The temple and the town are ancient.
7. The cottage and the temple were not sacred.
8. The forest and the field are small.
9. The master and the lady of the house are certainly good.
10. My son and your friend were wretched.
11. Boys and girls, be industrious, work well.
12. You (singular) never shout, "Well! All right!"
You always shout, "Badly! Badly!"

READING LESSON

AGRICOLA MISER

Filius et filia vicinī (vicīnus, -ī, *neighbor*) meī impigrī sunt. Servi et servae multī sunt et assiduē (*continually*) labōrant. Saepe clāmat, "Laetus sum, servī meī; assiduē labōrātis; multa praemia dabō; mox multōs servōs liberābō. Bene, pulchrē, labōrāte!" Casa et hortus magna sunt; agrī et prāta (prātum, -ī, *meadow*) fēcunda sunt. Vicīnus meus multam (multus, -a, -um, *much*) pecūniam parat (*prepare, make*). Beātus (*fortunate*) est.

Sum agricola miser. Mārcus, filius meus, et Octāvia, filia mea, pigrī sunt. Servi et servae paucī et tardī sunt. Semper clāmō, "Lentē labōrātis, servī; properāte (*hasten*); servīs pigrīs praemia nōn dabō; servōs pigrōs numquam liberābō; malī vōs estis." Hortus et casa parva sunt; prātum et ager nōn fēcunda sunt. Silva prope casam est. Lupī et cēterae (*other*) ferae in silvā multī sunt. Agnī et



SERVĪS PIGRĪS PRAEMIA NŌN DABŌ.

caprae in prātō nōn tūtī sunt. Pecūniam nōn parō. Quis beātus est nisi (*if . . . not*) pecūniōsus (*rich*) est? Semper miser erō. Beātus numquam erō, nam gaudium et fortūna semper mihi (*to me*) inimīca (inimīcus, -a, -um, *hostile*) sunt.

COLLATERAL READING

ROMAN SLAVERY (*Continued*; see page 9)

Besides his town house, each rich Roman had one or more country houses (*villas*) with all the comforts of the city, — baths, libraries, museums, mosaic pavements, etc.

Commonly a villa was the center of a large farm ; and its magnificent luxury found a sinister contrast in the squalid huts, leaning against the walls of the villa grounds in which slept the wretched slaves that tilled the soil and heaped up wealth for the noble master. . . .

Slaves performed also most of the unskilled hand-labor in the towns. A baker or a mason would usually have two or three or a dozen slaves to work under his direction. . . .

The model Roman, Cato, advised his countrymen to work slaves like cattle, selling off the old and infirm. "The slave," he said, "should be always working or sleeping." With brutal masters, there were of course indescribable and inhuman cruelties.

LESSON XXXI

REVIEW LESSON

61. Review of Declension. —

I. NEUTER NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

templum antiquum, *the ancient temple*

Base : **templ-** **antiqu-**

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Endings</i>		<i>Endings</i>
Nom. :	templum anti- quum -um	templa antiqua	-a
Gen. :	templī antiquī -ī	templōrum anti- quōrum	-ōrum
Dat. :	templō antiquō -ō	templīs antiquīs	-īs
Acc. :	templum anti- quum -um	templa antiqua	-a
Abl. :	templō antiquō -ō	templis antiquīs	-īs

II. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS

SINGULAR

Nom. :	via	puer	servus	verbum
Gen. :	viae	puerī	servī	verbī
Dat. :	viae	puerō	servō	verbō
Acc. :	viam	puerum	servum	verbum
Abl. :	viā	puerō	servō	verbō

PLURAL

Nom. :	viae	puerī	servi	verba
Gen. :	viārum	puerōrum	servōrum	verbōrum
Dat. :	viis	puerīs	servīs	verbīs
Acc. :	viās	puerōs	servōs	verba
Abl. :	viis	puerīs	servīs	verbīs



TEMPLUM ANTĪQUUM.

This shows two Greek temples at Paestum in Southern Italy. Compare this with the Roman temple on page 140.

III. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

laetus, -a, -um, joyful, happy

SINGULAR

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nom. : <i>laetus</i>	<i>laeta</i>	<i>laetum</i>
Gen. : <i>laetī</i>	<i>laetae</i>	<i>laetī</i>
Dat. : <i>laetō</i>	<i>laetae</i>	<i>laetō</i>
Acc. : <i>laetum</i>	<i>laetam</i>	<i>laetum</i>
Abl. : <i>laetō</i>	<i>laetā</i>	<i>laetō</i>

	PLURAL		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nom. :	laetī	laetae	laeta
Gen. :	laetōrum	laetārum	laetōrum
Dat. :	laetīs	laetīs	laetīs
Acc. :	laetōs	laetās	laeta
Abl. :	laetīs	laetīs	laetīs

62. Review of Conjugation. —

PERFECT

PAST PERFECT

FIRST CONJUGATION

laudāvī	laudāveram
laudāvisti	laudāverās
laudāvit	laudāverat
laudāvimus	laudāverāmus
laudāvistis	laudāverātis
laudāvērunt	laudāverant

SECOND CONJUGATION

monuī	monueram
monuisti	monuerās
monuit	monuerat
monuimus	monuerāmus
monuistis	monuerātis
monuērunt	monuerant

Esse

fuī	fueram
fuisti	fuerās
fuit	fuerat
fuimus	fuerāmus
fuistis	fuerātis
fuērunt	fuerant

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Translate the following words :

1. *Nouns*

FIRST DECLENSION

tuba

SECOND DECLENSION

(a) *Masculine***deus****hortus****Labiēnus**(b) *Neuter Singular***bellum****oppidum****proelium****dōnum****periculum****signum****exemplum****pīlum****templum****factum****praemium****verbum****frūmentum****praesidium**(c) *Neuter Plural***arma****castra**2. *Adjectives***antīquus, -a, -um****incertus, -a, -um****Graecus, -a, -um****certus, -a, -um****glōriōsus, -a, -um****pūblicus, -a, -um**3. *Verbs*

FIRST CONJUGATION

clāmō**collocō****occupō****properō**

SECOND CONJUGATION

prōvideō

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

ad
bene
certē

ibi
lentē
male

pulchrē
rēctē

5. *Idiom*

castra movēre

(b) Divide all the words in (a) into syllables, indicating which syllable must be accented.

(c) Answer the following questions and illustrate:



TUBA SIGNUM DAT.

1. What is the gender of nouns (a) in *-us* and *-er*; (b) in *-um*?

2. How do their declensions differ?

3. What is the ending of an adjective of the first and second declensions which modifies a neuter noun, nominative singular?

4. What is the gender and number of a predicate adjective modifying (a) subjects of the same gender; (b) nouns of beings of different genders; (c) nouns of things of different genders?

5. How do you form adverbs from adjectives of the first and second declensions?

6. What is the use of the Latin perfect tense?

7. How do you get the perfect stem of any verb?

8. What is the perfect stem of: *collocāre*, *clāmāre*, *occupāre*, *dare*, *habēre*, *prōvidēre*, *movēre*?

9. What are the endings of every perfect tense?

II. Written.

(a) Decline (1) in both numbers :

exemplum bonum ;

(2) in the plural :

arma mea, castra nostra.

(b) Give the perfect and past perfect of :

1. *Ibi praesidium collocāre.* 2. *Castra vidēre.*

(c) Translate into Latin the following words, marking all long vowels :

1. *Nouns (nominative and genitive)*

arms	example	gift	reward
camp	fact	god	signal
combat	garden	grain	temple
danger	garrison	javelin	town
war	trumpet	word	

2. *Adjectives (masculine, feminine, neuter)*

ancient	glorious	public	uncertain
certain	Greek		

3. *Verbs*

to foresee	to occupy	to place	to shout
to hasten			

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

all right	certainly	slowly	to
badly	finely	there	well

5. *Idiom*

to break up camp

III. Oral and Written.

63. Word Formation. — In the Introduction and in all the Vocabularies the number of English words which are related to Latin is very noticeable. It is interesting to make systematic lists of words related to common Latin roots, like *loc-*, *place*, *voc-*, *call*, *vid-*, *vīs-*, *see*, and so on. Pupils may be graded according to the number of derivatives they can find, the one finding the largest number getting 100, and the others being graded on that scale.

Below are given some sample lists. Make similar lists from other words met so far.

SPECIMEN PAGE OF A DERIVATION NOTE BOOK

Type I (without Definitions)

locō, locāre, locāvī,	locate, local, locality, location, allo-
locātus, place	cate, allocation, dislocate, localiza-
	tion, localize, locally, locative, loco-
	motive, locomotor.

Type II (with Definitions)

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī,	vocation — a calling, occupation
vocātus, call	vocational — pertaining to a voca-
	tion or calling
	vocal — pertaining to voice
	evoke — call out
	convoke — call together
	vocative — a case of calling, case of
	address
	revoke — call back
	invoke — call upon
	vociferous — with large calling power,
	with loud tones
	invocation — calling upon, a prayer



COLOSSĒUM VIDEŌ.

Type III (with Examples of Use in English)

- videō, vidēre, vīdī,** vision — Joan of Arc had a vision.
vīsus, see visible — Light makes things visible.
 evidence — There was no evidence of fear.
 review — There will be a review to-morrow.
 provide — Men provide for their future.
 supervise — He was to supervise the work.
 visual — Many learn by visual instruction.
 revise — This book has been revised.

LESSON XXXII

READING LESSON

List of Latin Words,¹ Phrases, and Proverbs often quoted in English literature and conversation.

LATIN	A	ENGLISH
ab initiō		<i>from the beginning</i>
ad astra per aspera		<i>to the stars through difficulties</i> (motto of the State of Kansas)
ad infinitum		<i>to infinity, without limit</i>
ad libitum		<i>at pleasure, at will</i>
ad vitam aeternam		lit., <i>to eternal life</i> ; freely, <i>forever</i>
aequō animō		lit., <i>with an even mind</i> ; freely, <i>with equanimity</i>
annō Christi		<i>in the year of the Christian era</i>
annō Domini		<i>in the year of (our) Lord</i>
annō mundi		<i>in the year of the world</i>
ante bellum		<i>before the war</i>

C	
cōram populō	lit., <i>before the public</i> ; freely, <i>in public, publicly</i>

¹ This list is composed (a) of words already met; (b) of adjectives and nouns belonging to the first and second declensions; (c) of verbs of the first and second conjugations. The teacher will show the difference between the English pronunciation and the Roman pronunciation.

D

LATIN

dē factō

dē novō

Deī grātiā

Deō grātiās

ENGLISH

lit., *from the fact*; freely,
present, actual

lit., *from a new . . .*;
freely, anew, afresh

by the grace of God

lit., *thanks to God*; freely,
God be thanked

E

et cētera

ex abruptō

ex officiō

exemplī grātiā

(abbreviated e.g.)

experientia docet

lit., *and the others*; freely,
and so forth

abruptly

by virtue of one's office

for (the sake of an) example

experience teaches

F

facta, nōn verba

deeds, not words

I

in extēnsō

in memoriam

in propriā persōnā

at full length

in memory, to the memory (of)

in one's own person

M

montānī semper liberī

mountaineers (are) always
freemen (motto of the
State of West Virginia)

multum in parvō

much in little

N

nunc aut numquam

now or never

LATIN	P	ENGLISH
pauca sed bona		<i>few but good</i>
per annum		<i>by the year, annually</i>
persōna grāta		<i>an acceptable person</i>
prō bonō pūblicō		<i>for the public weal</i>
prō fōrmā		<i>for form's sake, as a matter of form</i>
	S	<i>thus ever to tyrants (motto of the State of Virginia)</i>
sub rosā		<i>lit., under the rose; freely, covertly, secretly</i>
	T	<i>lit., firm ground; freely, land (as opposed to water)</i>
terra incognita		<i>an unknown land</i>
	V	<i>woe to the vanquished</i>
vae victis		<i>spoken words fly, written words remain</i>
verba volant, manent	scripta	<i>by way of (England)</i>
viā (England)		<i>middle course</i>
via media		

EXERCISE

I. Oral.

(a) Cover the right-hand column and have one of the pupils read the Latin phrases while his classmates translate them into English.

(b) Cover the left-hand column and have a pupil read the English expressions while the others translate them into Latin.



1. Citadel (Arx).
2. Temple of Jupiter (Capitolinus).
3. "Quays of the Tarquins."
4. Citadel at Janiculum.
5. "Wall of Romulus."
6. Temple of Vesta.
7. Senate House (Curia).
8. Comitium.

RŌMA ANTĪQUA.

COLLATERAL READING

THE ROMAN CHARACTER

Undue praise has been given to the stern excellence of early semi-barbaric Rome. The real picture is by no means without shadows. The Roman was abstemious, haughty, obedient to law, self-controlled; but too often he was also

coarse, cruel, and rapacious. The finest thing in Roman character was the spirit of self-immolation for Rome, — a willingness to sink personal or party advantage for the public weal.

Next to this, and allied to it, is the capacity for organization, for working together for a common end. *Early Roman history is not the history of a few brilliant leaders; it is the story of a people.*

LESSON XXXIII

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (PASSIVE)

64. Ego and Tū. — We have already met the personal pronoun subjects **ego** and **tū** (see § 15). They are declined as follows :

Ego, I	Tū, you (singular)
Nom. : ego, I	tū, you
Gen. : meī, of me	tui, of you
Dat. : mihi, to me	tibi, to you
Acc. : mē, me	tē, you
Abl. : mē, with, from, by, etc., me	tē, with, from, by, etc., you

(a) *Reflexive Use.* Note the reflexive use of these personal pronouns in the following sentences :

mē laudō	<i>I praise myself</i>
tē laudās	<i>you praise yourself</i>

(b) *Use with cum.* The preposition **cum**, *with*, is affixed to the personal pronouns.

Mēcum, nōn tēcum, labōrat. *He works with me, not with you.*

65. Passive Voice. — (a) *The present infinitive of the passive voice of verbs of the first and second conjugation is formed by replacing final e of the present infinitive of the active voice by -ī.*

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
laudāre, to praise	laudārī, to be praised
monēre, to warn	monērī, to be warned

(b) *The personal endings of the passive voice are*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
-r	-mur
-ris	-mini
-tur	-ntur

(c) *The present indicative of any verb in the passive voice is formed by adding the personal endings of the passive voice to the present stem, except in the first person singular. The first person singular is formed by adding -r to the active form with its vowel shortened. Remember that the present stem of laudāre is laudā-, and of monēre, monē-.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *laudārī, to be praised,*
AND *monērī, to be warned*

FIRST CONJUGATION

SECOND CONJUGATION

(I am praised by the teacher, (I am warned by a friend, etc.)
etc.)

Ā magistrō lau'dor

Ab amīcō mo'neor

Ā magistrō laudā'ris

Ab amīcō monē'ris

Ā magistrō laudā'tur

Ab amīcō monē'tur

Ā magistrō laudā'mur

Ab amīcō monē'mur

Ā magistrō laudā'minī

Ab amīcō monē'minī

Ā magistrō laudan'tur

Ab amīcō monen'tur

66. **Ablative of Agent.** — Note that the name of the personal agent is put in the ablative with the preposition *ā* or *ab* (before consonants), *ab* (before vowels or *h*).

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
prōvin'cia, -ae	province	provincial
mul'tus, -a, -um	much	multitude



PORTA NIGRA IN PRŌVINCIĀ.

This is the famous Porta Nigra or *Black Gate* at Treves (Trier). See page 138. This is another good example of Rome's elaborate building in the provinces.

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
commo'veō, -ē're, -mō'vī, -mō'tus	<i>disturb, alarm</i>	commotion
iu'beō, -ē're, ius'sī, ius'sus	<i>order</i>	
prae'beō, ¹ -ē're, -uī, -itus	<i>offer, show</i>	
remo'veō, -ē're, -mō'vī, -mō'tus	<i>move back, withdraw</i>	remove, re- mote
mē lau'dō	<i>I praise myself</i>	laudatory
mē super'bum prae'beō	<i>I show myself haughty, I display haughtiness</i>	
sī	<i>if</i>	

¹ Praebere is the abbreviation of prae-habere.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and translate :

vocāris, iubeor, pācāmur, timēmini, convocantur, com-movēris, vāstātur.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Amicī ab amicīs iuvantur.
2. Ā magistrō laudāmini, sī bene labōrātis.
3. Ego et tū properāre iubēmur.
4. Incolae prōvinciae ad arma convocantur.
5. Periculīs nōn commoveor.
6. Pecūnia mihi ā tē dēbētur.
7. Ā Cassiō et Labiēnō lēgātis monēmur.
8. Prōvincia ā Rōmānis occupātur.
9. Tēcum, nōn mēcum, pugnant.
10. Bonī ā malīs numquam amantur.
11. Magister tē, nōn mē, laudat.
12. Tibi magna praemia, parva semper mihi dantur.
13. Tū ab amicīs iuvāris, ego nōn iuvor.
14. Tū tē semper laudās ; tū tē superbum certē praebeēs.

(c) Indicate in (b) the personal pronouns of the first and second persons singular, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Replace the personal pronoun of the first person by that of the second, and vice versa, and make the necessary changes :

1. Ego ab amicō moneor.
2. Tū semper laudāris.
3. Praemia mihi dantur.
4. Pecūnia tibi dēbētur.
5. Ego ā tē timeor.
6. Mē superbum numquam praebeō.
7. Tēcum nōn pugnō.

(b) Give the present indicative of :

1. *Amīcōs iuvāre.* 2. *Ā sociō iuvārī.* 3. *Perīcula nōn timēre.* 4. *Ā malīs timērī.*

(c) Replace the singular by the plural and vice versa :

1. *Labōrāre iubeor.* 2. *Discipulī bonī laudantur.*
3. *Oppidum antīquum dēlētur.* 4. *Prōvincia vāstātur.*

(d) Review. Replace the dash by the present indicative of the italicized infinitive :

1. *Vocārī:* Ego ā Cassiō —.
2. *Commovērī:* Tū magnīs periculīs —.
3. *Laudārī:* Vōs ā dominō nōn —.
4. *Nūntiārī:* Victōria ā lēgātīs —.
5. *Removērī:* Cōpiaē Rōmānōrum ē silvā —.
6. *Darī:* Exempla bona tibi —.
7. *Timērī:* Nōs ā malīs —.

(e) Review. Replace the active voice by the passive :

1. Rōmānī oppidum dēlent (Model : Oppidum ā Rōmānīs dēlētur.)
2. Dominus servum bonum liberat.
3. Octāvia rēgīnam timet.
4. Puerī nautās monent.
5. Inīūriae novae incolās commovent.
6. Sociī Rōmānōrum mundum vāstant.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) We are loved, he is not feared, they are called, you are not ordered, they are helped, I am warned ; you (singular) are not alarmed.

- (b) 1. Good [people] ¹ are not feared by the wicked.
2. We are not helped by our friends.

¹ Omit.

3. The story is well told by the teacher.
4. You are not alarmed by great dangers.
5. The town is destroyed by the Gauls.
6. A great victory is announced to you (singular) by Cassius.

7. *I*¹ never display haughtiness, *you* do (display haughtiness).

8. *You* (singular) are ordered to work, *I* am not (ordered).

9. *I* shall not work with you (singular), if *you* do not work well.

10. If *you* (singular) are feared by good [people] *I* am not (feared).

11. The fields and plains of the world are laid waste by wars.

READING LESSON

PUER MALUS ET ASINUS (The Bad Boy and the Donkey)

Malus puer Mārcus est. Sine (*without*) amicis est. Ā sociis nōn amātur; ā cēteris (*the other*) pueris oppidī timetur. Ā magistrō saepe monetur. Ab incolis oppidī numquam laudātur.

Asinus sōlus (*alone*) in agrō ā Mārcō videtur. Puer malus in agrum² intrat. Misericordiā nōn movetur. Bēstiam miseram verberat (*beat*) et fugat. Sed malefīcium (*bad deed*) puerī malī ab asinī dominō videtur. Poena (*punishment*) magna ā Mārcō meretur. Puer malus ā virō irātō castigātur (*punish*). Mārcus dolet et clāmat, "In agrum tuum, domine, nōn iam (*no more*) intrābō; asinum tuum nōn iam verberābō et fugābō." Misericordiam dominī agrī implōrat sed frūstrā (*in vain*). Puer ab incolis nōn

¹ Why must the pronouns be expressed in sentences 7-10?

² The preposition *in* governs the accusative when it denotes motion into a place, and the ablative, rest in a place. See page 153.

iuvātur quī (*who*) rident et clāmant, “Tū, puer male, castigāris! Vae malis!”

COLLATERAL READING

THE PROVINCES ¹

. . . Worse than the distinction between rich and poor in Rome, or between citizens and subjects in Italy, was the distinction between Italy and the provinces. “Italy was to rule and feast; the provinces were to obey and pay.” . . .



GENERAL VIEW OF CARTHAGE.

North Africa was a thriving Roman Province, of which Carthage would have been the natural capital but for the jealousy of Rome.

The special marks of a province were: payments of taxes ² in money or grain; and the absolute rule of a Roman governor.

¹ The word *prōvincia* literally means “public office, mission.” From the year 227 B.C., it often indicates “an annexed territory outside of Italy, governed by one who had served a term as magistrate in Rome.”

² As in Italy itself, a province had various grades of cities, and some of these cities in name were independent “allies,” exempt at least from taxes.

The Senate fixed at will the amount that each province must pay. Then it "farmed out" the collection of this revenue, at public auction, usually to some company of Roman capitalists. The "contractor," or "farmer," paid down a lump sum, and had for himself all that he could squeeze from the province above that sum. . . .

Everything tended to make the governor a tyrant. He had Roman soldiers to back up any command. There was no appeal from his decrees. He had no colleague and no tribune¹ to veto his acts. The persons of the provincials were at his mercy, and of course their property was. . . .

True, a governor might be brought to trial; but only *after* his term had expired; and only *at Rome* . . . before a court made up of Senators, many themselves interested in similar plunderings, either in person, or through a son or brother or cousin. . . .

When other means failed to secure acquittal, the culprit could fall back on bribery. When a certain Verres was given the province of Sicily for three years, Cicero tells us, he cynically declared it quite enough: "In the first year he could secure plunder for himself; in the second for his friends; in the third for his judges."

¹ Tribune (from *tribus*, gen. -*ūs*, *tribe*), a representative of the common people. The secession of 497 B.C. gave the plebs the right to choose *tribunes* with power to protect oppressed plebeians against cruel laws. It was agreed that the tribunes should have the right to stop any magistrate in any act by merely calling out *vetō* ("I forbid") — just as one consul could "veto" another. This veto could be exercised only within the city (not in war), and *only by the tribunes in person*.

LESSON XXXIV

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (PASSIVE)

67. Nōs and Vōs. — The personal pronouns **nōs** and **vōs** are declined as follows :

Nōs, we	Vōs, you (plural)
Nom. : nōs, we	vōs, you
Gen. : nostrum or nostrī, <i>of us</i>	vestrum or vestrī, of you
Dat. : nōbīs, to or <i>for us</i>	vōbīs, to or <i>for you</i>
Acc. : nōs, us	vōs, you
Abl. : nōbīs, with, from, <i>by, etc., us</i>	vōbīs, with, from, by, etc., you

(a) *Reflexive Use.* **Nōs** and **vōs** may be used reflexively :

Nōs laudāmus.	<i>We praise ourselves.</i>
Vōs laudātis.	<i>You praise yourselves.</i>

(b) *Use with cum.* The preposition **cum** is affixed to **nōbīs** and **vōbīs**.

Nōbīscum nōn pugnātis.	<i>You do not fight with us.</i>
Vōbīscum nōn pugnāmus.	<i>We do not fight with you.</i>

68. Past Indicative, Passive Voice. — The past indicative in the passive voice is formed by adding to the present stem the tense sign **-ba-** and the usual personal endings of the passive voice (see § 65 b).

PAST INDICATIVE OF **laudārī** AND **monērī**

FIRST CONJUGATION

SECOND CONJUGATION

(I was or used to be praised by Cassius, etc.) (I was or used to be warned by friends, etc.)

Ā Cassiō laudā'bar**Ab** amicīs monē'bar**Ā** Cassiō laudābā'ris**Ab** amicīs monēbā'ris**Ā** Cassiō laudābā'tur**Ab** amicīs monēbā'tur**Ā** Cassiō laudābā'mur**Ab** amicīs monēbā'mur**Ā** Cassiō laudābā'minī**Ab** amicīs monēbā'minī**Ā** Cassiō laudāban'tur**Ab** amicīs monēban'tur

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
cau'sa, -ae	<i>cause</i>	causal
gau'dium, -dī	<i>joy</i>	gaudy
trīsti'tia, -ae	<i>sadness, sorrow</i>	
permo'veō, -ē're, -mō'vī, -mō'tus	<i>move, excite</i>	
reti'neō, ¹ -ē're, -nuī, -ten'tus	<i>retain, hold back</i>	retention, reten- tive
susti'neō, -ē're, -nuī, -ten'tus	<i>sustain, support</i>	sustenance
mē gaudiō dō	<i>I give myself up to joy</i>	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and translate :

liberābar, movēbantur, vocābāris, parābātur, retinēbāminī,
servābāmur, removēbātur, sustinēbāris, iubēbāminī, iuvā-
bantur, convocābāmur.

¹ Note that tenēre becomes -tinēre in its derivatives.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Templum novum delēbātur.
2. Dominus verbis servi retinēbātur.
3. Discipuli malī ā magistrō nōn laudābantur.
4. Sī malī erātis, numquam amābāminī.
5. Glōriōsīs Rōmānōrum factis permovēbar.
6. Nōbis rosae parvae, magnae vōbis dabantur.



LAETAE ESTIS.

7. Ā pueris nōs amābāmur, vōs timēbāminī.
8. Causa bona ā vōbis semper sustinēbātur.
9. Perīcula vōs, nōn nōs, commovēbant.
10. Rōmānī vōbiscum, nōn nōbiscum, pugnant.
11. Vōs ā nōbis saepe monēbāminī.
12. Laetae estis, vōs gaudiō datis; miserī sumus, nōs trīstitiae damus.

(c) Indicate in (b) the personal pronouns of the first and second persons, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Give the present and past of :

1. *Ā puerō vocārī.* 2. *Iniūriīs novīs commovērī.*

(b) Replace (1) the singular by the plural, and vice versa ; (2) the first person by the second, and vice versa, with all necessary changes :

1. Ego properāre iubēbar. 2. Vōs periculīs nōn ter-rēbāminī. 3. Nōs superbōs nōn praebebāmus. 4. Tū tē trīstitiae, nōn gaudiō, dabās. 5. Praemia mihi nōn dabantur. 6. Victōria vōbīs nūntiābātur.

(c) Review. Replace the dash by (1) the present passive ; (2) the past passive of the italicized infinitive :

1. *Liberārī*: Ego et tū ā dominō ——.
 2. *Iubērī*: Vōs properāre ——.
 3. *Monērī*: Nōs ā vōbīs ——.
 4. *Commovērī*: Tū iniūriīs novīs ——.
 5. *Darī*: Liber pulcher tibi ——.
 6. *Vāstārī*: Agrī nostrī ——.

(d) Review. Replace the active voice by the pas-sive :

1. Rōmānī oppida dēlēbant. (Model: Oppida ā Rō-mānīs dēlēbantur.) 2. Labiēnus cōpiās removēbat. 3. Cas-sius ibi praesidium collocābat. 4. Puerī magistrum nōn timēbant. 5. Servus iram dominī pācābat.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) I was ordered, she was not called, they were sus-tained, we were held back, you were freed, he was rescued you (singular) were not excited.

(b) 1. The signal for (of) the battle was given by the trumpet.

2. Our towns were destroyed by the Gauls.

3. My cause was sustained by my friends, not by you.

4. You were not appeased by my words.

5. The province was occupied by us.

6. Beautiful books were given to you, not to us.

7. A long war was being prepared and we were alarmed by new dangers.

8. New islands were seen by the sailors.

9. You were diligent, you used to work with us.

10. The Romans are preparing a new war with you.

11. We were held back by a word of the lieutenant.

12. We gave ourselves up to joy, you gave yourselves up to sorrow.

READING LESSON

GALLĪ RŌMĀNŌRUM INIŪRIĀS VINDICĀBUNT

Gallia ā Rŏmānīs occupābātur. Oppida Gallŏrum expugnābantur et dēlēbantur. Agrī et campī ā cōpiīs Rŏmānīs vāstābantur. Incolae ē casīs suīs removēbantur.

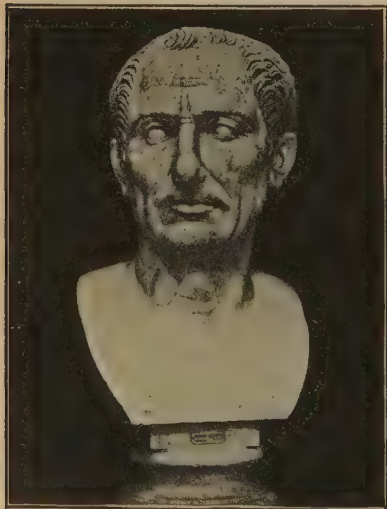
Quondam (*once*) Gallus, vir magnae statūrae, quī causam patriae sustinēbat, in castra Rŏmānŏrum intrāvit et Latīnē clāmāvit, "Vŏs, Rŏmānī, nŏbiscum diū (*a long time*) pugnatīs,¹ nŏs superāvistis, servī vestrī sumus, trīstitiae nŏs damus, nam (*for*) ā vŏbīs agrī et campī nostrī vāstantur, oppida nostra expugnantur et dēlentur, incolae Galliae remonentur. Ego vŏs moneŏ: iniūriīs cotīdiānīs (*daily*) vestrīs permovēmur, sed vŏs nŏn timēmus. Maleficia vestra (in) memoriā tenēbimus, patriam servābimus et liberābimus, aliquandŏ (*some day*) vŏs superābimus, vŏs terrēbimus, Rŏmam expugnābimus et dēlēbimus, iniūriās vestrās vindicābimus. Vae Rŏmānīs!"

¹ The present with diū is translated in English by the perfect.

COLLATERAL READING

CAESAR IN GAUL

At the close of his consulship (59 B.C.), Caesar secured command of the Gallic provinces for five years as proconsul. . . . He found the Province¹ threatened by two great invasions: the whole people of the Helvetii were migrating



JULIUS CAESAR.

from their Alpine homes in search of more fertile lands; and a great German nation, under the king, Ariovistus, was already encamped in Gaul. The Gauls themselves were distracted by feuds and grievously oppressed by their disorderly chieftains.

Caesar saw the danger and grasped the opportunity. He levied armies hastily, and in one summer drove back the Helvetii and annihilated the German invaders. Then

he seized upon the Rhine as the proper German frontier, and in a series of masterly campaigns, he made all Gaul Roman, extending his expeditions even into Britain. The story is told with incomparable lucidity in his own *Commentaries*. . . .

A wider home for Roman civilization was won among fresh populations, unexhausted and vigorous. *The map*

¹ In 121 B.C. the southeastern part of Transalpine Gaul had been given the form of a province. It was commonly known as *The Province* (modern *Provence*).

widened from the Mediterranean circle to include the shores of the North and Baltic seas. The land that Caesar made Roman (modern France) was, next to Greece and Italy, to form down to the present time the chief instructor of Europe.

LESSON XXXV

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (PASSIVE)

69. Is, Ea, Id. — These are the nominative singular forms of the demonstrative adjective and pronoun *this* and *that*. They are used also as the personal pronouns for the third persons: *he, she, it*; (pl.) *they*.

They are declined as follows :

SINGULAR		
MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom. : is , <i>he</i>	ea , <i>she</i>	id , <i>it</i>
Gen. : eius , <i>of him</i>	eius , <i>of her</i>	eius , <i>of it</i>
Dat. : eī , <i>to or for him</i>	eī , <i>to or for her</i>	eī , <i>to or for it</i>
Acc. : eum , <i>him</i>	eam , <i>her</i>	id , <i>it</i>
Abl. : eō , <i>with, from,</i> <i>by, etc., him</i>	eā , <i>with, from,</i> <i>by, etc., her</i>	eō , <i>with, from,</i> <i>by, etc., it</i>
PLURAL		
Nom. : eī , <i>they</i>	eae , <i>they</i>	ea , <i>they</i>
Gen. : eōrum , <i>of them</i>	eārum , <i>of them</i>	eōrum , <i>of them</i>
Dat. : eīs , <i>to or for them</i>	eīs , <i>to or for them</i>	eīs , <i>to or for them</i>
Acc. : eōs , <i>them</i>	eās , <i>them</i>	ea , <i>them</i>
Abl. : eīs , <i>with, from,</i> <i>by, etc., them</i>	eīs , <i>with, from,</i> <i>by, etc., them</i>	eīs , <i>with, from, by,</i> <i>etc., them</i>

70. Reflexive Pronoun. — The reflexive pronoun of the third person is **suī**. It is declined as follows :

SINGULAR AND PLURAL
Nom. : (lacking)
Gen. : suī , <i>of one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves</i>

Dat. : **sibi**, *to or for one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves*

Acc. : **sē**, *one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves*

Abl. : **sē**, *with, from, by, etc. one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves*

71. Future, Passive Voice. — This is formed by adding to the present stem the tense sign **-bi-** and the usual personal endings of the passive voice (see § 65 b).

FUTURE OF **laudārī** AND **monērī**

FIRST CONJUGATION

SECOND CONJUGATION

(I shall or will be praised by her, etc.) (I shall or will be warned by them, etc.)

Ab eā laudā'bor

Ab eīs monē'bor

Ab eā laudā'beris

Ab eīs monē'beris

Ab eā laudā'bitur

Ab eīs monē'bitur

Ab eā laudā'bimur

Ab eīs monē'bimur

Ab eā laudābi'minī

Ab eīs monēbi'minī

Ab eā laudābun'tur

Ab eīs monēbun'tur

Note that the **i** of the tense sign **-bi-** disappears before **o** in the first person singular, becomes **e** in the second singular, and **u** in the third plural.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
grātē	<i>willingly</i>	gratitude
cum ¹	<i>when</i> (not interrogative)	
ni'si	<i>if not, unless</i>	
com'parō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus	<i>bring together,</i> <i>gather</i>	compare, com- parison
obti'neō, -ē're, -uī, -ten'tus	<i>obtain, get</i>	

¹ Do not confuse *cum* (when) with *cum* (with).

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Give the present stem of :

comparāre, obtinēre, retinēre, praeberē, vāstāre, timēre, permovēre, iuvāre.

Divide these infinitives into syllables, indicating the accented syllable.

(b) Identify and translate :

nārrātur, nārrābātur, nārrābitur, convocāminī, convocābāminī, convocābiminī, terreor, terrēbar, terrēbor, timēmur, timēbāmur, timēbimur, pācantur, pācābantur, pācābuntur.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

I. Is liber, ea tuba, id dōnum, casa eius puellae, cum eō discipulō, eae rosae, eōs populōs, ea praemia, eīs verbīs, incolae eārum īnsulārum. Is laetus sed misera ea est.

II. 1. Is sē nōn laudat, sē superbum nōn praebet ; ea sē laudat, sē superbam praebet.

2. Nisi monēbiminī, in magnō periculō eritis.

3. Agrī et campī ab eīs vāstābuntur.

4. Fāma magna ab eā obtinētur.

5. Cōpiaē novae ā vōbīs comparābuntur.

6. Amīcitia cum populīs fīnitimīs ab eō cōfirmābitur.

7. Facta glōriōsa eōrum¹ in bellis Graecīs tibi nārrābunt.

¹When the possessive adjectives *his, her, its, their*, refer to the subject of the sentence, they are translated by *suus, -a, -um* ; (see § 36).

Dominus servum suum laudat. *The master praises his own slave.*

If they do not refer to the subject, *his, her, its* are expressed by *eius* (*of him, of her, of it*), and *their* is expressed by *eōrum* (*of them, m. and n.*) and *eārum* (*of them, f.*).

Dominus servum eius laudat. *The master praises his (somebody else's) slave.*

8. Ego dōnīs nōn pācābor ; is verbīs retinēbitur.

9. Sī bonōs sē praebēbunt, eōs amābimus, ā nōbīs nōn timēbuntur ; cum eīs grātē labōrābimus.

10. Cum bellum parābitur, signum eīs dabitur.

11. Sī sua facta laudābunt, superbās sē praebēbunt.

12. Nisi eās laudābō, trīstitiae sē dabunt.

(d) Indicate in (c) (I and II) all the uses of **is, ea, id**, as (1) demonstrative adjectives ; (2) demonstrative pronouns ; (3) personal pronouns.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline in both numbers :

id dōnum, ea stella, is vir.

(b) Give the present, future, and past of :

1. Sē gaudiō dare. 2. Ā lēgātō servārī. 3. Pugnāre iubērī.

(c) Replace the singular by the plural and vice versa :

1. Is tardus, ea impigra est. 2. Verbīs eōrum pācābimur. 3. Eīs rosās dedimus. 4. Ab eā timēbiminī.
5. Superbōs sē praebuērunt.

(d) Review. Replace the dash by (1) the future ; (2) the past ; (3) the present, of the italicized infinitive :

1. *Comparārī*: Magna cōpia frūmentī ab eō —.
2. *Retinērī*: Tū memoriā iniūriārum —.
3. *Obtinērī*: Multī captīvī ab eīs —.
4. *Commovērī*: Nōs bellō longō —.
5. *Laudāre*: Cassius sē nōn —.

(e) Review. Replace the active voice by the passive :

1. Tuba victōriam nūntiābit. 2. Ego eī praemia dabō.
3. Nōs multās victōriās obtinēbimus. 4. Vōs cōpiās magnās comparābitis.
5. Tū virōs ad arma convocābis.
6. Memoria iniūriarū eōs permovēbit.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) I shall be feared, war will be prepared, rewards will be obtained, you will not be called to arms, we shall be retained, they will be brought together, it will not be seen, you (singular) will be rescued.

(b) 1. They will not be alarmed by new dangers.

2. *She* will be rescued by us, *he* by you.

3. Much grain will be gathered by him.

4. *They* will be warned, *you* will not (be warned).

5. I shall not tell you a story if you (singular) do not give me your book.

6. A great deal of money will be obtained by her if she will help me.

7. You are slow ; I do not work willingly with you.

8. They will be excited when glorious deeds are ¹ related to them.

READING LESSON

DĒBENTNE MALĪ DISCIPULĪ Ā BONĪS IUVĀRĪ?

Mārcus et Cassius amīcī bonī sunt. Mārcus discipulus bonus, Cassius malus est. Ā magistrō Mārcus semper laudātur, Cassius saepe monētur et culpātur (*blame*).

Quondam Cassius in viā Mārcum vidit et eum implōrāvit, "Iuvā mē, amīce cāre, sī magister mē interrogābit. Nullās (*no*) tabulās (tabula, -ae, *writing tablet*) habeō ; ōrō tē,

¹ Use the future.

mī Mārce, mihi tuās dā. Nisi mē iuvābis, ā magistrō culpābor et fortasse (*perhaps*) ab eō castigābor. Sī mē amās, ōrō tē, iuvā mē."

Sed Mārcus lentē respondit, "Saepe tē, Cassī, magister monuit; ego saepe tē monuī; tū semper pigrum et tardum tē praeuistī; cēterī puerī tē vident et exemplum malum eīs dās. Tē amō, sed tibi tabulās meās nōn dabō. Ā mē nōn iuvāberis sī ā magistrō interrogāberis. Ab eō certē culpāberis et fortasse castigāberis, sed ego miseriīs tuīs nōn permovēbor. Tū magnam poenam merēs."

Malī discipulī ā bonīs iuvārī nōn dēbent.

EXERCISES

(a) This text or part of it may be used for dictation.

(b) Replace **Mārcus** by **Octāvia**, **Cassius** by **Iūlia**, and **magister** by **magistra** (*school mistress*).

COLLATERAL READING

RURAL ESTATES

Rural estates were :

1. Large estates or pasture lands (**saltūs**), of at least five hundred acres, where were raised horses, oxen, asses, mules, pigs, goats and especially sheep, for common garments were then made of wool.

2. Smaller estates which comprised vineyards, orchards, groves of olive trees, meadows and wheat fields. The raising of bees was very important because honey took the place of sugar.

The farm (**vīlla**) was built around a courtyard facing south; in the center was a pool where cattle drank and bathed. Around the courtyard were the manager's house (at the gates), the stables, sheepfolds, chicken coops, pigsties, sheds for farming implements, slaves' huts, sick ward, kitchen,

baths (open only on holidays), and finally the subterranean prison (**ergastulum**) where refractory slaves were locked up.

The work was done only by slaves: the manager (**vīlicus**) was himself a slave, as well as the foremen (**magistrī operum**).

The main farming implements were the plow (**arātrum**) with a triangular plowshare (**vōmer**); the harrow (**crātis**); a heavy hoe with two crooked iron teeth (**bidēns**); a hoe with



A PART OF HADRIAN'S VILLA.

Compare this with the picture on page xx.

a long handle to work in vineyards and gardens (**ligō**); a spade or shovel (**pāla**); and a rake (**rāstrum**).

Wheat was threshed on the threshing floor with a flail, or a roller, or by horses' feet, and was ground between two mill stones. . . .

3. Very small estates in which the owner (**colōnus**) did the work, helped by his children and a few slaves.

— *Rome et les Romains* by Bornecque and Mornet, Paris, Librairie Delagrave.

LESSON XXXVI

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (PASSIVE)

72. Interrogative Pronoun *Quis*. — We have met several times in the Reading Lessons various forms of the interrogative pronoun *quis*, *who*. It is declined as follows :

Quis? Who? Quid? What?

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
Nom. :	<i>quis</i>	<i>quis</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
Gen. :	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
Dat. :	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
Acc. :	<i>quem</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
Abl. :	<i>quō</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

(a) *Use with cum.* — The preposition **cum** is affixed to the interrogative pronoun :

Quōcum labōrāre dēbeō? With whom ought I to work?

Quibuscum pugnāre dēbēmus? With whom ought we to fight?

73. Past Participle. — One of the four principal parts of Latin verbs is the past participle (see page 147). This always ends in the syllable **-tus** or **-sus** and is declined like **bonus**, **-a**, **-um**.

The participial stem is found by dropping the ending **-us** from the past participle. The past participle

of **laudāre** is **laudātus** ; **laudāt-** is the participial stem.
 Latin verbs have three stems :

	PRESENT STEM	PERFECT STEM	PARTICIPIAL STEM
Laudāre	laudā-	laudāv-	laudāt-
Monēre	monē-	monu-	monit-

74. The Perfect and Past Perfect, Passive, are formed from the past participle which agrees with the subject in gender and number. To this are added tenses of the verb **esse : **sum** for the perfect and **eram** for the past perfect.**

FIRST CONJUGATION

SECOND CONJUGATION

PERFECT TENSE OF **laudārī** AND **monērī**

(I have been or was praised, (I have been or was warned,
 etc.) etc.)

laudātus, -a, -um	sum	monitus, -a, -um	sum
laudātus, -a, -um	es	monitus, -a, -um	es
laudātus, -a, -um	est	monitus, -a, -um	est
laudāti, -ae, -a	sumus	monitī, -ae, -a	sumus
laudāti, -ae, -a	estis	monitī, -ae, -a	estis
laudāti, -ae, -a	sunt	monitī, -ae, -a	sunt

PAST PERFECT OF **laudārī** AND **monērī**

(I had been praised, etc.)

(I had been warned, etc.)

laudātus, -a, -um	eram	monitus, -a, -um	eram
laudātus, -a, -um	erās	monitus, -a, -um	erās
laudātus, -a, -um	erat	monitus, -a, -um	erat
laudāti, -ae, -a	erāmus	monitī, -ae, -a	erāmus
laudāti, -ae, -a	erātis	monitī, -ae, -a	erātis
laudāti, -ae, -a	erant	monitī, -ae, -a	erant

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
ae'quus, -a, -um	<i>fair, just</i>	equal, equanimity
exis'timō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus	<i>think</i>	esteem, estimate
do'ceō, -ē're, -uī, doc'tus	<i>teach, show</i>	doctrine, doctor, docile

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Give the participial stems of :

vocāre, habēre, nārrāre, servāre, commovēre, docēre, parāre, praebēre, dare, iubēre, vidēre.

(b) Identify and translate :

pācātus, monita, vocātī, nūntiātum, iussus, datae, vīsum, doctī, cōnfirmātus, exīstimāta, commōtae.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Victōria eīs tubā nūntiāta est.

2. Quis fābulās nārrāvit? Cui fābulae nārrātae sunt?

3. Id bellum novum ā Rōmānīs bene parātum erat.

4. Quī exemplīs bonīs docērī dēbent? — Puerī.

5. Cui multae rosae saepe datae erant? — Tibi, nōn mihi.

6. Quis factīs novīs commōtus erat? — Amīcus noster.

7. Quōcum ad Ītaliā properāre iussī estis? — Cum Cassiō, lēgātō.

8. Patria nostra ab eīs sustenta est.

9. Quid vōs permōvit? — Nōs iniūriīs novīs permōti sumus.

10. Verba tua ā nōbīs aequa exīstimāta sunt.

11. Praesidia ā vōbīs in oppidīs eōrum ¹ collocāta erant.

12. Ā quibus patria servāta et liberāta est? Ā nōbīs, nōn ab eīs.

¹ See footnote, page 202.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Give (1) the present of **sē docēre**; (2) the perfect and the past perfect of :

Periculō commovērī. Piger existimārī.

(b) Replace (1) the masculine of the past participle by the feminine; (2) the singular by the plural, giving both masculine and feminine forms :

Ā quō liberātus es? Eīs verbīs pācātus eram.

(c) Replace (1) the feminine of the past participle by the masculine; (2) the plural by the singular, giving both masculine and feminine forms :

Ā quibus iūtae erātis? Factīs glōriōsīs permōtae sunt.

(d) Replace the singular by the plural, and vice versa :

1. Id templum vāstātum est. 2. Quibus ea praemia data erant?

(e) Review. Replace the various tenses by (1) the perfect passive; (2) the past perfect passive :

1. Quibuscum vōs ad Ītaliā properāre iubēmīni? 2. Ā quō nōs ad arma convocābimur? 3. Eīs verbīs aequīs retineor.

(f) Review. Replace the active voice by the passive :

1. Is vir bonus patriam nostram sustinuit. 2. Rōmānī agrōs eōrum vāstāverant. 3. Ea serva puellam parvam pācāvit. 4. Memoria iniūriarum eōs permōverat.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) I have been freed, you (singular) had been helped, they (m.) have been seen, it had not been announced, you

have been taught, she had been ordered, we have been thought haughty, he had not been kept back, they (f.) were¹ ordered to hasten.

(b) 1. Who has helped you? — We have been helped by her.

2. The camp had been moved from that plain.

3. By whom has she been taught? — By a good teacher.

4. What had alarmed them (f.)? — They had been alarmed by the trumpet.

5. To whom were¹ rewards given? — To them, not to us.

6. She has not been soothed by their (of them) gifts.

7. With whom were¹ you (singular) ordered to work?

8. This ancient temple was destroyed by them, not by us.

9. The signal for (of) the battle had been given to them by me, not by you (singular).

10. We were¹ thought haughty, for (**nam**) we had praised ourselves.

READING LESSON

PERICULUM DISCORDIAE (The Danger of Discord)

I. Primum Exemplum (A First Example)

In eōdem² prātō (prātum, -ī, *meadow*) multī taurī (taurus, -ī, *bull*) erant. Id prātum herbōsum erat, sed prope silvam magnam erat. Multae ferae in eā silvā fuērunt.

Taurī amīcī erant; numquam certābant (*fight*); maxima concordia inter (*between, among*) eōs semper erat. Sic nūllum perīculum timēbant et ab īnsidiīs (īnsidiae, -ārum, *ambush*) ferārum tūtī erant.

Sed mox sine causā inter sē dissēdērunt (*disagree*) et singulī (*one at a time*), ā ferīs circumdatī (*surround*), necātī et dēvorātī sunt.

Ea fābula perīculum discordiae docet.

¹ Use the perfect.

² **Idem, eadem, idem**, *same*, is declined like *is, ea, id* (see § 69).

II. Secundum Exemplum (A Second Example)

Haec (*this*) quoque fābula periculum discordiae docet.

Duo (*two*) virī asinum solum (*alone*) in prātō vidērunt. Id prātum ā vicō (vicus, -ī, *hamlet*) longē aberat. Uterque (*both*) bēstiam dēsīderābat. Laetī duo virī in prātum intrāvērunt et ex eō prātō praedam remōvērunt. Alter (*one*) "Asinus meus est," inquit (*said*), "nam ā mē, nōn ā tē, bēstia vīsa est." Alter (*the other*) respondit, "Nōn tuus, sed meus est; ā mē asinus ex prātō remōtus est."

Neuter (*neither*) asinum habuit, nam dum (*while*) pugnis (pugnus, -ī, *fist*) certant,¹ ā tertiō (*third*) bēstia remōta est.

COLLATERAL READING

A ROMAN "TRIUMPH"

Plutarch (*Life of Aemilius Paulus*) describes the gorgeous "triumph" of the Roman general on his return after the victory of Pydna (168 B.C.) which closed the last attempt at Macedonian independence.

For three days a festal procession paraded the city, to the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline. Throngs of white-robed citizens watched the procession from scaffolds which had been erected for the purpose in all convenient places.

On the first day, two hundred and fifty wagons carried by the statues and paintings which had been plundered from Macedonian cities.

On the next day passed many wagons, carrying Macedonian standards and armor, followed by three thousand men loaded with the silver money and silver plate which had been secured in the booty.

On the third day came a procession of men carrying gold spoil, followed by the conqueror in a splendid chariot, behind

¹ The conjunction **dum** (*while*) is regularly followed by the present indicative.

which walked the conquered king with his three young children.

Rome so filled her coffers with treasure by this plunder that the Republic never thereafter taxed her citizens. And



A ROMAN TRIUMPH.

The German Princess Thusnelda in the triumph of Germanicus.

besides this public plunder, *the Roman general had paid his soldiers by permitting them to sack seventy helpless rich cities in Epirus.* The unspeakable suffering and misery — the ruined lives and broken families — in every such city is beyond the power of imagination to picture.

REVIEW LESSON XXXVII

75. The Latin Personal, Reflexive, and Interrogative Pronouns are declined as follows :

PERSONAL PRONOUNS						REFLEXIVE
	Ego, <i>I</i>	Tū, <i>you</i> (singular)	Is, <i>he</i>	ea, <i>she</i>	id, <i>it</i>	Suī, <i>of</i> <i>one's self</i>
Nom. :	ego	tū	is	ea	id	(none)
Gen. :	meī	tuī	eius	eius	eius	Suī
Dat. :	mihi	tibi	eī	eī	eī	sibi
Acc. :	mē	tē	eum	eam	id	sē
Abl. :	mē	tē	eō	eā	eō	sē
	Nōs, <i>we</i>	Vōs, <i>you</i>	Eī	eae <i>they</i>	ea,	Suī, <i>of</i> <i>themselves</i>
Nom. :	nōs	vōs	Eī	eae	ea	(none)
Gen. :	{ nostrum	{ vestrum	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	sui
	{ nostrī	{ vestrī				
Dat. :	nōbīs	vōbīs	eīs	eīs	eīs	sibi
Acc. :	nōs	vōs	eōs	eās	ea	sē
Abl. :	nōbīs	vōbīs	eīs	eīs	eīs	sē

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

Quis? Who? Quid? What?

SINGULAR			PLURAL			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
Nom. :	quis	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen. :	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat. :	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc. :	quem	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl. :	quō	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

76. The Passive Voice. — The tenses of the Indicative, Passive Voice, of verbs of the first and second conjugations are as follows :

FIRST CONJUGATION

SECOND CONJUGATION

PRESENT INFINITIVE

laudārī

monērī

PRESENT INDICATIVE

*Common Personal
Endings*

laudor	moneor	—r
laudāris	monēris	—ris
laudātur	monētur	—tur
laudāmur	monēmur	—mur
laudāminī	monēminī	—minī
laudantur	monentur	—ntur

PAST (Tense sign **—bā—**)

laudābar	monēbar
laudābāris	monēbāris
laudābātur	monēbātur
laudābāmur	monēbāmur
laudābāminī	monēbāminī
laudābantur	monēbantur

FUTURE (Tense sign **—bi—**)

laudābor	monēbor
laudāberis	monēberis
laudābitur	monēbitur
laudābimur	monēbimur
laudābiminī	monēbiminī
laudābuntur	monēbuntur

PERFECT

laudātus, -a, -um	sum	monitus, -a, -um	sum
	es		es
	est		est
laudātī, -ae, -a	sumus	monitī, -ae, -a	sumus
	estis		estis
	sunt		sunt

PAST PERFECT

laudātus, -a, -um	eram	monitus, -a, -um	eram
	erās		erās
	erat		erat
laudātī, -ae, -a	erāmus	monitī, -ae, -a	erāmus
	erātis		erātis
	erant		erant

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Translate into English the following words :

1. *Nouns*

A. FIRST DECLENSION

causa prōvincia trīstitia

B. SECOND DECLENSION

gaudium

2. *Adjectives*

aequus multus

3. *Verbs*

A. FIRST CONJUGATION

comparāre exīstimāre

B. SECOND CONJUGATION

commovēre	obtinēre	removēre
docēre	permovēre	retinēre
iubēre	praebēre	sustinēre

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

cum	nisi	sī	grātē
------------	-------------	-----------	--------------

5. *Idioms*

sē gaudiō dare sē laudāre sē superbum praebēre

(b) Divide all the words in (a) into syllables, pointing out the syllable which must be accented, and telling why it must be accented.

(c) Give (1) the principal parts; (2) the three stems of all the verbs in (a).

(d) What is the usual effect of the prefixes on the spelling of **tenēre** and **habēre**? Compare **tenēre** and **obtinēre**; **habēre** and **prohibēre**.

(e) Explain the derivation of **praebēre**.

(f) Answer the following questions and illustrate:

1. How do you translate into Latin the pronouns (direct object form): myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves?

2. Where is the preposition **cum** placed when its object is a personal pronoun or the interrogative pronoun?

3. What is the double use of **is**, **ea**, **id**?

4. How is the present infinitive of the passive voice formed?

5. What are the personal endings of the passive voice?

6. How is the present indicative of *any* verb in the passive voice formed?

7. (a) What is the tense sign of the past? (b) How is the past of the passive voice formed?

8. (a) What is the tense sign of the future of the first and second conjugations? (b) How is the future of the passive voice formed?

9. (a) How many stems do Latin verbs have? (b) How is the participial stem formed? (c) How do past participles agree? (d) How are the perfect tenses formed?

10. (a) In what case is the name of the agent put? (b) When is the preposition *ā* used? (c) When is the preposition *ab* used?

II. Written.

(a) Translate into Latin the following words, marking all long vowels:

1. *Nouns*

cause

joy

province

sadness

2. *Adjectives*

just

much

3. *Verbs*

to alarm

to excite

to order

to sustain

to bring together

to move

to retain

to teach

to disturb

to obtain

to show

to think

to withdraw

4. *Pronouns*

he I it she they we what? who? you (both forms)

5. *Other Parts of Speech*

when (not interrogative)

if

if not

willingly

6. *Idioms*

to display haughtiness

to give up one's self to joy

to praise one's self

(b) Derivation. Make a list of the English derivatives of **movēre** according to Type I (see page 178), and of **tenēre** according to Type II.

READING LESSON

IN LŪDŌ (At School)

Lūdus prope id templum locātus est (locāre, *to situate*). Puerī ad lūdum ā magistrō convocantur. Librī et tabulae eōrum ā paedagōgīs (paedagōgus, -ī, *a slave to guide and attend children*) portantur (*carry*). In eō lūdō docentur. Assiduē labōrāre et studiō (studium, -dī, *study*) sē dare iubentur. Aliī (*some*) bonī, aliī (*others*) malī sunt. Magna dīligentia ā discipulīs impigrīs, nūlla ā pigrīs adhibētur (*display*).

Eī discipulī pigrī sunt; ā magistrīs semper monentur et culpantur (*blame*) et saepe castigantur (*chastise*). Discipulus impiger ā magistrō laudātur. Praemia crēbra eī dantur. Puerī memoriā iniūriārum et dōnōrum permoventur.

Cum (*when*) puerī erāmus, discipulī bonī erāmus. Lūdus ā nōbīs amābātur. Magister bonus ā nōbīs nōn timēbātur. Ab eō saepe laudābāmur.

— Fābulaene vōbīs ab eō nārrābantur?

— Fābulīs magistrī dēlectābāmur.

Mārcus, amīcus noster, piger est; culpāmur et castigāmur quod (*because*) eum iuvāmus. Herī (*yesterday*) Mārcus ā magistrō properāre iussus est quod tardus erat. Nōn properāvit et dūrē (*severely*) castigātus est.

Numquam tē, fili mī, laudā; cum puer sē laudābit, superbus ā cēterīs exīstimābitur. Sī tū impiger eris, magister tē laudābit. Sī vōs pigrī eritis, monēbiminī, culpābiminī, castigābiminī. Sī nōs discipulōs iuvābimus, ā magistrīs culpābimur. Sī facta glōriōsa Rōmānōrum discipulīs nārrābuntur, eī permovēbuntur. Puerī exemplīs bonīs docērī dēbent.

COLLATERAL READING

EDUCATION AND LEARNING UNDER THE ROMAN
EMPIRE, TO 192 A.D.

Rome, Alexandria, and Athens were the three great centers of learning. Each had its *university*, with vast libraries and many professorships. . . .

Every important city in the Empire had its grammar school, corresponding to an advanced high school or small college. Like the universities, to which they led, they had permanent endowment from the Roman government.

The schools of this class in Gaul and Spain were especially famous; and noted instructors in Massilia (Marseilles), Autun, Narbonne, Lyons, Bordeaux, or Toulouse taught Latin grammar to noble youth drawn even from the Tiber side.

The walls of the classrooms were painted with maps, dates, and lists of facts. The masters were appointed by the local magistrates, with life tenure, good pay, and exemption from taxation.

All this education was for the upper classes, but occasionally bright boys from the lower classes found some wealthy patron to send them to a good school, and rich men and women sometimes bequeathed money to schools in their home cities for the education of poor children. . . . Davis' *Readings* gives Horace's story of how his father, a poor farmer, gave him the education that made it possible for him to become one of the most famous of poets.

LESSON XXXVIII

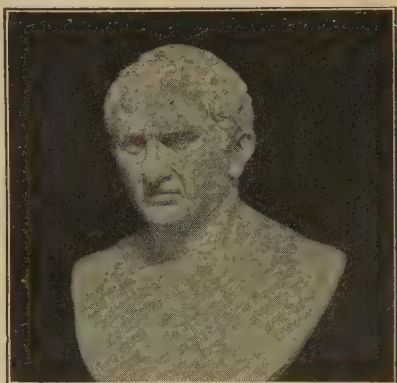
THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION

77. The Third Declension includes all nouns and adjectives, masculine, feminine, and neuter, of which the genitive singular ends in **-is**.

(a) *Consonant Stems and i-stems*. — Nouns of the third declension are divided into two groups, nouns whose stems end with consonants (genitive plural, **-um**) and nouns whose stems end with **-i** (genitive plural, **-ium**).

In nouns with consonant stems, the stem is the same as the base.¹
miles, *soldier*; base or stem: **milit-**.

In nouns with **i**-stems, the stem is obtained by adding the vowel **i** to the base: **civis**, *citizen*; base: **civ-**; stem: **civi-**.



CICERŌ.

78. Masculine and Feminine Nouns, Consonant Stems. — (a) *Nominative Singular*. — The ending of the nominative singular of a masculine or feminine noun with a consonant stem of the third declension varies greatly.

Cicerō cōsul est.

subject predicate
noun

Cicero is consul.

¹ The base is obtained by dropping the termination of the genitive singular.

Note that final *e* of the present stem disappears before *o* in the first person singular, becomes *u* in the third person plural, and *i* in the other persons, except in the second singular of the passive voice where it remains. Compare the future of the passive voice of the second conjugation.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
Ci'cerō, -ō'nis	<i>Cicero</i>	Ciceronian, cicerone
cōn'sul, -ulis, m.	<i>consul</i>	consulate
mī'les, -itis, m.	<i>soldier</i>	military, militia
pāx, pā'cis, f.	<i>peace</i>	pacify, pacific
rēx, rē'gis, m.	<i>king</i>	regal
vir'tūs, -ū'tis, f.	<i>manliness, cour- age</i>	virtue
dē'ligō, -ere, dē- lē'gī, dēlēc'tus	<i>choose, elect</i>	
dū'cō, -ere, dū'xī, duc'tus	<i>lead, take</i> (a person)	ductile, aqueduct
mit'tō, -ere, mī'sī, mis'sus	<i>send</i>	mission, missile
pe'tō, -ere, pe- tī'vī, petī'tus	<i>ask for, seek</i>	petition

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Give (1) the base (see § 77 (a)) of every noun in the vocabulary; (2) the present stem and the present infinitive, passive voice, of every verb.

(b) Identify and translate:

dēligis, petunt, dūcitis, dēligimur, mittimus, petō, mitti-
minī, petitur, dūceris.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Cicerō bonus cōsul erit.
2. Rōmānī Cicerōnem cōsulem dēligunt.
3. Cicerō ā Rōmānīs cōsul dēligitur.
4. Rēx pācem petit.
5. Filiū rēgis ad Ītaliā mittuntur.
6. Multae viae ad Rōmam dūcunt.
7. Virtūtem mīlitis Rōmānī laudāmus.
8. Ad Cicerōnem cōsulem dūcimur.
9. Lēgātōs ad rēgem mittimus et pācem petimus.
10. Lēgātī ad rēgem dūcuntur.

(d) Point out in (c) the nouns of the third declension, and explain each case.



MĪLES RŌMĀNUS.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Give the genitive and accusative singular of :

rēx novus, pāx longa, mīles Rōmānus, virtūs Rōmāna.

(b) Give the present indicative of :

1. Cōsulem dēligere.
2. Ad rēgem mittī.

(c) Put the verb (1) in the plural :

1. Pācem petis.
2. Eōs mittō.
3. Mīlitem dūcit.
4. Ad castra dūcor.
5. Semper dēligitur.

(2) In the singular :

1. Pācem numquam petimus.
2. Cōsulem dēligitis.
3. Rēgem dūcunt.
4. Ad eum mittuntur.
5. Nōn dēligiminī.

(d) Review. Replace the dash by the present indicative of the italicized infinitive :

1. *Dūcere*: Cassius cōpiās suās ad castra —.
2. *Dēligī*: Ego cōsul ā populō Rōmānō —.
3. *Mittere*: Tū dōna ad eōs —.
4. *Laudārī*: Virtūs militis Rōmānī —.
5. *Petere*: Vōs pācem —.
6. *Monērī*: Rēx novus ā mē —.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) I choose, she sends, you (singular) are not elected, we ask, they do not lead, they are led, you are sent.

(b) 1. I am elected consul.

2. The fame of Cicero is great.

3. We do not praise Cicero the consul.

4. The courage of the Roman soldier is famous.

5. They choose a new king.

6. Who asks for peace?

7. You send the good consul.

8. The famous captive is led to (ad with accusative) the king.

9. We send the sons of the king to Italy.

10. A Roman soldier does not seek peace.

11. I lead the troops to the camp.

12. Roman ambassadors are sent to the famous king.

READING LESSON¹

I. SILENTIŌ (In Silence)

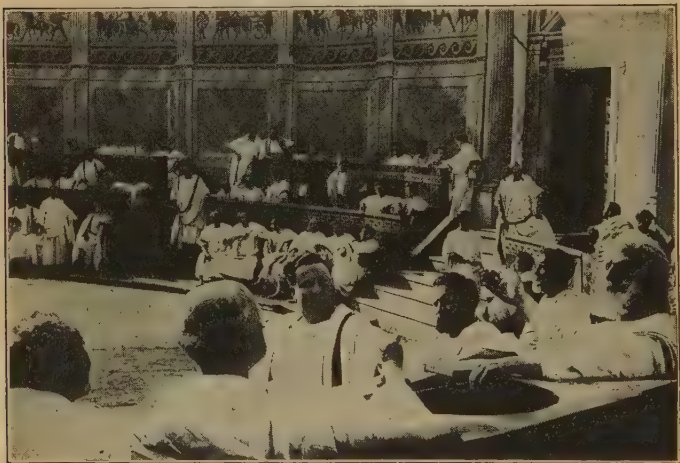
Tōnsor, blandus et garrulus, barbam rēgis Archelāi tondēbat. Rēgem interrogāvit, “Quōmodo eam tondēre dēbeō?” “Silentiŏ,” respondit rēx.

¹ For new words in the Reading Lessons, see General Vocabulary.

II. PĀVŌ ET CĪCŌNĪA (The Peacock and the Stork)

Pāvō cōram cīcōniā pennās suās explicāns,¹ "Quanta est," inquit, "fōrma mea et tua dēfōrmitās!" Cīcōnia ēvolāns,¹ "Et quanta est," inquit, "levitās mea et tua tarditās!"

Aliōs contemnere nōn dēbēmus.



THE ROMAN SENATE.

"The foremost political corporation of all time." — MOMMSEN.

III. DIOGENĒS (Diogenes, a Stoic Philosopher)

Cum accēnsā lucernā per forum interdiū Diogenēs ambulābat. Vir² eum interrogāvit, "Quid agis?" "Hominem² quaerō," respondit.

¹ The ending -āns indicates the nominative singular, masculine, feminine and neuter, of the present participle of the first conjugation: *laudāre*, to praise; *laudāns*, praising.

² Do not confuse *vir*, *virī* (a man, as opposed to *fēmina* or *mulier*, woman) and *homō*, *hominis* (a man, a human being); here it means an *honest man*.

IV. LUPUS ET CAPRA

Lupus capram in saxō altō vīdit. "Cūr," inquit, "nōn saxum nūdum relinquis nec hūc dēscendis in campōs herbōsōs quī pābulum bonum tibi praebent?" Respondit capra, "Quia iūcundīs tūta praepōnō."

EXERCISES

(a) Dictation. These stories may be used as material for dictation.

(b) Dialogue. Pupils may be asked to repeat these stories, personifying the different characters.

COLLATERAL READING

THE CONSULS

About 500 B.C., the Romans got rid of their kings, as other Italian cities were doing at the same time. We do not know the details, but in some way the patrician nobles succeeded in replacing the life-king by two elected consuls.

The consuls held office for only one year, but for that year they were "joint kings." They called and dissolved Assemblies at will. They alone could propose measures or nominate magistrates — even to succeed themselves. They filled vacancies in the Senate. They ruled the city in peace, and commanded the army in war.

In two ways, however, . . . the consul's real power was less than that of the old kings:

(1) Either consul might find any of his proposed acts absolutely forbidden ("vetoed") by his colleague.

(2) He knew that, when his short term was over, he might be called to account by the Assembly, and punished for any abuse of power.

The division of power between two consuls, with the chance of a deadlock by a mutual veto, might be fatal in a time

of foreign peril. Rome found escape from such danger by arranging at need to revive the old kingship under a new name. At the request of the Senate either consul might appoint a *dictator*. This officer was absolute master of Rome, save that his term of office could not exceed *six months*. He was the two consuls in one, with half their length of office. He had power of life and death in the city as in the army; and he could not be questioned for his acts even when he had laid down his powers.

LESSON XXXIX

THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION

80. Dative Singular (-ī) and Ablative Singular (-e).

— The dative singular of *any* noun of the third declension is formed by replacing the ending *-is* of the genitive singular by *-ī*. The ablative singular of nouns with consonant stems is formed by replacing *-is* by *-e*.

CONSONANT STEMS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

	SINGULAR			
	Caesar,	homō, m.,	celeritās, f.,	<i>Endings</i>
Base	<i>Caesar</i>	<i>man</i>	<i>quickness</i>	
and stem :	Caesar-	homin-	celeritāt-	
Nom. :	Cae'sar	ho'mō	cele'ritās	(various)
Gen. :	Cae'saris	ho'minis	celeritā'tis	-is
Dat. :	Cae'sarī	ho'minī	celeritā'tī	-ī
Acc. :	Cae'sarem	ho'minem	celeritā'tem	-em
Abl. :	Cae'sare	ho'mine	celeritā'te	-e

81. Past. — The past, active and passive, of the third conjugation is formed by adding to the present stem with the final vowel *e* lengthened, the tense sign and the personal endings.

PAST OF **dūcere** AND **dūcī**

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
(I was leading, I did lead, or I used to lead them, etc.)	(I used to be led or I was led by them, etc.)
Eōs dūcē'bam	Ab eīs dūcē'bar
Eōs dūcē'bās	Ab eīs dūcēbā'ris
Eōs dūcē'bat	Ab eīs dūcēbā'tur

ACTIVE VOICE

Eōs dūcēbā'mus

Eōs dūcēbā'tis

Eōs dūcē'bant

PASSIVE VOICE

Ab eīs dūcēbā'mur

Ab eīs dūcēbā'minī

Ab eīs dūcēban'tur

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
Cae'sar, -aris	<i>Caesar</i>	Caesarism, Czar, Kaiser
cele'ritās, -ā'tis, f.	<i>quickness</i>	celerity
ho'mō, -inis, m.	<i>man</i> (human being)	homicide
cē'dō, -ere, ces'sī, ces'sus	<i>yield</i> ✓	cession
discē'dō, -ere, disces'- sī, disces'sus	<i>depart</i> ✓	
praecē'dō, -ere, prae- ces'sī, praeces'sus	<i>excel</i>	precede
osten'dō, -ere, os- ten'dī, osten'tus	<i>display</i> ✓	ostensible, ostenta- tion
pō'nō, -ere, po'suī, po'situs	<i>put</i> ✓	position, opponent
tri'buō, -ere, tri'buī, tribū'tus	<i>attribute</i> ✓	tribute
castra pōnere	<i>pitch camp</i>	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Give the present infinitive, passive voice, of :

dēligere, mittere, pōnere, monēre, petere, ostendere,
dūcere, timēre, tribuere, occupāre.

(b) Identify and translate :

mittit, mittēbāmur, petimus, petēbantur, dēligēbar, dēligēbātis, tribuunt, cēdēbat, pōnēbātur, discēdēbāmus, dūcēbāminī, praecēdunt, ostendēbās.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. *Vita hominis nōn longa est.*
2. *Miles Caesarī victōriam nūntiat.*
3. *Caesar fidō militī praemium dat.*
4. *Cum magnā celeritāte discēdēbāmus.*
5. *Caesar in campō castra pōnēbat.*
6. *Ad Caesarem mittēbāminī.*
7. *Magna virtūs ā rēge novō ostendēbātur.*
8. *Virtūtī tuae victōriam tribuēbās.*
9. *Gallōs virtūte praecēdēbāmus.*
10. *Facta glōriōsa Cicerōnī cōsulī tribuēbantur.*

(d) Indicate in (a) all the datives and ablatives of the third declension, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline in the singular :

homo glōriōsus, magna virtūs, Caesar cōsul, pāx glōriōsa.

(b) Give the present and past of :

1. *Cum magnā celeritāte discēdere.*
2. *Ab eīs dēligi.*

(c) Review. Replace the present by the past :

1. *Castra pōnimus.*
2. *Miles Rōmānus numquam cēdit.*
3. *Lēgātus ad Caesarem mittitur.*
4. *Amīcōs virtūte nōn praecēdis.*
5. *Castra in silvā pōnuntur.*

(d) Review. Replace the dash by (1) the present ; (2) the past of the italicized infinitive :

1. *Pōnere*: *Vōs castra —.*
2. *Ostendī*: *Magna celeritās ā Caesare —.*

3. *Praecēdere*: Nōs Rōmānōs virtūte —.
4. *Mitti*: Lēgātī ad Caesarem —.
5. *Tribuī*: Facta glōriōsa Caesarī —.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) He was departing, you were not excelling, I was sent, they used to put, you (singular) were elected, they were displaying, she was not led, it was attributed, they yield.

(b) 1. I departed very quickly (with great celerity).

2. We were chosen by Cicero the consul.

3. The victory was attributed to that man.

4. The camp was pitched by the king.

5. We announced the victory to the consul.

6. The troops were led by Caesar.

7. The man was displaying great courage.

8. The victory was announced to the king by a soldier.

9. Great courage was displayed by that man.

10. You used to excel them in courage and in quickness.

READING LESSON

I. VIRTŪS LEŌNIDAE ¹

Nūntius Leōnidae, rēgī Lacedaemoniōrum, dīcit, "Persae multitudīne sagittārum sōlem obscurābunt." Rēx respondet, "Bene; ita in umbrā pugnābimus."

II. FORMĪCA ET CICĀDA (The Ant and the Tree-Cricket)

Mediā hieme,² cicāda famēlica auxilium formīcae, vīcīnae suae, implōrāvit. Formīca "Quid aestāte,"² inquit,

¹ Leōnidās, genitive -ae. Greek proper names ending in -ās are declined in Latin like nouns of the first declension.

² Mediā hieme (medius, -a, -um, middle; hiems, -emis, f., winter), in the middle of winter. Mediā hieme and aestāte are in the ablative; time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

“agēbās?” Respondit cicāda, “Agrōs et silvās peragrābam et assiduē cantābam.” Rīdēns¹ formīca respondit, “Tibi, quae aestāte cantābās, nunc saltāre licet.”

EXERCISE

Dialogue. — Two pupils may repeat the stories, personifying the different characters. They may amplify the stories by adding a few easy sentences such as the following model for I:

Nūntius. — Esne Leōnidās? Esne rēx Lacedaemoniōrum? Esne rēx magnus? Videōne castra tua in campō?

Leōnidās. — Leōnidās sum. Rēx Lacedaemoniōrum sum. Castra mea vidēs. Quid mihi nūntiās?

Nūntius. — Persae adsunt; multās cōpiās dūcunt; proelium parant; mox signum proeli dabitur; multitūdine sagittārum sōlem obscurābunt.

Leōnidās. — Bene; ita in umbrā pugnābimus.

or as the following model for II:

Cicāda. — Vicīna tua sum; famēlica sum; mediā hieme sumus; bona es, ō formīca; auxilium mihi dā; sine cibō sum.

Formīca. — Quis es?

Cicāda. — Cicāda sum; ōrō tē, vicīna cāra mea, cibum mihi dā, iuvā mē.

Formīca. — Quid aestāte agēbās?

Cicāda. — Agrōs et silvās peragrābam et assiduē cantābam.

Formīca (rīdēns¹). — Tibi, quae aestāte cantābas, nunc saltāre licet.

¹ The ending *-ēns* indicates the nominative singular, masculine, feminine, and neuter, of the present participle of the second, third, and fourth conjugations: *monēre*, to warn; *monēns*, warning; *dūcere*, to lead; *dūcēns*, leading. (See footnote 1, page 226.)

COLLATERAL READING

CAESAR (100 B.C.—44 B.C.)

Caius Julius Caesar was born in Rome from an old patrician family. After serving with the army in Asia, and holding the successive public offices leading to the consulship, he formed with Pompey and Crassus the "First Triumvirate" which marked the end of the free republican government at Rome.

At the end of his consulship, he received the command of Gaul as proconsul (58 B.C. to 49 B.C.)



THE MURDER OF CAESAR.

In 50 B.C., he defied the Senate's orders and crossed the Rubicon, an act which meant civil war. When fording the stream, he is said to have exclaimed, "*Ālea iacta est*," "The die is cast," a phrase which has ever since been used to express a decision in a great crisis.

The phrase "*vēnī, vīdī, vīcī*," "I came, I saw, I conquered," attributed to him, pithily expresses the swiftness of his victories during the Civil War. In less than two years, he was the absolute master of Italy and Spain, having de-

feated his opponents at Pharsalus (Thessaly), Thapsus (Africa), and Munda (Spain), and having received the title of *Imperātor* for life.

He was murdered in 44 B.C. According to an old story, when he saw Brutus, his most trusted confidant, among the conspirators, he sadly exclaimed, “*Ēt tū, Brūte,*” “Thou too, Brutus!” and drawing his toga about him, he defended himself no longer and fell bleeding from twenty-three wounds.

Caesar is considered the greatest of all the great men of antiquity; as a general he was unequalled; as an orator, he stood second only to Cicero; and he was hardly surpassed as a historian. Besides, he was a great architect, mathematician, jurist, and statesman.

LESSON XL

THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION

82. Nominative and Accusative Plural (-ēs). —
The nominative and accusative plural of all masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension are alike. They are formed by replacing the ending **-is** of the genitive singular by **-ēs**.

Rēgēs milītēs dūcunt.

subject direct
 object

The kings lead the soldiers.

83. The Genitive Plural of all the nouns with consonant stems is formed by replacing the ending **-is** of the genitive singular by **-um**.¹

Virtūtem milītum laudō.

genitive
case

I praise the bravery of the soldiers.

84. The Future of the Third Conjugation. — The future, active and passive, of the third conjugation has the tense sign **-ē-**, which is weakened to **e** in the third person singular, active, and in the third person plural, active and passive, and changed to **a** in the first person, active and passive. The usual personal endings are added (see §§ 18 and 65 *b*).

¹ It must not be confused with the ending **-um** of the nominative neuter singular and the accusative masculine and neuter singular of the second declension.



MĪLITĒS DŪCAM.

FUTURE OF *dūcere* AND *dūcī*

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

(I shall or will lead soldiers, (I shall or will be led by a
etc.) soldier, etc.)

Militēs dū'cam

Ā milite dū'cār

Militēs dū'cēs

Ā milite dūcē'ris

Militēs dū'cet

Ā milite dūcē'tur

Militēs dūcē'mus

Ā milite dūcē'mur

Militēs dūcē'tis

Ā milite dūcē'minī

Militēs dū'cent

Ā milite dūcen'tur

Note (a) that the tense sign of the future of the third conjugation is not *-bi-* as in the first and second ;

(b) that, except in the first person singular, the future of the third conjugation looks like the present indicative of the second. Compare the two.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
a'mor, -ōris, m.	<i>love</i>	amorous
liber'tās, -ā'tis, f.	<i>liberty, freedom</i>	
ob'ses, -idis, m.	<i>hostage</i>	
prin'ceps, -ipis, m.	<i>leader, chief</i>	prince, principal
dēfen'dō, -ere, dē- fen'dī, dēfēn'sus	<i>defend, protect</i>	defender, defense
vin'cō, -ere, vī'cī, vic'tus	<i>vanquish, conquer</i>	victor, invincible

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Give (1) the present stem ; (2) the present infinitive passive of :

dēligere, pōnere, mittere, ostendere, dēfendere, petere, vincere.

(3) Divide these infinitives into syllables, indicating which one must be accented.

(b) Identify and translate :

dēfenditis, dēfendētis, vinciminī, vincēminī, pōnentur, mitteris, mittēris, ostendēbāmus, petēs, dēligar, vincēmus, dēfendam.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Rōmānī cōsulēs malōs nōn dēligent.

2. Amor patriae bonōs mīlitēs semper dūcit.

3. Virtūs militum Rōmānōrum magna erat.

4. Gallī multōs obsidēs (or magnum numerum obsidum) Caesarī dant.

5. Rēgēs libertātem numquam dēfendent.

6. Facta glōriōsa prīncipum nostrōrum nārrābuntur.

7. Cōpiaē ā prīncipe in castra dūcentur.

8. Cōpiās Cassī et Labiēnī, cōnsulum, vincēmus.
9. Ā sociīs vestris nōn semper dēfendēminī.
10. Cōsulēs bonī ā populō Rōmānō dēligentur.
11. Lēgātōs ad prīncipēs Gallōrum mittēmus et pācem petēmus.
12. Sī prīncipēs malōs dēligēmus, vincēmur.

(d) Point out in (c) the nominatives, genitives, and accusatives plural of the third declension, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Give the singular cases, the nominative, genitive, and accusative plural of :

prīnceps nōtus, mīles tardus, obses novus.

(b) Give the present, past, and future of :

1. **Lībertātem dēfendere.**
2. **Ā Caesare vinci.**

(c) Put in the plural the italicized words :

1. Pācem *petam*.
2. Cōpiās in castra *dūcēs*.
3. *Victōriam* prīncipī *nūntiābō*.
4. *Mīles* patriam *dēfendet*.
5. *Rēx* mē *timēbit*.
6. *Virtūtem* cōsulis *laudō*.

(d) Review. Replace the past by (1) the present ; (2) the future :

1. Patriam bene dēfendēbāmus.
2. Pācem petēbant.
3. Facta glōriōsa prīncipum nārrābantur.
4. Eōs nōn vincēbātis.
5. Lēgātus ā rēge dēligēbāris.

(e) Review. Replace the active voice by the passive, and translate :

1. Amor patriae militēs dūcit. *Model*: Militēs amōre patriae dūcuntur.
2. Gallī multōs obsidēs prīncipī novō

dant. 3. Rōmānī magnam virtūtem ostendent. 4. Caesar Gallōs vincēbat. 5. Populus Rōmānus cōsulēs malōs nōn dēliget. 6. Rēx libertātem nōn dēfendēbat.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) I shall send, we shall be defended, you (singular) will conquer, he will not be chosen, you will not lead, we shall excel.

(b) 1. We shall ask for peace.

2. They will be vanquished by Caesar.

3. The camp will be pitched.

4. The speed of our soldiers was famous.

5. The courage of the leaders will be praised.

6. We shall not elect bad consuls.

7. A large number of hostages was given by the king.

8. Good leaders will defend liberty.

9. They will be led by their love for (of) their kings.

10. Rome will be defended by the bravery of the consuls.

READING LESSON

ID SATIS ERIT (That Will Be Enough)

Antiochus, rēx Syriae, bellum cum Rōmānīs gerēbat. Hannibalī, prīncipī Poenōrum, magnās cōpiās ostendēbat. Arma et vestīmenta equitum et peditum aurō et argentō fulgēbant; multī carrī magnum numerum impedīmentōrum portābant; ōrnāmenta multōrum elephantōrum aurea erant; equī frēnōs argenteōs habēbant.

Tum rēx Antiochus, "Quid putās?" inquit. "Estne satis Rōmānīs?" Hannibal respondit, "Id Rōmānīs certē erit etiamsi avidī et avārī sunt."

Rēx dē multitūdine mīlitum quaerēbat; Hannibal dē praedā futūrā Rōmānōrum respondit.

COLLATERAL READING

HANNIBAL

The fight between Rome and Carthage for the supremacy in the West lasted from 264 B.C. to 146 B.C., and is divided into three periods: The First Punic War ("The War for Sicily"); the Second Punic War ("The War for Spain" or "The War with Hannibal"); and the Third Punic War ("The War for Africa").



CARTHAGE.

View of the military harbor. Compare this with the pictures on pages 82, 145, 191, and 295.

Hannibal was the youngest son of Hamilcar Barca, the Carthaginian leader during the First Punic War. When Hannibal was only nine years old, his father swore him at the altar to eternal hostility to Rome. At twenty-six, he succeeded to the command in Spain, crossed the Pyrenees and the Rhone, forced the passes of the Alps, reached Cisalpine Gaul (see page 137) and defeated the Romans at the *Ticinus* and at the *Trebia*. The next spring he crossed the

Apennines and defeated the Roman troops near *Lake Trasimene* and a little later at the bloody battle of *Cannae*.

But Hannibal failed to reap the fruit of his victories. He tarried too long at Capua. Yet for thirteen years after the battle of Cannae, he maintained himself in Italy without reinforcement in men or money — always winning a battle when he could engage the enemy in the field.

Once he marched to the very walls of Rome, ravaging the fields about the city, but the only result was the fruitless fright he gave Rome — such that for generations Roman mothers stilled their children by the terror-bearing phrase “Hannibal ad portās,” “Hannibal at the Gates.”

In 202 Hannibal was summoned home to defend Carthage, and the same year the Second Punic War ended with his first and only defeat at the battle of Zama (Africa), which left Rome without any rival in the West.

Hannibal left his country and took refuge first at the court of Antiochus, king of Syria, and later at that of Prusias, king of Bithynia, where he died.

“*The greatest military genius who ever lived attacked the most military people which ever existed, and the genius was defeated after a sixteen years’ war.*”

LESSON XLI

THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION

85. Dative and Ablative Plural (-ibus).— The dative and ablative plural of the third declension are alike. They are formed by replacing the ending -is of the genitive singular by -ibus.

Militibus victōriam nūntiāvi. *I announced the victory to the soldiers.*
indirect object

Patria ā militibus dēfendētur. *The country will be defended by the soldiers.*
ablative of agent

86. Consonant Stems of the Third Declension, Masculine and Feminine.

	SINGULAR			Endings
	cīvitās, f., state	eques, m., cavalryman	lēx, f., law	
Base and stem: cīvitāt-		equit-	lēg-	
Nom. :	cī'vitās	e'ques	lēx	(various)
Gen. :	cīvitā'tis	e'quitis	lē'gis	-is
Dat. :	cīvitā'ti	e'quitī	lē'gī	-ī
Acc. :	cīvitā'tem	e'quitem	lē'gem	-em
Abl. :	cīvitā'te	e'quite	lē'ge	-e
PLURAL				
Nom. :	cīvitā'tēs	e'quitēs	lē'gēs	-ēs
Gen. :	cīvitā'tum	e'quitum	lē'gum	-um
Dat. :	cīvitā'tibus	equi'tibus	lē'gibus	-ibus
Acc. :	cīvitā'tēs	e'quitēs	lē'gēs	-ēs
Abl. :	cīvitā'tibus	equi'tibus	lē'gibus	-ibus

87. The Perfect Tenses of the Third Conjugation, active and passive, are formed exactly like those of the first and second. (See §§ 52, 54, 57, and 74.)

The perfect and participial stems of verbs of the third conjugation vary greatly. Review the principal parts of *dēligere*, *dūcere*, *mittere*, *petere* (Lesson XXXVIII); *cēdere*, *ostendere*, *pōnere*, *tribuere* (Lesson XXXIX); *dēfendere* and *vincere* (Lesson XL).

CONJUGATION OF *dūcere* AND *dūci*

PERFECT

ACTIVE VOICE

(*I led or have led infantrymen, etc.*)

Peditēs dū'xī

Peditēs dūxis'tī,
etc.

PASSIVE VOICE

(*I was led or have been led by infantrymen, etc.*)

Ā peditibus duc'tus, -a, -um sum

Ā peditibus duc'tus, -a, -um es,
etc.

PAST PERFECT

(*I had led cavalrymen, etc.*)

Equitēs dū'xeram

Equitēs dū'xerās,
etc.

Ab equitibus duc'tus, -a, -um eram

Ab equitibus duc'tus, -a, -um erās,
etc.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS

cī'vitās, -ā'tis, f.

e'ques, -itis, m.

lēx, lē'gis, f.

pe'des, -itis, m.

vē'rum, -ī, n.

prō (with ablative)

ENGLISH MEANINGS

state

cavalryman

law

infantryman

truth

for

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

city

equestrian

legal

pedestrian

verify, verily

pro and con



PEDITĒS DŪXĪ.

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
conten'dō, -ere, conten'dī, conten'tus	<i>fight, hasten</i>	contention
dī'cō, dī'cere, dī'xī, dic'tus	<i>say, tell</i>	diction, edict
ge'rō, -ere, ges'sī, ges'tus	<i>do, perform</i>	jest, gesture
scri'bō, -ere, scrip'sī, scrip'tus	<i>write</i>	script, scribe
bellum gerere	<i>wage war</i>	
vērūm dīcere	<i>speak the truth</i>	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) (1) Identify and translate :

misērunt, scribunt, missi estis, dēlēgeram, dēlēcta erat, scripserant, victi sunt, dixit, dicta sunt, gerō, gessimus, gestae erant.

(2) Give the perfect and participial stems of each verb.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Caesar in Galliā bellum gessit.
2. Libertās ā rēgibus numquam dēfēnsa erat.
3. Victōria militibus ā Caesare nūntiātur.
4. Hominibus semper vērū dixi.
5. Cīvitās Rōmāna ā cōsulibus dēfēnsa est.
6. Caesar prīncipibus Gallōrum scripsit.
7. Facta glōriōsa ab equitibus et peditibus gesta erant.
8. Prō lēgibus, prō libertāte, prō patriā semper contendistis.
9. Peditēs ab equitibus saepe victi sunt.
10. Cum cīvitātibus finitimis pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāverāmus.

(c) Point out in (b) all the datives and ablatives of the third declension, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline in the singular and plural :

cīvitās finitima, lēx bona, ~~pedes tardus~~.

(b) Give the perfect and past perfect of :

1. Bellum gerere.
2. Ab amīcis dēfēndi.

(c) Review. Supply the proper endings (1) in the singular ; (2) in the plural :

1. Cōsul— (indirect object) victōriam nūntiō.
2. Prō lēg— contendērunt.
3. Cum cīvitāt— finitim— pāx

cōfirmāta est. 4. Homin— (indirect object) vērum dīcere dēbēmus.

(d) Review. Replace (1) the italicized masculine words by the feminine form ; (2) the italicized singular words by the plural, masculine and feminine, and make the other necessary changes :

1. *Domīnus bonus laudātus* est. Model: (a) *Domina bona laudāta* est ; (b) *Dominī bonī laudātī* sunt ; *dominae bonae laudātae* sunt. 2. *Puer parvus* ad templum *ductus* est. 3. Ad Caesarem *missus* sum. 4. *Rēx malus victus* est. 5. Semper *dēfēnsus* erās. 6. *Filius* cōsulis nōn *dēlectus* erat.

(e) Review. Replace the dash by (1) the present ; (2) the past ; (3) the future ; (4) the perfect ; (5) the past perfect of the italicized infinitive :

1. *Dīcere*: Nōs semper vērum —.
2. *Vincī*: Ego ab equitibus —.
3. *Gerere*: Rōmānī bellum —.
4. *Mittī*: Lēgātī ā rēge ad Caesarem —.
5. *Scrībere*: Vōs rēgī nōn —.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) I say, they told (perfect), you do (**gerere**), she did, it has been done (neuter), they used to write, they wrote ; a few words had been written ; I have fought, they have been led, she had been sent, you have not been defeated.

(b) 1. You did not tell us the truth.

2. The freedom of the state has never been defended by laws.

3. A few cavalrymen had defeated a large number of infantrymen.

4. The state had been defended by the soldiers, not by the leaders.

5. We wrote to the Roman consuls.

6. You have waged war in Italy.

7. The consul had not told the truth to the hostages.

8. Kings have never defended liberty.

9. The Gauls had been defeated by Roman cavalymen.

10. Who has not fought for his country, for the state, for the laws, (and) for liberty?

READING LESSON

RĀNAE ET IUPPITER (The Frogs and Jupiter)

Rānae in palūdibus diū liberāe vīvēbant sed libertātem nōn iam amābant.

Rēgem ā Iove petivērunt. Pater deōrum, rānārum clāmōribus exōrātus, trabem magnam ad eās mīsīt.

Rēx novus ē caelō in aquam cecidit. Rānae, sonō perterritae, sē abdidērunt, sed postquam trabem immōtam in aquā vīdērunt, cum magnā contemptiōne in eā cōnsēdērunt, et alium rēgem clāmōribus novīs ā patre deōrum petivērunt.

Tum Iuppiter stultitiam rānārum castigāre statuit et gruem ad eās mīsīt. Ea rānās ferē cūctās dēvorāvit. Paucae necem fugitāvērunt.

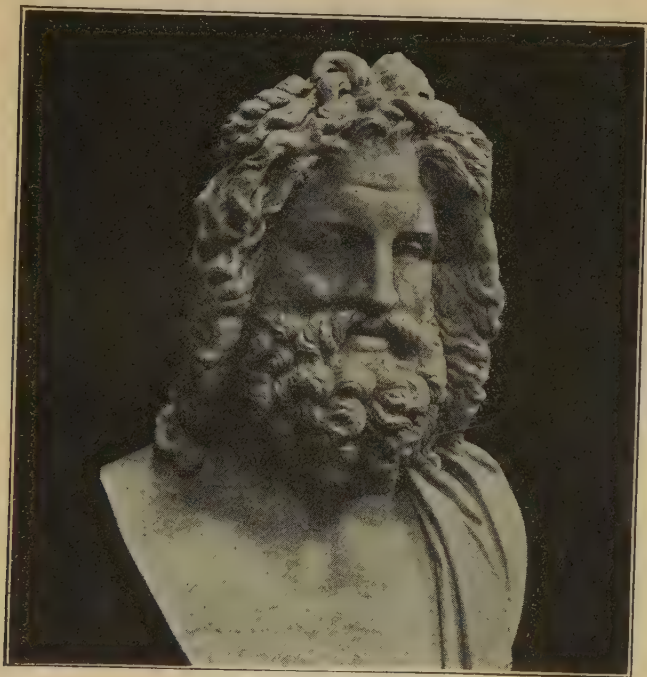
Nostrā fortunā contentī esse dēbēmus.

EXERCISES

One of the pupils may read the questions, and his classmates answer them :

1. Ubi rānae vīvēbant? 2. Quōmodo vīvēbant?
3. Quid nōn iam amābant? 4. Quod dōnum ā Iove petivērunt?
5. Quod dōnum Iuppiter ad eās mīsīt? 6. Cūr?
7. Ē quō locō rēx novus cecidit? 8. Quō (*where*) cecidit?

9. Cūr rānae perterritae sunt? 10. Quid fēcērunt? 11. Cūr cum magnā contemptiōne in trabe consēdērunt? 12. Ā quō deō alium rēgem petīvērunt? 13. Cūr Iuppiter ad rānās gruem mīsit? 14. Cūnetāsne rānās grūs dēvorāvit? 15. Quot necem fugitāverunt?



JUPITER.

COLLATERAL READING

WRITING MATERIAL

The Romans wrote either on wax tablets or on papyrus or on parchment. To write on tablets, they used a piece of bone or metal, with one of the ends pointed like a pencil, and the other flattened so as to spread the wax or to erase

the writing. To write on papyrus or on parchment, they used a reed sharpened obliquely and dipped in ink.

Books were made of sheets of papyrus (or of parchment, 2d century A.D.) rolled around a stick. Each book was



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS.

This lifelike face is a Pompeian painting in the museum at Naples.

put into a case, bearing the title. Schoolboys' books were carried in a box of cylinder shape (**capsa**). (See picture on page xii.)

Persius, describing the hard task of the "pedagogue" or trusted slave in charge of a boy's education, goes on as

follows: "At last (the boy has just got up), there he is with his book, his bicolored parchment of which the hair has fallen off, his notebooks and the knotty reed in his hand. Then new complaints are heard: now the ink too thick does not flow from the pen or too thin does not show on the paper; now the pen leaves two strokes instead of one . . ."

The Romans wrote a great many business and private letters. Short notes were written on tablets which were returned with the answer. Letters were written on papyrus. Both letters and short notes were tied by a thread and sealed.

Official mail was carried quickly, especially after the imperial postal system was created. Private mail was forwarded, as the occasion arose, through friends, public officials, or tradesmen, or by slaves if one was rich, or by special messengers if the letter was for people living in town or the suburbs.

LESSON XLII

THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION

88. The Singular of Neuter Nouns with consonant stems is declined like the masculine and feminine nouns of the same group, except that the accusative is always like the nominative :

	SINGULAR			
	flūmen, n., <i>river</i>	caput, n., <i>head</i>	tempus, n., <i>time</i>	<i>Endings</i>
Base and stem :	flūmin-	capit-	tempor-	
Nom. :	flū'men	ca'put	tem'pus	(various)
Gen. :	flū'minis	ca'pitis	tem'poris	-is
Dat. :	flū'minī	ca'pitī	tem'porī	-ī
Acc. :	flū'men	ca'put	tem'pus	(like Nom.)
Abl. :	flū'mine	ca'pite	tem'pore	-e

89. Verbs in *-iō* of the Third Conjugation. — A few very common verbs of the third conjugation show *-i-* before *-o* and *-u* in the present indicative, active and passive.

90. The principal parts of the model verb *capere*, to seize, to catch, to take, are :

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT INDICATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
capiō	capere	cēpī	captus
Stem : Present, cape-; Perfect, cēp-; Participial, capt-			

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **capere** AND **capi**

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
(I take up arms, etc.)	(I am caught by a cavalry-man, etc.)
Arma ca'piō	Ab equite ca'pior
Arma ca'pis	Ab equite ca'peris
Arma ca'pit	Ab equite ca'pitor
Arma ca'pimus	Ab equite ca'pimur
Arma ca'pitis	Ab equite capi'mini
Arma ca'piunt	Ab equite capiun'tur

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
altitū'do, -inis, f.	<i>depth</i>	altitude
ca'put, -itis, n.	<i>head, capital</i>	decapitate
cor'pus, -oris, n.	<i>body</i>	corps, corpse
flū'men, -inis, n.	<i>river</i>	flume
i'ter, iti'neris, n.	<i>way, road</i>	itinerary
tem'pus, -oris, n.	<i>time</i>	temporal, tempo- rize
vul'nus, -eris, n.	<i>wound</i>	vulnerable
per (with acc.)	<i>through</i>	perforate
ca'piō, -ere,	<i>seize, take,</i>	capture, captive
cē'pī, cap'tus	<i>catch</i>	
acci'piō, -ere, ¹	<i>receive</i>	accept
accē'pī, accep'tus		
fa'ciō, -ere,	<i>make, do</i>	fact, faction
fē'cī, fac'tus		
fu'giō, -ere,	<i>flee, fly</i>	fugitive
fūgī, —		
arma capere	<i>take up arms</i>	
iter facere	<i>march</i>	

¹ In composition, the a of **capere** becomes i: **ac** + **capere** = **accipere**, and the a of **captus** becomes -e: **acceptus**.

(d) Review. Replace the dash by the present indicative of the italicized infinitive :

1. *Capere*: Caesar principēs Gallōrum —.
2. *Facere*: Nōs per Ītaliā iter —.
3. *Fugere*: Peditēs Rōmānī numquam —.
4. *Accipī*: Multī obsidēs —.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) He takes, they do not take, you are caught, I make, you are making, we receive, she does not receive, a wound is received, we flee.

(b) 1. At that time¹ Caesar was elected consul.

2. This road leads to the river.

3. Few infantry men are caught.

4. You do not take up arms.

5. We march through Italy.

6. Time does not fly if you are lazy.

7. Hostages are received but not given by the Romans.

8. Rome will always be the haughty capital of the world.

9. My friend is inquiring about (*quaerere dē*, with ablative) the depth of the river.

10. The chief flees, receives a wound in the body, (and) is captured.

READING LESSON

I. QUAM PULCHRUM CAPUT! (What a Beautiful Head!)

Quīdam in officiānam sculptōris intrat et persōnam (*mask*) pulchram videt. Eam circumspicit et clāmat, "Quam pulchrum caput! sed nūllum cerebrum habet."

Idem, nōn sine causā, dē multīs discipulīs dicī potest.

¹ See footnote on previous page.

II. MORS EPAMĪNŌNDÆ (Epaminondas' Death)

Epamīnōndās, dux Thēbānōrum, in certāmine (*or in proeliō*) hastā graviter vulnerātus erat. Vulnus grave erat. Amīcī eum circumstābant. Nōn longō post tempore, eōs interrogāvit, "Salvusne clipeus meus est? Estne victōria certa?" Amīcī utrumque affirmāvērunt. Tum Epamīnōndās hastam ē corpore ēripuit et statim expīrāvit.



PERSŌNAE RŌMĀNAE.

EXERCISES (Optional)

Oral and Written.

(a) Decline in the singular :

vulnus malum, caput pulchrum, corpus sānum (*healthy*).

(b) Give (1) the first persons singular and plural of all the tenses you know of : *idem dicere*.

(2) The present indicative: **hastam ēripere** (see **capere**).

(3) The third persons singular and plural of all the tenses you know of: **persōnam** (*a mask*) **vidēre**.

COLLATERAL READING

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

Years were indicated either by the names of the consuls: **T. Veturiō Sp. Postumiō coss.** (= **cōsulibus**), that is, *the year during which Titus Veturius and Spurius Postumius were consuls*; or from the foundation of Rome 753 B.C.: **annō nōnāgēsīmō U. C.** or **A. U. C.** = **annō nōnāgēsīmō Urbis Conditae** or **ab Urbe Conditā**, that is, *the ninetieth year from the foundation of the city (of Rome)*.

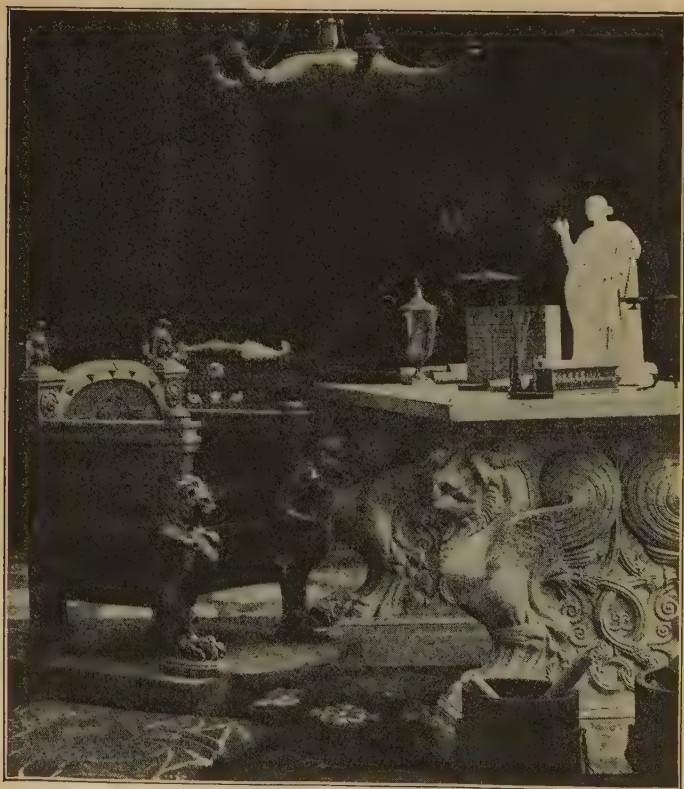
Before Caesar's time (to 46 B.C.) the year had only 355 days. Caesar gave the year 365 days. Every fourth year, the 24th of February was repeated.

The months, which after Caesar's change had the same number of days as now, were divided into three unequal parts by the Calends, Nones, and Ides. The Calends were the first day of the month; the Nones came nine days before the Ides; and the Ides were on the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and on the 13th of the other months. Originally the Calends fell on the new moon and the Ides on the full moon. The months were:

Iānuārius, Februārius, Mārtius, Aprilis, Māius, Iūnius, Quīntīlis (July), Sextīlis (August), September, Octōber, November, December.¹

¹ The first day of the year fell on March 1st till 153 B.C., a fact which explains the Latin names of the months *Quīntīlis* (the 5th month), *Sextīlis* (the 6th month), *September* (the 7th month), *Octōber* (the 8th month), *November* (the 9th month), and *December* (the 10th month).

The part of the day between sunrise and sunset was divided into twelve equal hours of different duration according to season; noon alone was a fixed time which marked the beginning of the 7th hour.



A ROMAN ROOM, SHOWING A CALENDAR.

Night between sunset and sunrise was divided into four equal parts or watches, also of different duration according to season, with midnight as a fixed hour which marked the beginning of the 3d watch.

To know the time, sundials were used from 263 B.C., and clepsydras or water-clocks (a vessel of glass or some transparent substance, from which the water trickled out through a narrow orifice) from 159 B.C. — *Rome et les Romains*, by Bornecque and Mornet.

LESSON XLIII

THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION

91. The Plural of Neuter Nouns of the third declension with consonant stems is declined like the masculine and feminine nouns of the same group, except that both the nominative and accusative end in *-a* instead of *-ēs*.



FLŪMEN RŌMĀNUM.

Flūmen, *-inis, river*

SINGULAR		<i>Endings</i>	PLURAL		<i>Endings</i>
Nom. :	flū'men	(various)	flū'mina		-a
Gen. :	flū'minis	-is	flū'minum		-um
Dat. :	flū'minī	-ī	flūmi'nibus		-ibus
Acc. :	flū'men	(like the Nom.)	flū'mina		-a
Abl. :	flū'mine	-e	flūmi'nibus		-ibus

92. The Past and Future of third conjugation verbs in **-iō** are formed regularly like **dūcere** (see §§ 81 and 84) except that they retain the **-i**.

PAST OF **capere** AND **capi**

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

(I used to take, I took, I did (I used to be seized, I was take, I was taking the seized by Cassius, etc.) money, etc.)

Pecūniam capiē'bam

Ā Cassiō capiē'bar

Pecūniam capiē'bās

Ā Cassiō capiēbā'ris

Pecūniam capiē'bat

Ā Cassiō capiēbā'tur

Pecūniam capiēbā'mus

Ā Cassiō capiēbā'mur

Pecūniam capiēbā'tis

Ā Cassiō capiēbā'minī

Pecūniam capiē'bant

Ā Cassiō capiēban'tur

FUTURE

(I shall or will take the town, (I shall or will be caught at etc.) that time, etc.)

Oppidum ca'pīam

Eō tempore ca'piar

Oppidum ca'piēs

Eō tempore capiē'ris

Oppidum ca'piet

Eō tempore capiē'tur

Oppidum capiē'mus

Eō tempore capiē'mur

Oppidum capiē'tis

Eō tempore capiē'minī

Oppidum ca'pient

Eō tempore capien'tur

93. The Perfect Tenses are formed regularly.

PERFECT

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

(I took or have taken a sword, etc.)

(I was or have been caught in the plain, etc.)

Gladium cē'pī

In campō cap'tus, -a, -um sum

Gladium cē'pis'tī

In campō cap'tus, -a, -um es

Gladium cē'pit

In campō cap'tus, -a, -um est

PERFECT

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

Gladium cē'pimus

In campō cap'tī, -ae, -a

sumus

Gladium cēpis'tis

In campō cap'tī, -ae, -a

estis

Gladium cēpē'runt

In campō cap'tī, -ae, -a

sunt

PAST PERFECT

(I had captured a chief,
etc.)(I had been captured by a chief,
etc.)

Prīncipem cē'peram

Ā prīncipe cap'tus, -a, -um eram

Prīncipem cēp'erās, etc. Ā prīncipe cap'tus, -a, -um erās, etc.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS

ENGLISH MEANINGS

RELATED
ENGLISH WORDS

ge'nus, -eris, n.

sort, kind

genus, generic

rī'pa, -ae, f.

(river) bank

riparian

al'tus, -a, -um

high, deep

altitude

va'rius, -a, -um

various

varied, variety

ēri'piō, -ere,¹ ēri'-

take out, snatch

rapt, rapture

puī, ērep'tus

ia'ciō, -ere, iē'cī,

throw

eject, ejection

iac'tus

interfi'ciō, -ere,¹

kill

interfē'cī, interfec'-

tus

mū'tō, -ā're,

change

mutation, mu-

-tā'vī, -tā'tus

table

magnis itineribus contendere to hasten by forced marches

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) (1) Give the base and stem of all the nouns and the three stems of all the verbs in the vocabularies of

¹ See footnote, p. 253, and compare with *rapīō, rapere, rapuī, raptus*, seize, and *faciō, facere, fēcī, factus*, do.

Lessons XLII and XLIII ; (2) divide each word into syllables, indicating which syllable must be accented.

(b) Identify and translate :

iaciam, iēcistī, iacitur, iactum erat, ēripiēnt, ēripiēbātur, ēripuērunt, ēreptī sunt, interficiētur, interfēcēram, interfectī erant, interficiēbāmus, mūtāvērunt, mūtābitur, mūtātum est.

(c) Pronounce carefully, and translate :

1. Tempora mūtantur.
2. Rīpae flūminum saepe altae sunt.
3. Pauca flūmina Eurōpae longa sunt.
4. Multī militēs vulnera varia accipiēbant.
5. Varia genera vulnerum accēperāmus.
6. Militēs nostrī patriam ē periculō ēripiēnt.
7. Caesar in Ītaliā magnīs itinēribus contendit.
8. Rēx ab equitibus interfectus est.
9. Corpus prīncipis in flūmen iactum erat.
10. Hastae ē vulneribus ēripiēbantur.
11. Cassium et Labiēnum cōsulēs interficiētis et corpora eōrum in flūmen iaciētis.

(d) Point out in (c) all the neuter nouns of the third declension, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline (1) in both numbers: **genus novum** ;
(2) in the plural :

vulnera varia, itinera longa, multa flūmina.

(b) Give all the tenses of the indicative of :

1. Obsidēs interficere.
2. Ē periculō ēripi.

(c) Review. Put the italicized singular nouns in the plural, and make all necessary changes :

1. *Lēgātus vulnus* accipiēbat.
2. Rīpae *flūminis* altae sunt.
3. *Corpus* in flūmen iacitur.
4. *Caput* parvum

videō. 5. *Hasta ē vulnere ērepta erat.* 6. *Iter longum nōn grātum est.*

(d) Review. Replace the present by all the other tenses of the indicative :

1. *Eques fugit.* 2. *Puerum ē flūmine ēripiō.* 3. *Galli Cassium cōsulem interficiunt.* 4. *Corpora servōrum in flūmen iaciuntur.*

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) They were taking, you will not take, she was taken, we snatch away, you (singular) will be snatched away, we never change, they were changed, he throws, we used to throw, we have killed, I shall not kill, he used to kill, she will be killed, they have not killed.

(b) 1. Times were changed, are changed, will be changed.

2. We shall snatch our friends away from danger.

3. At that time, the depth of the rivers was small.

4. You never threw away your weapons and you never fled.

5. We were hastening by forced marches through Gaul.

6. The slaves have been caught and killed on the banks of the rivers.

7. The horse had received various wounds in the body and in the head, but had not been killed.

8. They had snatched the spears from their wounds.

9. They will receive our hostages, will kill them, and will throw the bodies into the river.

READING LESSON

I. QUID DEINDE? (What Then?)

Quondam amīcō suō Cīneae Pyrrhus, rēx Ēpīrī, “Ītaliā,” inquit, “subiciam.” Respondit Cīneās, “Tum, quid agēs,

ō rēx?" — "Tum, per Siciliam magnīs itineribus contendam." Cīneās dīxit, "Quid posteā agēs?" Rēx quī nōndum Cīneae mentem perspiciebāt, "Āfricam," inquit, "petam." Pergit Cīneās, "Quid deinde, ō rēx?" "Tum dēnique, mī amīce," ait Pyrrhus, "vītam in ōtiō agēmus." — "Quīn tū," respondit Cīneās, "in ōtiō iam nunc vītam agis?"



RELIEF ON THE ARCH OF TITUS.

This relief shows part of the plunder, including the famous seven-branched candle-stick and the trumpets, which the Romans, when they captured Jerusalem in 70 A.D., carried away from the city to Rome.

II. NŌMINA RŌMĀNŌRUM (Roman Names)

Cīvēs Rōmānī tria nōmina habēbant. Prīmum nōmen prænōmen erat; secundum vel medium, maiōrum nōmen erat; tertium vel extrēmum cognōmen erat.

Exemplī gratiā, M. Tullius Cicerō: M. vel Mārcus prænōmen erat; Tullius, gentis nōmen erat. Cicerō cognōmen erat. Tullius vērum nōmen erat.

COLLATERAL READING

ROMAN NAMES

A Roman had at least three names. The gentile name was the *nomen*, the most important of the three; it came in the middle. The third (the *cognomen*) marked the family. The first (the *praenomen*) was the individual name (like our baptismal name). Then a Roman often received also a surname for some achievement or characteristic. Thus *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus* was the *individual* Publius of the *Scipio family* of the great *Cornelian gens*, *surnamed* Africanus for his conquest of Africa.

The first name was often abbreviated in writing. The most common of these abbreviations were: C. for Caius (Gaius); Cn. for Gnaeus; L. for Lucius; M. for Marcus; P. for Publius; Q. for Quintus; T. for Titus.

REVIEW LESSON XLIV

94. Consonant Stems of the Third Declension :
masculine, feminine, and neuter.

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	<i>Endings</i>		
				M.	F.	N.
	cōnsul	lēx	flūmen			
Base and stem :	cōnsul-	lēg-	flūmin-			
Nom. :	cōnsul	lēx	flūmen	(various)		
Gen. :	cōnsulis	lēgis	flūminis	-is	-is	-is
Dat. :	cōsulī	lēgī	flūminī	-ī	-ī	-ī
Acc. :	cōnsulem	lēgem	flūmen	-em	-em	like Nom.
Abl. :	cōnsule	lēge	flūmine	-e	-e	-e

PLURAL

Nom. :	cōsulēs	lēgēs	flūmina	-ēs	-a
Gen. :	cōsulum	lēgum	flūminum	-um	
Dat. :	cōsulibus	lēgibus	flūminibus	-ibus	
Acc. :	cōsulēs	lēgēs	flūmina	-ēs	-a
Abl. :	cōsulibus	lēgibus	flūminibus	-ibus	

Compare the following case endings :

DECLENSION	I	II	III
Accusative singular :	-am	-um	-em
Genitive plural :	-ārum	-ōrum	-um
Accusative plural :	-ās	-ōs	-ēs

95. **Third Conjugation.** — Compare the conjugation of **dūcere** and that of **capere**.

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

PRESENT INFINITIVE

dūcere

capere

dūcī

capī

PRESENT INDICATIVE

dūcō

capiō

dūcor

capior

dūcis

capis

dūceris

caperis

dūcit

capit

dūcitur

capitur

dūcimus

capimus

dūcimur

capimur

dūcitis

capitis

dūciminī

capiminī

dūcunt

capiunt

dūcuntur

capiuntur

PAST

dūcēbam

capiēbam

dūcēbar

capiēbar

dūcēbās

capiēbās

dūcēbāris

capiēbāris

dūcēbat

capiēbat

dūcēbātūr

capiēbātūr

dūcēbāmus

capiēbāmus

dūcēbāmur

capiēbāmur

dūcēbātis

capiēbātis

dūcēbāminī

capiēbāminī

dūcēbant

capiēbant

dūcēbantur

capiēbantur

FUTURE (Tense sign -ē-; not -bi-)

dūcam

capiam

dūcar

capiar

dūcēs

capiēs

dūcēris

capiēris

dūcet

capiet

dūcētūr

capiētūr

dūcēmus

capiēmus

dūcēmur

capiēmur

dūcētis

capiētis

dūcēminī

capiēminī

dūcent

capient

dūcentur

capientur

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

PERFECT

dūxī	cēpī	ductus, -a, -um sum	captus -a, -um sum
dūxistī	cēpistī	es	es
dūxit	cēpit	est	est
dūximus	cēpimus	ductī, -ae, -a sumus	captī, -ae, -a sumus
dūxistis	cēpistis	estis	estis
dūxērunt	cēpērunt	sunt	sunt

PAST PERFECT

dūxeram	cēperam	ductus, -a, -um eram	captus, -a, -um eram
dūxerās	cēperās	erās	erās
dūxerat	cēperat	erat	erat
dūxerāmus	cēperāmus	ductī, -ae, -a erāmus	captī, -ae, -a erāmus
dūxerātis	cēperātis	erātis	erātis
dūxerant	cēperant	erant	erant

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Translate into English the following words :

1. Nouns

A. FIRST DECLENSION

ripa

B. SECOND DECLENSION

vērūm

C. THIRD DECLENSION

altitūdō

caput

cīvitās

eques

amor

celeritās

cōnsul

flūmen

Caesar

Cicerō

corpus

genus

N homō	N mīles	N pedes	T tempus
I iter	R obses	N princeps	F virtūs
F lēx	T pāx	N rēx	F vulnus
F libertās			

2. *Adjectives*

altus varius

3. *Verbs*

A. FIRST CONJUGATION

mūtāre

B. THIRD CONJUGATION

accipere	dicere	gerere	pōnere
capere	discēdere	iacere	praecēdere
cēdere	dūcere	interficere	scrībere
contendere	ēripere	mittere	tribuere
dēfendere	facere	ostendere	vincere
dēligere	fugere	petere	

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

per prō

5. *Idioms*

arma capere	iter facere
bellum gerere	magnīs itineribus contendere
castra pōnere	vērūm dicere

(b) Divide all the words in (a) into syllables, indicating which one must be accented, and telling why.

(c) Point out in (a): (1) the masculine nouns; (2) the feminine nouns; (3) the neuter nouns.

(d) Give (1) the base and stem (see § 77 a) of all the nouns in (a); (2) their genitive singular.

(e) Point out in (a) 3 the verbs which are conjugated like **capere**.

(f) Give (1) the principal parts; (2) the three stems of all the verbs in (a) 3.

(g) Answer the following questions and illustrate:

i. Nouns.

1. How can you tell that a noun belongs to the third declension?

2. What is a noun with a consonant stem?

3. What is the difference between the base and the stem of a noun with a consonant stem?

4. What is the ending of the nominative singular of all nouns of the third declension with consonant stems?

5. What is the ending of the genitive singular of all nouns of the third declension?

6. Why must we learn the genitive singular of nouns of the third declension along with the nominative singular?

7. What is the ending of the accusative singular (a) of all masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension; (b) of all neuter nouns with consonant stems?

8. What is the ending of the dative singular of all nouns of the third declension?

9. What is the ending of the ablative singular of all nouns of the third declension with consonant stems?

10. What is the common ending of the nominative and accusative plural (a) of all masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension; (b) of neuter nouns with consonant stems?

11. What is the ending of the genitive plural of nouns of the third declension with consonant stems?

12. What is the common ending of the dative and ablative plural of all nouns of the third declension?

ii. Verbs.

1. (a) What is the ending of the present infinitive, active voice, of the third conjugation? (b) How does it differ from that of the second conjugation?

2. What is the ending of the present infinitive passive of the third conjugation?

3. (a) How is the present indicative active formed?
(b) How is the present indicative passive formed?

4. (a) How is the past (active and passive) formed?
(b) How does it differ from that of the second conjugation?

5. (a) How is the future (active and passive) formed?
(b) How does it differ from that of the second conjugation?

6. How are the perfect tenses of the third conjugation (active and passive voices) formed?

7. How does the conjugation of **capere** and a few other verbs ending in **-ere** differ from that of the model verb **dūcere**?

8. What does the **a** of **capere**, **facere**, and **rapere** become in composition?

II. Written.

(a) Translate into Latin the following words, marking all long vowels:

1. Nouns

bank	head	liberty	soldier
body	hostage	love	sort
Caesar	infantryman	man	state
cavalryman	kind	manliness	time
Cicero	king	peace	truth
consul	law	quickness	way
depth	leader	river	wound

2. Adjectives

high various

3. Verbs

to ask for	to change	to depart	to excel
to attribute	to choose	to display	to fight
to capture	to defend	to do	to flee

to kill	to receive	to send	to throw
to lead	to say	to take (a person)	to vanquish
to make	to seek	to take out	to write
to put	to seize	to tell	to yield

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

for through

5. *Idioms*

to hasten by forced marches	to speak the truth
to march	to take up arms
to pitch camp	to wage war

(b) Derivation. Make a list of the English derivatives of **dūcere**, **scribere**, and **vincere**, according to Type I (see page 178); of **gerere**, **petere**, and **pōnere**, according to Type II; of **dīcere** and **mittere**, according to Type III.

COLLATERAL READING

TRAVEL UNDER THE EARLY EMPIRE

The roads were safe. Piracy ceased from the seas, and trade flourished as it was not to flourish again until the days of Columbus. The ports were crowded with shipping, and the Mediterranean was spread with happy sails. One Roman writer exclaims that there are as many men upon the waves as upon land. . . .

From end to end of the Empire, *travel was safe and rapid*. The grand military roads ran in trunk-lines — a thousand miles at a stretch — from every frontier toward the central heart of the Empire, with a dense network of branches in every province. Guide books described routes and told distances. Inns abounded. The imperial couriers that hurried along the great highways passed a hundred and fifty milestones a day.

Private travel, from the Thames to the Euphrates, was swifter, safer, and more comfortable than ever again until the days of railroads in the nineteenth century. Much of this travel was in wheeled and cushioned carriages, which rolled smoothly along the perfectly faced stones of the Roman roads. But many people chose instead luxurious litters, each swung along by its eight even-paced Cappadocian slaves, at a swift trot, with a motion so easy that reading or writing within was a pleasant employment. . . .



A LUXURIOUS LITTER.

And men traveled for pleasure as well as for business. There was a keen desire in each great quarter of the Empire to see the other regions which Rome had molded into one world. It seems to have been at least as common a thing for the gentleman of Gaul or Britain to visit the wonders of Rome and of the Nile as for the modern American to spend a summer in England and France.

One language answered all needs from London to Babylon. Families took pleasure trips in a body; and, quite in modern

fashion, they sometimes defaced precious monuments of the past with their scrawls. One of the most famous statues of Egypt bears a scratched inscription that it has been visited by a certain Roman gentleman, "Gemellus," with "his dear wife, Rufilla" and their children.

LESSON XLV

REVIEW.

READING LESSON

FAMILIA (The Household)

Familia antīqua societās religiōsa erat. Familiae deōs variōs habēbant. Familia Rōmāna ē parentibus et liberis ¹ et servīs compōnēbātur.

Parentēs pater et māter sunt. Liberī filiī et filiae sunt. Patrem, mātrem, frātrēs et sorōrēs habēmus. Pater noster multōs servōs habet. Māter nostra multās servās habet.

Liberī parentēs amant. Liberī ā patre et mātrem amantur. Amor patris magnus sed amor māttris pūrus et dīvinus est. Pater dominus familiae est.

Liberī industriā māttris docentur. Frāter sorōrem parvam iuvat. Frātrēs sorōrēs amant. Frātrēs sorōribus dōna saepe dant. Soror frātrem parvum iuvat. Dōna crēbra frātrī ā sorōre dantur.

Avī parentēs patris et māttris sunt. Avunculi frātrēs mātrem, patruī frātrēs patrum sunt. Amita soror patris, mātertera soror māttris est. Coniugēs marītus et uxor sunt.

Parentēs liberis exempla bona dare dēbent.

EXERCISES

Answer the following questions, based on the preceding text:

1. Quid familia antīqua erat?
2. Habēbantne familiae antīquae eōsdem deōs?
3. E quibus familia Rōmāna

¹ Liberī, -ōrum, m. pl., *children* (never used in the singular) means the children of Roman citizens; while *puerī*, -ōrum, m. pl., *children*, is used for the children of all others.

- compōnēbātur? 4. Quī parentēs sunt? 5. Quī liberī sunt? 6. Habētisne patrem, mātrem, frātrēs et sorōrēs? 7. Habetne pater vester multōs servōs? 8. Habetne māter vestra multās ~~servās?~~ 9. Quōs liberī amant? 10. Ā quibus liberī amantur? 11. Suntne idem amor patris et amor māttris? 12. Quis dominus familiae est? 13. Quōmodo liberī docentur? 14. Quem frāter iuvat? 15. Cui frātrēs dōna saepe dant? 16. Quid soror agit? 17. Quī avī, avunculī, patruī, amitae et māterterae sunt? 18. Quī coniugēs sunt? 19. Quid parentēs liberīs dare dēbent?

One of the pupils may read the above questions and his classmates answer them in complete sentences.

COLLATERAL READING

A ROMAN FATHER'S POWER

The Roman father had complete authority over his sons and grandsons as long as he lived, even when they were grown men and perhaps in the ruling offices of the city. When his son took a wife, she, too, leaving her own family, came under his control. His own daughters passed by marriage from his hand under that of some other house-father.

The father ruled his household, *and the household of his male descendants*, as priest, judge, and king. He could sell or slay his wife, unmarried daughter, grown-up son, or son's wife; and all that was theirs was his.

No appeal lay from him to any higher judge. In practice, however, the father was influenced somewhat by near relatives and by public opinion.

It is a curious fact that, despite the legal slavery of women, the Roman matrons had a dignity and public influence unknown in Greece.

LESSON XLVI

THIRD DECLENSION (-I STEMS). FOURTH CONJUGATION

96. *-I Stems.* — We have seen (§ 77 *a*) that nouns with consonant stems have the stem like the base.



ÎNSULA IN TIBERĪ.

In nouns with *-i* stems, the stem is formed by adding *i* to the base. Their declension differs from that of consonant stems of the third declension only in having the genitive plural in *-ium*, and the nominative and accusative neuter plural in *-ia*.¹

¹ A few nouns have kept the old accusative in *-im* and the ablative in *-ī*. *Tiberis*, *-is*, *m.*, *the Tiber (river)*; *acc.*: *-im*; *abl.*: *-ī*.

Nouns with *-i* stems are the following :

(a) Nouns ending in *-ēs* and *-is*, not increasing in the genitive, that is, of which the nominative and genitive singular have the same number of syllables.

Compare Nom.: *vulpēs*, *fox*; gen., *vulpis* (*-i* stem, not increasing);

Nom.: *obsēs*, *hostage*; gen., *obsidis* (consonant stem, increasing).

(b) Nouns ending in *-ns* and *-rs*: *cohors*, *-ortis*, f., *cohort*.

(c) Monosyllables ending in *-s* or *-x*, preceded by a consonant: *urbs*, *urbis*, f., *city*.

(d) Neuter nouns ending in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*.

97. The Singular of Masculine and Feminine Nouns with *-i* stems is like that of masculine and feminine nouns with consonant stems.

SINGULAR

	<i>cīvis</i> , m., <i>citizen</i>	<i>urbs</i> , f., <i>city</i>	
Base:	<i>cīv-</i>	<i>urb-</i>	
Stem:	<i>cīvi-</i>	<i>urbi-</i>	
			<i>Endings</i>
Nom.:	<i>cī'vis</i>	<i>urbs</i>	<i>-s</i>
Gen.:	<i>cī'vis</i>	<i>urbis</i>	<i>-is</i>
Dat.:	<i>cī'vī</i>	<i>urbī</i>	<i>-ī</i>
Acc.:	<i>cī'vem</i>	<i>urbem</i>	<i>-em(-im)</i>
Abl.:	<i>cī've</i>	<i>urbe</i>	<i>-e (-ī)</i>

98. The Fourth Conjugation (*-īre* ; *-īrī*). The present infinitive of the fourth conjugation ends in *-īre*, active voice, and *-īrī*, passive voice: *audīre*, to hear; *audīrī*, to be heard. The present stem is *audī-*.

The present indicative of verbs of the fourth conjugation varies very slightly from that of the verbs in *-iō* of the third conjugation (see § 95).

The quantity of the stem vowel *i* differs in certain persons, and the second person singular, passive voice, ends in *-īris*, not *-eris*.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *audīre* AND *audiri*

ACTIVE VOICE (I hear the master, etc.)	PASSIVE VOICE (I am heard by the master, etc.)
<i>Dominum au'diō</i>	<i>Ā dominō au'dior</i>
<i>Dominum au'dis</i>	<i>Ā dominō audī'ris</i>
<i>Dominum au'dit</i>	<i>Ā dominō audī'tur</i>
<i>Dominum audī'mus</i>	<i>Ā dominō audī'mur</i>
<i>Dominum audī'tis</i>	<i>Ā dominō audī'minī</i>
<i>Dominum au'diunt</i>	<i>Ā dominō audiun'tur</i>

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
<i>cī'vis</i> , -is, m.	<i>citizen</i>	civic, civil
<i>hos'tis</i> , -is, m.	<i>enemy (in war)</i>	hostile, hostility
<i>or'bis</i> , -is, m.	<i>circle</i>	orb, orbit
<i>urbs</i> , <i>urbis</i> , f.	<i>city, town</i>	urban, urbane
<i>Rō'mulus</i> , -ī, m.	<i>Romulus</i>	
<i>pri'mus</i> , -a, -um	<i>first</i>	prime
<i>nī'hil</i> (indeclinable)	<i>nothing</i>	nihilism
<i>au'diō</i> , -ī're, <i>audī'vī</i> , <i>audī'tus</i>	<i>hear, listen to</i>	audit, audition, au- dible
<i>pū'niō</i> , -ī're, <i>pūnī'vī</i> , <i>pūnī'tus</i>	<i>punish</i>	punitive
<i>sci'ō</i> , -ī're, <i>sci'vī</i> , <i>sci'-</i> <i>tus</i>	<i>know</i>	science, scientist
<i>ve'niō</i> , -ī're, <i>vē'nī</i> , <i>ven'tus</i>	<i>come</i>	advent, convene
<i>inve'niō</i> , -ī're, <i>in-</i> <i>vē'nī</i> , <i>inven'tus</i>	<i>find</i>	invent, invention
<i>orbis terrārum</i>	<i>the world</i>	



THE FINDING OF ROMULUS AND REMUS.

From a painting by Rubens.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and translate :

pūnīmus, pūnīminī, sciunt, scītur, venītis, venīs, invenit,
inveniuntur, audīris, audīmur.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Eō tempore urbs Rōma caput orbis terrārum erat.
2. Rōmulus prīmus rēx urbis Rōmae fuit.
3. Hostis ad urbem Rōmam venit.

4. Equitēs hostem in urbe inveniunt.
5. Incolae hostī frūmentum nōn dedērunt.
6. Cīvis bonus sum; cīvitatē dēfendō.
7. Verba bonī cīvis audimus.
8. Princeps militēs malōs pūnit.
9. Cūr (*why*) numquam audior? Cūr semper pūnior?
10. Quid scīs? Nihil sciō.
11. Quid dē primīs rēgibus eius urbis scītis? Nihil dē
eīs scīmus; nihil scītur.
12. Verba prīncipis ā militibus audiuntur.

(c) Point out in (b) all the nouns with *-i* stems of the third declension, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline in the singular:

cīvis bonus urbs aeterna

(b) Give the present indicative of:

1. Ad urbem venīre.
2. Ā magistrō pūnīrī.

(c) Review. Supply the singular endings:

1. Cīv— (subject) malus urb— (direct object) nōn dēfendit.
2. Cīv— (direct object) bonum nōn pūniō.
3. Host— (subject) in urb— est.
4. Host— (direct object) in urb— invenīmus.
5. Cum host— pugnāvērunt.
6. Host— (indirect object) frūmentum nōn damus.

(d) Review. Put in the singular:

1. Quid scīmus?
2. Militēs veniunt.
3. Rosae in silvīs nōn inveniuntur.
4. Cīvem malum pūnīmus.
5. Nihil audītis.

(e) Review. Add the verb endings (present indicative):

1. Vōs verba nostra nōn aud—.
2. Ego ad urbem ven—.
3. Puella saepe pūn— (passive).
4. Militēs

nostrī hostem in campō inven—. 5. Cūr nōs numquam aud— (passive)?

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) You hear, they are heard, I know, it is known, he does not punish, we are punished, we come, you (sing.) do not find, you are always found.

(b) 1. We are not heard by the enemy.

2. The enemy is found in the city.

3. Why are you always punished?

4. We do not hear the teacher's words.

5. Teachers do not punish good pupils; they praise them.

6. The Gauls are coming to the city of Rome.

7. He fights in the city with the enemy.

8. We know nothing about (dē) the first kings of the capital of the world.

9. What is known about the first consuls of the city of Rome?

10. Are you a good citizen? The city is always defended by a good citizen.

READING LESSON

I. TAURUS ET MUSCA (The Bull and the Fly)

In dorsō taurī musca parva erat. "Sī tē nimis gravō," inquit, "statim āvolābō." Taurus eī respondit, "Ubi es? Nihil sentiō."

II. SERVUS PIGER (The Lazy Slave)

Dominus verberibus servum pigrum castigābat. Servus exclāmāvit, "Cūr, domine, mē percutis? Nihil fēcī." Et dominus, "Propter id ipsum," inquit, "tē percutiō quod (because) nihil fēcistī."

III. MAGISTER SCELESTUS (The Wicked Teacher)

In bellō quod Rōmānī contrā Vēientēs gerēbant, Fūrius Camillus urbem Falēriōs oppugnābat. Magister lūdī litterārii filiōs principum ex urbe ad castra Rōmānōrum dūxit.

Camillus id dōnum nōn accēpit, sed hominem scelestum pūnīre statuit; prōditōrem pueris trādīdit et discipuli magistrum in urbem virgīs quās Camillus eīs dederat ēgērunt.

Permōtī tantā nōbilitātē animī, incolae Falēriōrum Rōmānīs urbem trādīdērunt.

Dictation. — These stories may be used as material for dictation.

COLLATERAL READING

THE ROMAN CITIZEN

The descendants of the original three tribes (Latin, Sabine, Etruscan) formed "the Roman people," in a strict sense. They were *patricians* (men "with fathers"). They alone could vote, or hold office, or sue in courts.

But, like Greek cities, Italian cities contained many non-citizens. . . . These non-citizens were *plebeians* (or the *plebs*). Some of them were rich; but none of them had any part in the religion, or law, or politics of the city. They could not intermarry with citizens. Policy required the city to protect their lives and property, but they had no absolute security against an unscrupulous patrician. . . .

The secession of 497 B.C. gave the plebs the right to choose *tribunes*, with power to protect oppressed plebeians against cruel laws. . . . About 460 B.C. the plebeians began to demand written laws. The patricians opposed the demand furiously; but after a ten-year contest a board of ten men (*Decemvirs*) was elected to put the laws into writing. These "Laws of the Twelve Tables" *applied to plebeian and patrician alike*. . . .

In 377 the final campaign began. The whole body of plebeians united firmly on a group of measures, of which the two most important were: (1) that *at least one consul* each year should be a *plebeian*; (2) that no citizen should hold more than 300 acres (500 *iugera*) of the PUBLIC lands.

After ten years of bitter wrangling, the Senate gave way and the plebeian demands became law.

Then the distinction between the classes died out. Plebeian consuls nominated plebeians for praetors and censors; and since appointments to the Senate were made from those who had held office, that body itself gradually became plebeian.

LESSON XLVII

THIRD DECLENSION. FOURTH CONJUGATION

99. The Plural of Masculine and Feminine Nouns with *-i* stems is like the plural of masculine and feminine nouns with consonant stems, except that the genitive plural ends in *-ium*, not in *-um*.¹

SINGULAR

	<i>finis</i> , f., <i>end</i>	<i>mōns</i> , m., <i>mountain</i>	<i>vīs</i> , ² f., <i>force</i>	
Base :	<i>fin-</i>	<i>mont-</i>	<i>vī-</i>	
Stem :	<i>fini-</i>	<i>monti-</i>	<i>vī-</i>	<i>Endings</i>
Nom. :	<i>fī'nīs</i>	<i>mons</i>	<i>vīs</i>	<i>-s</i>
Gen. :	<i>fī'nīs</i>	<i>mon'tis</i>	<i>vīs</i>	<i>-is</i>
Dat. :	<i>fī'nī</i>	<i>mon'tī</i>	<i>vī</i>	<i>-ī</i>
Acc. :	<i>fī'nem</i>	<i>mon'tem</i>	<i>vim</i>	<i>-em (-im)</i>
Abl. :	<i>fī'ne</i>	<i>mon'te</i>	<i>vī</i>	<i>-e (-ī)</i>

PLURAL

Nom. :	<i>fī'nēs</i> , <i>territory</i>	<i>mon'tēs</i>	<i>vī'rēs</i> (<i>forces</i> , <i>strength</i>)	<i>-ēs</i>
Gen. :	<i>fī'nium</i>	<i>mon'tium</i>	<i>vī'rium</i>	<i>-ium</i>
Dat. :	<i>fī'nibus</i>	<i>mon'tibus</i>	<i>vī'ribus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>
Acc. :	<i>fī'nēs</i>	<i>mon'tēs</i>	<i>vī'rēs</i>	<i>-ēs (-īs)</i>
Abl. :	<i>fī'nibus</i>	<i>mon'tibus</i>	<i>vī'ribus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>

100. The Past of the fourth conjugation is formed exactly like that of verbs in *-iō* of the third conjugation. (See § 92.)

¹ A few nouns have kept the old accusative plural in *-īs*.

² Note that the noun *vīs*, *force*, is somewhat irregular.

PAST OF **audire** AND **audiri**

ACTIVE VOICE

(I used to hear, I was hearing
or I heard the enemy, etc.)**Hostēs audiē'bam****Hostēs audiē'bās****Hostēs audiē'bat****Hostēs audiēbā'mus****Hostēs audiēbā'tis****Hostēs audiē'bant**

PASSIVE VOICE

(I was or used to be heard by
the enemy, etc.)**Ab hostibus audiē'bar****Ab hostibus audiēbā'ris****Ab hostibus audiēbā'tur****Ab hostibus audiēbā'mur****Ab hostibus audiēbā'minī****Ab hostibus audiēban'tur**

Mōns.

This view of Vesuvius is taken across the Forum at Pompeii.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS

fi'nis, -is, f.
fi'nēs, -ium, f. pl.
mōns, mon'tis, m.
pars, par'tis, f.
vāl'lum, -ī, n.

ENGLISH MEANINGS

end
territory
mountain
part
rampart

RELATED
ENGLISH WORDS

final, finish
 confines
 mount
 partial
 wall

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
vīs, vīs, f.	<i>force, strength, violence</i>	vim
vī'rēs, -ium, f. pl.	<i>forces, strength</i>	
prope (with acc.)	<i>near</i>	propinquity
conve'niō, -ī're, con- vē'nī, conven'tus	<i>assemble</i>	convention
perve'niō, -ī're, per- vē'nī, perven'tus	<i>arrive, pene- trate, reach</i>	
impe'diō, -ī're, impedi'vī, impedi'tus	<i>hinder</i>	impede, impedi- ment
mū'niō, -ī're, mūnī'vī, mūnī'tus	<i>fortify</i>	ammunition
in (acc.) per vim per- venire	<i>force one's way into</i>	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Give the base and stem of each noun in the vocabularies of Lessons XLVI and XLVII; divide each noun into syllables, indicating which syllable is accented.

(b) Identify and translate:

pūnit, pūniēbāmus, pūniēbāminī, mūniunt, mūniēbātur, convenītis, conveniēbant, perveniō, perveniēbās, impedit, impediēbāmur, impediēbātis.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Erant multae urbēs in Ītaliā.
2. Montēs Ītaliae altī sunt.
3. Numerus urbium et montium in Ītaliā magnus est.
4. Hostēs in finēs Gallōrum per vim perveniēbant.
5. Prope castra hostium conveniēbāmus.
6. Vīs flūminis iter nostrum impediēbat.
7. Oppidum vāllō mūniēbātur.

8. *Castra vällō altō mūniēbātis.*
9. *Caesar in finibus Gallōrum bellum gerēbat.*
10. *Pars magna urbis dēlēta est.*
11. *Ā cīvibus bonīs vidēbāminī et audiēbāminī.*

(d) Indicate in (c) all the plural nouns of the third declension, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Give (1) the singular of **pars magna**; (2) both numbers of **mōns altus**; (3) the plural of **vīrēs integrae**.

(b) Give the present and past of :

1. **Castra mūnīre.**
2. **Vällō impedīrī.**

(c) Review. Replace the italicized singular nouns by the plural, and make all necessary changes :

1. *Cīvis urbis novae* sum.
2. *Altitūdō montis* magna est.
3. *Hostis in urbe* erat.
4. *Cum hoste* pugnō.
5. *Cīvī malō praemium* nōn dabimus.

(d) Review. Replace the dash by (1) the present; (2) the past of the italicized infinitive :

1. *Impedīre*: *Montēs altī iter hostium* —.
2. *Mūnīre*: *Caesar castra* —.
3. *Pervenīre*: *Tū in finēs hostium per vim* —.
4. *Mūnīrī*: *Oppida vällō altō* —.
5. *Impedīrī*: *Vōs bellō nōn* —.
6. *Pūnīrī*: *Malī ā Deō* —.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) I used to arrive, you were assembling, he did not hinder, they were hindered, I was punishing, we were punished, she was never heard, we used to fortify, it was fortified.

- (b) 1. They were forcing their way into Gaul.
 2. The camp was being fortified by a high rampart.
 3. We were assembling near a mountain.
 4. The lieutenant was leading his soldiers through the territory of the enemy (pl.).
 5. We often praise the strength and swiftness of the horse.
 6. Many towns were destroyed by Caesar's troops.
 7. We are not citizens of a town, we are citizens of the world.
 8. A large part of our territory was destroyed by the enemy (pl.).
 9. He inquires about the height of the mountains of the world.
 10. The number of good citizens is large; they will save (snatch away) the state from danger.
 11. The general was saved by the swiftness of his horse.
 12. The march of the enemy through Gaul was hindered by many rivers, forests, (and) mountains.

READING LESSON

I. CORVUS ET VULPĒS (The Crow and the Fox)

Corvus alicunde cāseum rapuerat et cum eō in arborem altam subvolāverat.

Vulpēs, cāseum in rōstrō corvī vidēs, avī verba blanda dixit. Fōrmam eius pennārumque¹ nitōrem laudāvit. "Pol," inquit, "tū rēx avium es, sī vōx tua tam pulchra quam fōrma est."

Tum corvus, laudibus vulpis inflātus, vōcem mōnstrāre voluit et rōstrum aperuit. Ita vērō cāseus ē rōstrō apertō dēcidit, quem vulpēs dēvorāvit.

Verba blanda audire numquam dēbēmus.

¹ pennārumque = et pennārum.

II. (The same story in the form of a monologue)

Vulpēs, praedam quaerēns, dicit. — Quid vidēo? Quae avis in arbore altā est? Nigra est. Certē corvus est. Quid in rōstrō habet?

Pol, cāseum! Corvus eum rapuit et cum eō in arborem altam subvolāvit. Cāseus magnus est. Famēlica sum. Eum cāseum habēre dēbeō. (Corvum salūtāns) Avē,¹ mī cāre amīce; quam pulcher es!

Pennās pulchrās habēs. Quam bene fulgent! Quam nigrae sunt!

Sī vōx tua tam pulchra quam fōrma est, certē rēx avium es. (Corvus, laudibus vulpis inflātus, vōcem mōnstrāre voluit et rōstrum aperuit. Ita cāseus ē rōstrō apertō dēcidit.)

Vulpēs, cāseum dēvorāns, dicit. — Tibi, amīce, grātiās agō; cāseus tuus bonus est. Stulta avis es; id cōnsilium (in) memoriā tenē: verba blanda audire numquam dēbēs. Valē!

III. SĪC VŌS NŌN VŌBĪS² (Thus [Do] Ye [Work but] Not for Yourselves)

Once public festivities, organized by order of Emperor Augustus, were spoiled by a storm, but the very next morning the weather was such that they could be resumed, and Vergil wrote the following distich on the gate of the imperial palace:

“Nocte pluit tōtā, redeunt spectācula māne;
Dīvīsum imperium cum Iove Caesar³ habet.”

The Emperor wanted to know the author of those lines. Vergil out of modesty did not reveal his identity, but an obscure rhymester, Bathyllus, claimed the authorship, and received many praises and a liberal reward. Very much dis-

¹ Avē, hail, a greeting, is not to be confused with a form of avis, bird.

² This Latin phrase meaning “Thus you work but it is not for yourselves” is used when somebody else is rewarded for the work you have done.

³ Caesar here means the Emperor.

pleased, Vergil wrote again the distich on the walls of the palace and added this line :

“Hōs ego versiculōs fēcī, tulit alter honōrēs”

followed by four identical half lines : “Sīc vōs nōn vōbīs.”

Augustus being very desirous of seeing them completed, Bathyllus tried in vain to do it, and Vergil completed them in the following way :

“Sīc vōs nōn vōbīs	nīdificātis, avēs.
Sīc vōs nōn vōbīs	vellera fertis, ovēs.
Sīc vōs nōn vōbīs	mellificātis, apēs.
Sīc vōs nōn vōbīs	fertis arātra, bovēs.”

COLLATERAL READING

AUGUSTUS, 31 B.C.—14 A.D.

Octavius Caesar was a grand-nephew and adopted son of Julius Caesar. At the death of the latter, he formed the second triumvirate with Anthony and Lepidus. After the battle of Philippi in Macedonia (42 B.C.) in which the old Pompeian forces, led by Brutus and Cassius, were defeated, Octavius and Anthony set aside Lepidus and divided the Roman world between themselves. Soon each was plotting for the other's share. In 31, the naval battle of Actium, off the coast of Greece, made Octavius sole master.

In 27 he laid down his office of triumvir (which had become a *sole* dictatorship), and declared *the Republic restored*. The act really showed that *the Empire was safely established*.

Octavius kept the office of Imperator, — master of the legions, and the Senate now added to it the new title *Augustus*, which had before been used only of gods. It is by this name that he is thenceforth known. . . .

Augustus ruled forty-five years after Actium, and gave that long rule to unremitting toil in strengthening the Empire

and in improving the condition of the people throughout the Roman world. . . .

Order was everywhere established. Industry revived and thrived. Marshes were drained. Roads were built. A postal system was organized. . . . The chief cities of the Empire were adorned with noble buildings—temples, theaters, porticoes, baths. Augustus tells us in a famous inscription that in one year he himself began the rebuilding of eighty-two temples; and of Rome he said, “I found it brick and have left it marble.”

The Emperor was also a generous and ardent patron of literature and art. The *Augustan Age* is the “golden age” of Latin literature.

At the death of Augustus, the Senate decreed him divine honors. Temples were erected in his honor, and he was worshipped as a god. . . . It was a way of recognizing the Emperor as “the father of all his people.”



AUGUSTUS.

LESSON XLVIII

THIRD DECLENSION. FOURTH CONJUGATION

101. The Singular of Neuter Nouns with *-i* stems is like that of neuter nouns with consonant stems, except that the ablative ends in *-ī* (like the dative), not in *-e*.

SINGULAR

mare, n., <i>sea</i>	cubīle, n., <i>bed</i>	animal, n., <i>animal</i>	
Base : mar-	cubīl-	animāl-	
Stem : mari-	cubīli-	animāli-	<i>Endings</i>
Nom. : ma're	cubī'le	a'nimal	(various)
Gen. : ma'ris	cubī'lis	animā'lis	<i>-is</i>
Dat. : ma'rī	cubī'lī	animā'lī	<i>-ī</i>
Acc. : ma're	cubī'le	a'nimal	(like nom.)
Abl. : ma'rī	cubī'lī	animā'lī	<i>-ī</i>

102. The Future of the Fourth Conjugation is formed exactly like that of verbs in *-iō* of the third. (See § 92.)

FUTURE OF **audire** AND **audirī**

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
(I shall or will hear the judge, etc.)	(I shall or will be heard by the judge, etc.)
Iūdicem au'diam	Ā iūdice au'diar
Iūdicem au'diēs	Ā iūdice audiē'ris
Iūdicem au'diet	Ā iūdice audiē'tur
Iūdicem audiē'mus	Ā iūdice audiē'mur
Iūdicem audiē'tis	Ā iūdice audiē'minī
Iūdicem au'dient	Ā iūdice audien'tur



MARE.

This view of Carthage is taken from the citadel across the two harbors to the Bay of Tunis. Compare it with the pictures on pages 82, 145, 191, and 241.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
a'nimal, -ā'lis, n.	<i>animal</i>	
au'ris, -ris, f.	<i>ear</i>	auricle, auricular
cubī'le, -ī'lis, n.	<i>bed</i>	cubicle
iū'dex, -icis, m.	<i>judge</i>	judicial
ma're, -'ris, n.	<i>sea</i>	marine, maritime
nūn'tius, -tī, m.	<i>messenger</i>	announce
tribū'nal, -ā'lis, n.	<i>tribunal</i>	
ti'midus, -a, -um	<i>timid, shy</i>	timidity
vās'tus, -a, -um	<i>vast, huge</i>	
cūstō'diō, -ī're, cūs- tōdī'vī, cūstōdī'tus	<i>guard, watch</i>	custodian, cus- tody
dor'miō, -ī're, dor- mī'vī, dormī'tus	<i>sleep</i>	dormant, dormi- tory
terrā marīque (= terrā et marī)	<i>on land and sea, everywhere, in all directions.</i>	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and translate :

mūniam, mūniunt, mūnient, mūnītur, mūniētur, dormiō, dormiēbāmus, dormiēs, cūstōdīmus, cūstōdiēmus, cūstōdiēbar, cūstōdiuntur, cūstōdientur, venītis, veniēbātis, veniētis.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Mare vāstum et altum est.
2. Altitudinem maris nōn scīmus.
3. Hostēs terrā marīque vincentur.
4. Nūntiī ad mare perveniēnt.
5. In cubilī vāstō dormiam.
6. Ad tribūnal bonī iūdicis conveniēnt.
7. Animal parvum cūstōdiēbātur.
8. Caput animālis timidī vidēbimus.
9. Ā iūdice bonō aūdiēmur.
10. Oppida hostium vāllīs altīs mūnientur.
11. Mare novum ā nautīs perītīs inveniētur.
12. Oculōs habent et nōn vidēbunt ; aurēs habent et nōn audient.

(c) Point out in (b) all the neuter nouns of the third declension, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline in the singular :

mare vāstum, animal timidum, cubile parvum.

(b) Give (1) the first persons singular and plural of the present indicative ; (2) the second persons singular and plural of the past ; (3) the complete future of :

1. Ā mīlite cūstōdirī.
2. In cubilī vāstō dormīre.

(c) Review. Supply the proper singular endings :

1. Altitudō mar— (possessive case) magna est.
2. Mar— (direct object) altum vidēbimus. 3. Cubil— (subject) bonum grātum est. 4. Corpus in mar— iactum erat. 5. Iūdex in tribūnāl— est.

(d) Review. Put the verb

(a) in the singular : **Ad mare novum perveniēmus.**

(b) in the plural : **Rīpīs altīs impediērīs.**

(c) in the future : **Saepe pūniēbāminī.**

(d) in the present : **Iūdex ad tribūnāl veniet.**

(e) in the past : **Urbem nostram cūstōdient.**

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) I shall hear, he will not be heard, we shall fortify, the towns will be fortified, they will guard, you will be guarded, you (singular) will sleep, you will sleep, we shall not be hindered.

(b) 1. This small animal is shy ; it will be terrified and will flee.

2. I shall give nothing to that animal.

3. He killed the animal and threw the body into the sea.

4. Sailors do not fear the dangers of the sea.

5. The enemy will be defeated by the Romans everywhere (on land and sea).

6. The hostages will be guarded by cavalrymen.

7. Who will sleep in that large bed ?

8. The camp of the enemy will be fortified.

9. The judge will hear you in his tribunal.

10. You have ears and you will not hear ; you have eyes and you will not see.

11. A messenger will come to the judges.

12. The judges will not listen to (**audīre**) him.

READING LESSON

I. LUPUS ET GRŪS (The Wolf and the Crane)

In faucibus lupī os haeserat. Lupus, magnō dolōre victus, gruem vocāvit; avis vēnit et longitūdine collī facile os extrāxit.

Tum grūs mercēdem postulāvit. Sed animal scelestum, subridēns et infrendēns dentibus, “Ingrāta es,” inquit; “ōre nostrō caput intāctum extrāxistī et mercēdem postulās!”

II. NAUFRAGIUM SIMŌNIDIS (Simonides' Shipwreck)

Homō doctus in sē semper dīvitiās habet. Poēta Simōnidēs in Cēā insulā nātus erat. Peragrāns Asiam, marī in patriam redire statuit. Nāvem ascendit sed tempestās magna eam in mediō marī frēgit. Vectōrēs opēs pretiōsās colligunt.

Quīdam poētā interrogat, “Simōnidēs, tū nihil ex opibus tuis colligis?” — “Mēcum,” inquit, “mea cūncta sunt.”

Pauci ex periculīs maris ēvādunt; multī, gravitāte oneris impediti, pereunt. Praedōnēs in litore adsunt; opēs quās quisque collēgit, rapiunt.

Forte urbs antiq̄ua prope erat; eam naufragi¹ petivērunt.

Incola urbis quī carmina Simōnidis saepe lēgerat, et admirātor magnus poētae erat, eum in casam suam recēpit; vestēs et pecūniam ei dedit.

Intereā cēteri tabulam² suam portābant et cibum rogābant. Simōnidēs eōs vīdit. “Dixī,” inquit, “mēcum mea cūncta esse³; quod vōs in nāve collēgistis, periit.”

¹ naufragi, the shipwrecked men.

² tabulam: Each one carried a sign with an inscription appealing to public charity. Compare with modern blind beggars.

³ The verb of an indirect quotation is put in the infinitive with its subject in the accusative.

Direct quotation: *All my things are with me*, Mēcum mea cūncta sunt.

Indirect quotation: *I said that all my things were with me*, Dixī mēcum mea cūncta esse.

COLLATERAL READING

POMPEIAN¹ ROOMS

The elegant Julia sat in her chamber, with her slaves around her; like the cubiculum² which adjoined it, the room was small, but much larger than the usual apartments appropriated to sleep, which were so diminutive, that few who have not seen the bed-chambers, even in the gayest mansions, can form any notion of the petty pigeon-holes in which the citizens of Pompeii evidently thought it desirable to pass the night. But, in fact, "bed" with the ancients was not that grave, serious, and important part of domestic mysteries which it is with us.

The couch itself was more like a very narrow and small sofa, light enough to be transported easily, and by the occupant himself,³ from place to place; and it was, no doubt, constantly shifted from chamber to chamber, according to the caprices of the inmate, or the changes of the season; for that side of the house which was crowded in one month, might, perhaps, be carefully avoided in the next. There was also among the Italians of that period a singular and fastidious apprehension of too much daylight; their darkened chambers, which first appear to us the result of a negligent architecture, were the effect of the most elaborate study. In their porticoes and gardens they courted the sun whenever it so pleased their luxurious tastes. In the interior of their houses they sought rather the coolness and the shade. — From *The Last Days of Pompeii* by Sir Edward Bulwer-Lytton.

¹ Pompeii was destroyed A.D. 79; first discovered A.D. 1750.

² Cubiculum, *bed-room*.

³ "Take up thy bed and walk," was no metaphorical expression.

LESSON XLIX

THIRD DECLENSION. FOURTH CONJUGATION

103. Plural of Neuter Nouns with *-i* Stems. — The nominative and accusative plural of neuter nouns with *-i* stems end in *-ia*, not in *-a*; the genitive plural in *-ium*, not in *-um*; the dative and ablative plural have the regular ending *-ibus*.

SINGULAR

	animal, n., <i>animal</i>	calcār, n., <i>spur</i>	īsigne, n., <i>badge</i>	
Base :	animāl-	calcār-	īsign-	
Stem :	animāli-	calcāri-	īsigni-	<i>Endings</i>
Nom. :	a'nimal	cal'car	īsig'ne	(various)
Gen. :	animā'lis	calcā'ris	īsig'nis	-is
Dat. :	animā'lī	calcā'rī	īsig'nī	-ī
Acc. :	a'nimal	cal'car	īsig'ne	(like nom.)
Abl. :	animā'lī	calcā'rī	īsig'nī	-ī

PLURAL

Nom. :	animā'lia	calcā'ria	īsig'nia	-ia
Gen. :	animā'lium	calcā'rium	īsig'nium	-ium
Dat. :	animā'libus	calcā'ribus	īsig'nibus	-ibus
Acc. :	animā'lia	calcā'ria	īsig'nia	-ia
Abl. :	animā'libus	calcā'ribus	īsig'nibus	-ibus

104. The Perfect and Past Perfect of the fourth conjugation are formed regularly in both voices.

PERFECT OF *audire* AND *audiri*

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
(I heard or have heard it, etc.)	(I was or have been heard by him, etc.)
Id audī'vī	Ab eō audī'tus, -a, -um sum
Id audīvis'tī	Ab eō audī'tus, -a, -um es
Id audī'vit	Ab eō audī'tus, -a, -um est
Id audī'vimus	Ab eō audī'tī, -ae, -a sumus
Id audīvis'tis	Ab eō audī'tī, -ae, -a estis
Id audivē'runt	Ab eō audī'tī, -ae, -a sunt

PAST PERFECT

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
(I had heard her, etc.)	(I had been heard by her, etc.)
Eam audī'veram	Ab eā audī'tus, -a, -um e'ram
Eam audī'verās, etc.	Ab eā audī'tus, -a, -um e'rās, etc.

Note. Most verbs of the fourth conjugation have their perfect and participial stems modeled after those of *audire*. (Perfect stem: *audīv-*; participial stem: *audīt-*.)

The only exception met so far is *venīre*, *to come*, *vēnī*, *ven-tus*, and its compounds.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
cal'car, -ā'ris, n.	<i>spur</i>	
īnsig'ne, -ig'nis, n.	<i>badge, standard</i>	insignia
le'ō, -ō'nis, m.	<i>lion</i>	leonine
pis'cis, -is, m.	<i>fish</i>	piscatory, pisciculture
ven'tus, -ī, m.	<i>wind</i>	ventilate
tur'bō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus	<i>disturb</i>	turbid
vul'nerō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus	<i>wound</i>	vulnerable

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and translate :

dormiverat, vērunt, mūnīvistī, impedīvī, scīverātis,
vulnerāvērunt, pūnītī sunt, cūstōditum est, impeditus erat,
vulnerātī estis, mūnīta
erant, turbātae erāmus.



LEO.

This is the famous lion of Chaeronea.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Leōnēs animālia sunt; rēgēs animālium sunt.

2. Frūmentum animālibus nōn datur.

3. In maribus varia genera piscium sunt.

4. Piscēs marium magnī et multī sunt.

5. Maria vī ventōrum turbāta erant.

6. Dominus servōs pigrōs pūnīvit.

7. In cubilibus vāstīs dormīverāmus.

8. Arma et insignia militum vīdimus et tubās audīvimus.

9. Tardī nōn fuimus; ā magistrō nōn pūnītī sumus.

10. Equī calcāribus equitum vulnerātī erant.

11. Quis dīxit, "Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī"?

(c) Indicate in (b) all the neuter nouns of the third declension and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline in both numbers :

insigne pulchrum, calcar novum, leō magnus.

(b) Give (1) the perfect ; (2) the past perfect of :

1. **Venire, vidēre, vincere.** 2. **Ab hoste cūstōdīrī.**

(c) Review. Replace the singular of the italicized nouns by the plural, and make the necessary changes :

1. *Mare vāstum et altum est.* 2. *Altitūdō maris magna est.* 3. *Est in casā cubīle parvum.* 4. *Equus calcārī vulnerātus est.* 5. *Calcar equum vulnerat.*

(d) Review. Put the verb

(1) in the plural : **Nihil scīvī.**(2) in the singular : **Ventī maria turbāvērunt.**(3) in the future : **Animālia audiuntur.**(4) in the present : **In finēs hostium convēnerāmus.**(5) in the perfect : **Numquam audior.**(6) in the past : **Castra mūniunt.**(7) in the past perfect : **Equitēs equōs calcāribus vulnerant.**

(e) Review. Replace the active voice by the passive :

1. **Hostēs oppidum mūnīvērunt.** (*Model : Oppidum ab hostibus mūnitum est.*) 2. **Ventī mare turbāverant.** 3. **Calcāria equōs vulnerāvērunt.** 4. **Puerī animālia vīdērunt.** 5. **Leōnēs audīvimus.**

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) We have punished, they have been punished, we had heard, she had been heard, you had hindered, I have been hindered, it has been known, they had assembled, she has

been wounded, you (singular) were disturbed, he had guarded, we had been guarded.

(b) 1. We came, we saw, we conquered.

2. The trumpets of the enemy (pl.) had been heard.

3. There are many fish in the seas and in the rivers.

4. We caught various kinds of fish.

5. The violence of the winds had disturbed the seas.

6. The children slept in small beds; they do not like large beds.

7. Cavalrymen have spurs; they often wound their horses with their spurs.

8. Our standards had been captured by the enemy.

9. There are various kinds of animals in the forests.

10. She did not sleep; she was disturbed by the violence of the wind.

11. The town had been fortified by the enemy but we took it.

READING LESSON

I. LEŌ AEGER ET VULPĒS (The Sick Lion and the Fox)

Senex leō morbum simulābat. Ad rēgem aegrum multa animālia vēnērunt quae prōtinus dēvorāvit. Sed vulpēs cauta ante spēluncam leōnis procul stetit et rēgem salūtāvit.

Leō, "Cūr," inquit, "nōn intrās?" Respondit vulpēs, "Quod vestīgia eōrum animālium quae intrāvērunt videō, sed nōn eōrum quae exiērunt."

II. DĪLUVIUM (The Deluge)

Deus, hominum vitīis offēnsus, genus hūmānum dīluviō perdere voluit. Tamen Nōam et puerōs eius servāvit quod virtūtem colēbant.

Nōa, ā Deō admonitus, arcam magnam in modum nāvis exstrūxit; eam bitūmine linīvit et in eam paria singula cūc-tōrum animālium indūxit.

Conversational Exercise.

One of the pupils may read the following questions, and his classmates answer them in complete sentences.

Questions based on I

1. Quid senex leō simulābat? 2. Quid multa animālia fēcērunt?
3. Quid leō prōtinus fēcīt? 4. Ubi vulpēs stetit?
5. Quem salūtāvit? 6. Quid leō quaesīvit?
7. Cūr vulpēs cauta nōn intrāvit?

Questions based on II

1. Cūr Deus genus hūmānum perdere voluit? 2. Quōmodo?
3. Quōs servāvit? 4. Cūr? 5. Quis Nōam admonuit?
6. Quid Nōa exstrūxit? 7. Quid deinde fēcīt?
8. Cūctane animālia in arcam indūxit?

COLLATERAL READING**SHIPPING — TRADE — "THE GOOD ROMAN PEACE"**

Roman ships were much like the sailing vessels used in the Mediterranean coasting trade to-day, and not very unlike those with which Columbus crossed the Atlantic. An immense traffic flowed ceaselessly between Europe and central Asia along three great arteries: (1) by the Black Sea and by caravan, along the line of the present Russian Transcaspian railway; (2) by Suez and the Red Sea; and (3) between these, by caravan across Arabia, where, amid the sands, arose white-towered Palmyra, Queen of the Desert, daughter of this trade. . . .

The products of one region of the Empire were known in every other part. . . . One merchant of Phrygia (in Asia Minor) asserts on his gravestone that he had sailed "around Greece to Italy seventy-two times."

There was also a vast commerce with regions *beyond* the boundaries of the Empire. . . . A Latin poet speaks of



MARCUS AURELIUS ABOUT TO SACRIFICE.

“many merchants” who reaped “immense riches” by venturesome voyages over the Indian Ocean “to the mouth of the Ganges.”

. . . This widespread, happy society rested in “the good Roman peace” for more than two hundred years — from the reign of Augustus Caesar through that of Marcus Aurelius, or from 31 B.C. to 180 A.D. . . .

Trade and travel, peace and prosperity, and the mild and just Roman law made the world one in feeling. Rome won allegiance from the hearts and minds of men. Briton, Dacian, Gaul, African, Greek, Cappadocian, knew one another only as Romans. An Egyptian of the fourth century, the poet Claudian, celebrated this world-wide patriotism in a noble ode :

“Rome, Rome alone, has found the spell to charm
The tribes that bowed beneath her conquering arm;
Has given one name to the whole human race,
And clasped and sheltered them in fond embrace, —
Mother, not mistress. . . .
This to her peaceful scepter all men owe, —
That through the nations, wheresoe’er we go
Strangers, we find a fatherland. Our home
We change at will; we count it sport to roam
Through distant Thule,¹ or with sails unfurled
Seek the most drear recesses of the world.
Though we may tread Rhone’s or Orontes’² shore,
Yet are we all one nation evermore.”

¹ Ultima Thule, perhaps Iceland, a Roman expression for the most distant known land.

² A river in Syria.

LESSON L

REVIEW LESSON

105. Third Declension Summarized. — Compare the inflection of third declension consonant stems with that of *-i* stems.

NOUNS WITH CONSONANT STEMS NOUNS WITH *-i* STEMS

Masculine and Feminine

SINGULAR

cōnsul, m.	<i>Endings</i>	urbs, f.	<i>Endings</i>
Nom. : cōnsul	(various)	urbs	-s
Gen. : cōnsulis	-is	urbis	-is
Dat. : cōnsulī	-ī	urbī	-ī
Acc. : cōnsulem	-em	urbem	-em (-im) ¹
Abl. : cōnsule	-e	urbe	-e (-ī)

PLURAL

Nom. : cōnsulēs	-ēs	urbēs	-ēs
Gen. : cōnsulum	-um	urbium	-ium
Dat. : cōnsulibus	-ibus	urbibus	-ibus
Acc. : cōnsulēs	-ēs	urbēs	-ēs (-īs) ²
Abl. : cōnsulibus	-ibus	urbibus	-ibus

¹ A few nouns with *-i* stems have kept the old accusative in *-im* and the ablative in *-i*.

² A few nouns have kept the old accusative plural in *-īs*.

Neuter

SINGULAR

	<i>Endings</i>		<i>Endings</i>
Nom. : flūmen	(various)	mare	(various)
Gen. : flūminis	-is	maris	-is
Dat. : flūminī	-ī	marī	-ī
Acc. : flūmen	like nom.	mare	like nom.
Abl. : flūmine	-e	marī	-ī

PLURAL

Nom. : flūmina	-a	maria	-ia
Gen. : flūminum	-um	marium	-ium
Dat. : flūminibus	-ibus	maribus	-ibus
Acc. : flūmina	-a	maria	-ia
Abl. : flūminibus	-ibus	maribus	-ibus

106. Verbs in -iō. — Compare the conjugation of verbs of the third conjugation in -iō and that of the verbs of the fourth.

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

PRESENT INFINITIVE

capere	audire	capī	audīrī
--------	--------	------	--------

PRESENT INDICATIVE

capīō	audiō	capior	audior
capis	audīs	caperis	audīris
capit	audit	capitur	audītur
capimus	audīmus	capimur	audīmur
capitis	audītis	capiminī	audīminī
capiunt	audiunt	capiuntur	audiuntur

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

PAST

capiēbam	audiēbam	capiēbar	audiēbar
capiēbās	audiēbās	capiēbāris	audiēbāris
capiēbat	audiēbat	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
capiēbātis	audiēbātis	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
capiēbant	audiēbant	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

FUTURE

capiam	audiam	capiar	audiar
capiēs	audiēs	capiēris	audiēris
capiet	audiet	capiētur	audiētur
capiēmus	audiēmus	capiēmur	audiēmur
capiētis	audiētis	capiēminī	audiēminī
capient	audient	capiēntur	audiēntur

PERFECT

cēpī, etc.	audīvī, etc.	captus, -a, -um	audītus, -a, -um
		sum, etc.	sum, etc.

PAST PERFECT

cēperam, etc.	audīveram, etc.	captus, -a, -um	audītus, -a, -um,
		eram, etc.	eram, etc.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Translate into English the following words :

1. Nouns

A. SECOND DECLENSION

nihil	nūntius	Rōmulus	vāllum	ventus
-------	---------	---------	--------	--------

B. THIRD DECLENSION

animal X	finis	leō	piscis
auris F	finēs	mare	tribūnal
calcar	hostis	mōns	urbs
cīvis	īnsigne	orbis M	vīs
cubīle	iūdex	pars	vīrēs

2. *Adjectives*

prīmus vāstus

3. *Verbs*

A. FIRST CONJUGATION

turbāre vulnerāre

B. FOURTH CONJUGATION

audire	dormire	mūnire	scīre
convenire	impedire	pervenire	venire
cūstōdīre	invenire	pūnīre	

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

prope

5. *Idioms*

in (acc.) per vim pervenire orbis terrārum terrā marique

(b) Divide all the words in (a) into syllables, indicating which one must be accented, and telling why.

(c) Point out in (a): (1) the masculine nouns; (2) the feminine nouns; (3) the neuter nouns.

(d) Give (1) the base and the stem of all the nouns in (a); (2) their genitive singular.

(e) Point out in (a) all the verbs which are regularly conjugated on the model of **audire**.

(f) Give (1) the principal parts ; (2) the three stems of all the verbs in (a).

(g) Answer the following questions and illustrate :

i. Nouns.

1. How do nouns with *-i* stems differ from those with consonant stems?

2. How do you know the nouns with *-i* stems?

3. What does "increasing in the genitive" mean?

4. How are the masculine and feminine nouns with *-i* stems declined in the singular?

5. How does the plural of masculine and feminine nouns with *-i* stems differ from that of masculine and feminine nouns with consonant stems?

6. What noun with *-i* stem is somewhat irregular? Decline it.

7. How do the singular and plural of neuter nouns with *-i* stems differ from the singular and plural of neuter nouns with consonant stems?

8. What is the ending of the genitive plural (a) of nouns with consonant stems ; (b) of nouns with *-i* stems?

9. What are the endings of the ablative singular and the nominative plural (a) of neuter nouns with consonant stems ; (b) of neuter nouns with *-i* stems?

ii. Verbs.

1. How do we distinguish verbs of the fourth conjugation from others?

2. What are the endings of the present infinitive of the fourth conjugation (active and passive)? Do they differ from those of the third conjugation?

3. How is the present indicative, active and passive, of the fourth conjugation formed? How does it differ from that of verbs of the third, ending in *-iō*?

4. How are the past, the future, the perfect tenses, active and passive, of the fourth conjugation formed?

II. Written.

(a) Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

1. *Nouns*

animal	end	forces	spur
badge	enemy (war)	mountain	strength
bed	fish	nothing	territory
circle	force	part	town
citizen	judge	rampart	tribunal
city	lion	Romulus	wind
ear	messenger	sea	

2. *Adjectives*

first	huge	vast
-------	------	------

3. *Verbs*

to arrive at	to fortify	to hinder	to reach
to assemble	to find	to know	to sleep
to come	to guard	to listen to	to wound
to disturb	to hear	to punish	to watch

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

near

5. *Idioms*

to force one's way into on land and sea the world

(b) Derivation. (1) From what Latin words are the following English words derived?

hostile, vulnerable, dormitory, wall, audible, ammunition, urban, maritime, turbid, invention.

(2) Make a list of the English derivatives of **audire**, according to Type I (see page 178) ; of **scire**, according to Type II ; of **venire**, according to Type III.

LESSON LI

READING LESSON

URBIS RŌMAE ORĪGŌ (Origin of the City of Rome)

(Ante Iēsum Chrīstum 753; Annō Urbis Conditae 1)¹

Rōma urbs antīqua et nōta in historiā est. Orīgō eius urbis incerta et obscūra est.

Duo frātrēs, Rōmulus et Remus, urbem parvam in Palātīnō monte, in rīpīs Tiberis flūminis condidērunt, et Rōmulus eam ā suō nōmine vocāvit.

Prīmō urbs Rōma ā septem rēgibus gesta est. Prīmus rēx urbis Rōmulus fuit (A. C. 753; Annō U. C. 1); secundus Numa Pompilius (A. C. 716; Annō U. C. 38); tertius Tullus Hostilius (A. C. 672; Annō U. C. 82); quārtus Ancus Mārtius (A. C. 640; Annō U. C. 114); quīntus Lūcius Tarquinius Prīscus (A. C. 616; Annō U. C. 138); sextus Servius Tullius (A. C. 578; Annō U. C. 176); Rōmānōrum rēx septimus et ultimus Tarquinius Superbus fuit (A. C. 553; Annō U. C. 201).

¹ Later Romans counted time from the year of the legendary foundation of Rome (753) by Romulus, as we do from the birth of Christ. — Note the construction *annō urbis conditae*. Instead of saying “*the year of the foundation of the city*,” the Romans preferred to use the past participle “*the year of the founded city*.”



RUPES TARPEIA.

PRŌDITIŌ TARPEIAE (Tarpeia's Treason)

Rēgnante Rōmulō,¹ Sabīnī, gēns vicīna, urbem novam oppugnāvērunt, sed Rōma arce² bene dēfendēbātur, et hostēs eam expugnāre nōn poterant.

¹ Rēgnante Rōmulō, *Romulus reigning, during the reign of Romulus.* In Latin a noun with attached participle in an independent phrase is put in the ablative, and the construction is called "ablative absolute." See page 316, line 2: *tempore cōstitutō*, the time (having been) determined, that is, at the appointed hour.

² arce: it was built on the northwest summit of the Capitoline hill.

Tarpeia, filia praefecti arcis, cui dux Sabīnōrum anulōs et armillās prōmiserat, mediā nocte, tempore cōstitutō, portās aperuit, et hostēs in arcem intrāvērunt.

Tum Tarpeia mercēdem prōditiōnis postulāvit sed Sabīnī eam interfēcērunt et corpus virginis ē rūpe quae ex eō tempore Rūpēs Tarpeia ¹ vocātur, iēcērunt. Sic impia prōditiō prōmptā poenā vindicāta est.

Prōditōrēs patriae pūnīrī dēbent.

COLLATERAL READING

THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME

According to the legend, Rome was ruled by seven kings.

The first was Romulus (753–716), the founder of “the squared Rome” (*Rōma quadrāta*) on the Palatine Mount. He gathered about him outlaws from all quarters, and these men seized the daughters of a Sabine tribe for wives. This led to war and finally to the union of the Romans and the Sabines, after which the kings of Rome were selected alternately from both tribes.

The second king was Numa Pompilius (716–672), who was a Sabine. He established religious rites and gave laws and arts of peace which he claimed had been taught him by the nymph Egeria in a sacred grove by night. He founded the shrine of Janus ² which remained open in war time and was closed in peace time. He added two months, January and February, to the year which before began in the month of March.

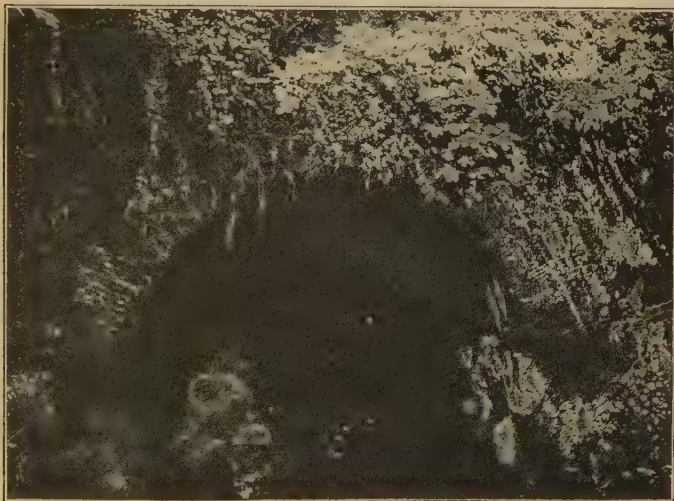
The third king, Tullus Hostilius (672–640), was a warlike conqueror. He destroyed Alba Longa and brought its inhabitants to Rome.

¹ The Tarpeian Rock. Malefactors used to be thrown over it.

² In all Roman history up to the time of Augustus the gates of the shrine of Janus were closed only twice — and one of the times was in the legendary reign of King Numa.

The fourth king was a Sabine, Ancus Martius (640-616), who extended the territory of Rome to the sea and founded at the mouth of the Tiber the port of *Ostia*, the start of Roman maritime trade.

The fifth was Tarquin the First (616-578), an Etruscan adventurer, who built a large drain (**Cloāca Maxima**), established various distinctions for high offices, such as the



CLOĀCA MAXIMA.

curule chair¹ for the senators, the lictors, who carried the fasces² and preceded the king, the augurs or soothsayers, who predicted the future by signs drawn from the flight of birds, or from the entrails of animals.

The sixth king was also an Etruscan, Servius Tullius (578-553). He was the son of a slave and the son-in-law

¹ The curule chair: the ivory "throne" of the old kings.

² The fasces were "a bundle of rods with an ax, carried before the highest magistrates, as an emblem of authority."

of Tarquin. He enlarged Rome so that the seven hills, the Palatine, the Capitoline, the Quirinal, the Viminal, the Esquiline, the Aventine, and the Caelian were parts of the city, and he surrounded it by a massive wall whose remains are still shown; he also reorganized the government, dividing all landowners, plebeian as well as patrician, into six classes, armed according to their wealth; each of these classes was divided into a fixed number of companies or centuries.

The seventh and last king was Tarquin the Proud (553-509), whose oppression led to his expulsion and to the establishment of a republic.

LESSON LII

THIRD DECLENSION. IMPERATIVE

107. Adjectives of the Third Declension are divided into three groups :

(a) Adjectives of three endings (**-er**, m. ; **-is**, f. ; **-e**, n.) of which the nominative singular has a special ending for each gender ;

(b) Adjectives of two endings (**-is**, m. and f. ; **-e**, n.) of which the nominative singular has one and the same ending for the masculine and feminine, and a different ending for the neuter ;

(c) Adjectives of one ending (**-ns**, **-ar**, **-x**) of which the nominative singular is alike in the three genders.

108. Adjectives of Three Endings (**-er**, **-is**, **-e**). — The masculine and feminine of adjectives with three endings are declined like masculine and feminine nouns with **-i** stems (see § 105), but with the ablative singular in **-ī**. The neuter is declined like **mare** (see § 105).

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS

SINGULAR			Endings		
<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>			
ācer, sharp	ācris	ācre	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Base : ācr-	ācr-	ācr-			
Stem : ācri-	ācri-	ācri-			
Nom. : ā'cer	ā'cris	ā'cre	-er	-is	-e
Gen. : ā'cris	ā'cris	ā'cris		-is	
Dat. : ā'crī	ā'crī	ā'crī		-ī	
Acc. : ā'crem	ā'crem	ā'cre	-em	-em	-e
Abl. : ā'crī	ā'crī	ā'crī		-ī	

PLURAL					
Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Endings		
			M.	F.	N.
Nom. : ā'crēs	ā'crēs	ā'cria	-ēs	-ēs	-ia
Gen. : ā'crium	ā'crium	ā'crium		-ium	
Dat. : ā'cribus	ā'cribus	ā'cribus		-ibus	
Acc. : ā'crēs (-īs)	ā'crēs (-īs)	ā'cria	-ēs (-īs)	-ēs (-īs)	-ia
Abl. : ā'cribus	ā'cribus	ā'cribus		-ibus	

109. Imperative. — The second person singular of the present imperative active is like the present stem, and the second person plural, like the present stem plus *-te* (§ 45), except in the third conjugation where it ends in *-ite*. The second person singular of the present imperative passive is like the present infinitive active, and the second person plural, like the same person of the present indicative passive.

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION

lau'dā, *praise (thou)*

laudā're, *be (thou) praised*

laudā'te, *praise (you)*

laudā'minī, *be (you) praised*

SECOND CONJUGATION

mo'nē, *warn (thou)*

monē're, *be (thou) warned*

monē'te, *warn (you)*

monē'minī, *be (you) warned*

THIRD CONJUGATION (Verbs in -ō)

mit'te,¹ *send (thou)*

mit'tere, *be (thou) sent*

mit'tite, *send (you)*

mitti'minī, *be (you) sent*

THIRD CONJUGATION (Verbs in -iō)

ca'pe, *take (thou)*

ca'pere, *be (thou) taken*

ca'pite, *take (you)*

capi'minī, *be (you) taken*

¹ The second person singular of the imperative active of *dicere*, *dūcere*, and *facere* is shortened to *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*.

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

FOURTH CONJUGATION

au'dī, hear (*thou*)
 audī'te, hear (*you*)

audī're, be (*thou*) heard
 audī'minī, be (*you*) heard

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
an'nus, -ī, m.	<i>year</i>	annual, annuity
le'pus, -oris, m.	<i>hare</i>	
ā'cer, ā'cris, ā'cre	<i>sharp, eager, bitter</i>	acid, acrimony
ce'leber, -bris, -bre	<i>celebrated, famous</i>	
ce'ler, -eris, -ere	<i>swift, quick</i>	celerity
cognōs'cō, -ere, co-	<i>become acquainted</i>	recognize, cog-
gnō'vī, co'gnitus	<i>with, learn</i>	nizance
cōnser'vō, -ā're, -ā'vī,	<i>keep intact</i>	conserve
-ā'tus		

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Give the present stem of :

vocāre, movēre, mōnstrāre, dēligere, iacere, tenēre,
 pūnīre, fugere, parāre, impedīre, terrēre, mūnīre, cōnservāre.

(b) Identify and translate :

nūntiā, vidēte, iace, es, cūstōdīte, habē, venīte, dūc,
 dūcere, nārrāte, mūnī, cognōscite, timēminī, fac, facite, in-
 venī.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Fuga annōrum celeris est.
2. Laudā, bone domine, celerem servum.
3. Celer es, cōnsul; monē Caesarem, fac bellum, dūc
 milītēs ācrēs, victōriam glōriamque ¹ pete.

¹ glōriamque = et glōriam.

4. Audite, Gallī, verba mea, amōre patriae dūcimīnī, lēgātōs mittite, obsidēs date, pācem petite, patriam servāte.

5. Dīc semper vērūm, mī amīce, et memoriā virōrum celebriū cōservā.

6. Lepus animal celere et timidum est.

7. Militēs ācrēs ā principi celebri dūcuntur.

8. Proelia ācria ā militibus ācribus nōn timentur.

9. Praemium celerī nūntiō datum est.

10. Rōma, celebris urbs, nōn mūnīta est.

11. Leporēs celerēs in silvīs et campīs inveniuntur.

12. Caesar ab nūntiīs celeribus (*or per nūntiōs celerēs*) victōriā cognōvit.

(*d*) Indicate in (*c*) the adjectives of three endings of the third declension, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline in the singular and plural :

mīles ācer, urbs celebris, animal celere.

(*b*) Put in the plural :

1. Flūmen nōn celere est. 2. Bellum ācre ā cōsule parābitur. 3. Praemium nūntiō celerī datur. 4. Lepus animal celere et timidum est.

(*c*) Review. Supply the proper endings :

1. Cōsul celeb—. 2. Principēs ācr—. 3. Nūntiōrum celer—. 4. Bellis ācr—. 5. Animālia celer—. 6. Flūmen celeb—.

(*d*) Give the present imperative singular and plural of the following phrases, and translate both forms :

1. Bellum parāre. 2. Arma capere. 3. Malōs timēre. 4. Dōna accipere. 5. Cōpiās ācrēs dūcere. 6. Amōre patriae dūcī. 7. Virum celebrem cognōscere. 8. Perīculō impedīrī.

(e) Review. Put the verb

1. in the singular : **Bellum ācre geritis.**
2. in the plural : **Animal parvum invenio.**
3. in the perfect : **Victōria ab nūntiis celeribus nūntiābitur.**
4. in the past : **Cōnsulem nōn cognōscis.**
5. in the present : **Captivōs cūstōdīvērunt.**
6. in the past perfect : **Memoria iniūriarū cōservātur.**
7. in the future : **Verba magistrī audīmus.**

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) Take (sing.), help (sing.), ask (sing.), lead (sing. and plur.), find (plur.), tell (sing. and plur.), be praised (sing.), be saved (plur.), disturb (sing. and plur.).

(b) 1. Swift messengers are sent to Caesar.

2. Hares are timid but swift.

3. Fish also are swift and timid animals.

4. Eager soldiers like sharp battles.

5. You will become acquainted with famous leaders.

6. We had pitched our camp in a famous plain.

7. I shall announce the victory to the famous chief.

8. Boys, listen to your teacher's words and work with diligence.

9. Oh teacher, praise the good pupils, help the slow (ones),¹ warn the lazy (ones),¹ punish the bad (ones),¹ but be fair.

10. Soldiers, wage a bitter war, never fear danger, be good citizens, fight with the enemy, (and) save the state.

11. The glorious deeds of famous generals will be kept in the memory of men.

READING LESSON

HORĀTIŪ ET CŪRIĀTIŪ (The Horatii and the Curiatii)

Rēgnante Tullō Hostiliō² (A. C. 672; Annō U. C. 82), Rōmānī Albānīs bellum indixērunt. Tullus Hostilius et

¹ Omit.

² See footnote 1, page 315.

Fufētius, rēgēs Rōmānōrum et Albānōrum, necem multōrum fortium virōrum vitāre voluērunt. Utraque urbs trēs dēfēnsōrēs dēlēgit: Rōma trēs frātrēs Horātiōs, Alba trēs frātrēs Cūriātiōs.

Tempore cōstitutō, sex fortēs iuvenēs arma capiunt et in medium campum prōcēdunt. Omnēs incolae utriusque urbis adsunt. Mox signum proelī datur et cōram populis Rōmānō et Albānō pugnant.

Proelium ācre fuit. Statim duo Rōmānī expīrantēs cecidērunt; trēs Albānī vulnerātī sunt. Sōlus ūnus Horātiōrum integer erat.

Horror magnus Rōmānōs perstrīxit. Albānī gaudiō conclāmāvērunt. Trēs Cūriātiī ūnum Horātium circumstābant. Is, quod integer erat, celer fuit, itāque fugam simulāvit, singulōs trēs Cūriātiōs, vulneribus fessōs, interfēcit et victor fuit.

Nōmina eōrum quī patriae vitā dant, (in) memoriā tenēre dēbēmus.

CAMILLA

Rōmānī alacrēs Horātium accipiunt et domum ¹ dēdūcunt.

Prīmus ibat Horātius, spolia frātrum Cūriātiōrum super umerōs gerēns.

Camilla, Horāti soror, quae dēspōnsa ūnī Cūriātiōrum erat, super umerōs celebris frātris palūdāmentum spōnsī quod ipsa cōnfēcērat, cognōvit, et flēre et crīnēs solvere coepit.

Complōrātiō sorōris in tantō gaudiō pūblicō animum ācris iuvenis mōvit. Itaque gladiō puellam trānsfīxit, simul eam increpāns, “ Abī hinc cum immātūrō amōre spōnsī, oblīta patriae, oblīta frātrum. Sic pereat ² quaecumque Rōmāna hostem lūgēbit.”

Patria cārīor quam familia esse dēbet.

¹ domum: the preposition *ad* is omitted before the noun *domum*, *home*. Compare with English.

² pereat: third person singular of the present subjunctive. Translate: *Thus perish . . .*



THE OATH OF THE HORATII.

From a painting by the great French painter David.



THE SO-CALLED TOMB OF THE HORATII AND CURIATII.

COLLATERAL READING

RIVALRY OF ROME AND ALBA LONGA

The Latins called their district *Latium*. . . . The straggling village Alba Longa (The Long White Town) was the recognized leader of the Latin tribes in war against the robber bands of Sabines from the mountains and against the powerful Etruscans across the Tiber. . . .



THE ALBAN LAKE.

Alba Longa probably occupied the ridge seen across the lake.

About twelve miles up the Tiber from its mouth, the river could be crossed by a ford at the foot of an island. . . . At some early date the Etruscans improved the river-crossing by building a bridge there. This was welcome to the Latins for trade, but they feared lest the Etruscans use it for armed invasion, and so they guarded their end of it by building a square fort about the top of the Palatine, the steepest hill

close by. Here a permanent Latin town at once grew up. This "square town" (see page 316) dates back at least to 1200 B.C.; and in places solidly built walls may still be traced.

Early settlements were made also on at least two others of the seven hills. Roman tradition says that one of these towns was founded by an invading tribe of Sabines, and the other by a conquering Etruscan tribe. No doubt, there was a long period of war between the three hill-forts, but, finally, the three settlements were united into one state, with the three tribes on an equal footing, one with the other. . . .

About 750 B.C., the old kings gave way to "tyrants" like those who seized power in Greek cities at about the same time. . . . These new kings made Rome mistress of a third of all Latium. . . . Before the year 500, several conquered Latin towns had been razed *and their inhabitants brought to Rome*. Even Alba Longa had been destroyed, and Rome had succeeded to the *headship of the Latin confederacy*.

LESSON LIII

THIRD DECLENSION

110. Adjectives of Two Endings and One Ending. — Adjectives of the third declension of two endings are declined in the masculine and feminine like **urbs**, except that the ablative singular ends in **-ī** (not **-e**) (see § 105). The neuter is declined like **mare** (see § 105).

Adjectives of one ending only are declined in the masculine and feminine like **urbs** (see § 105), except that in the ablative singular they have the ending **-ī** (not **-e**) and in the genitive plural, **-ium** (not **-um**). The neuter is declined like **mare** (see § 105).

ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

fortis, -e, brave

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER
Base : fort-			
Stem : forti-			
Nom. : for'tis	for'te	for'tēs	for'tia
Gen. : for'tis	for'tis	for'tium	for'tium
Dat. : for'tī	for'tī	for'tibus	for'tibus
Acc. : for'tem	for'te	for'tēs	for'tia
Abl. : for'tī	for'tī	for'tibus	for'tibus

Note that in each case, except the nominative and accusative, one form serves in each number for all three genders.

ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING¹*fēlix, happy*

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER
Base : <i>fēlic</i> —			
Stem : <i>fēlici</i> —			
Nom. : <i>fē'lix</i>	<i>fē'lix</i>	<i>fēli'cēs</i>	<i>fēli'cia</i>
Gen. : <i>fēli'cis</i>	<i>fēli'cis</i>	<i>fēli'cium</i>	<i>fēli'cium</i>
Dat. : <i>fēli'cī</i>	<i>fēli'cī</i>	<i>fēli'cibus</i>	<i>fēli'cibus</i>
Acc. : <i>fēli'cem</i>	<i>fē'lix</i>	<i>fēli'cēs</i>	<i>fēli'cia</i>
Abl. : <i>fēli'cī</i>	<i>fēli'cī</i>	<i>fēli'cibus</i>	<i>fēli'cibus</i>

Note that the forms for all genders are alike except in the accusative singular and nominative and accusative plural.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
<i>ars, ar'tis, f.</i>	<i>art</i>	artist, artistry
<i>Grae'cia, -ae</i>	<i>Greece</i>	
<i>au'dāx</i> (gen. <i>-ā'cis</i>)	<i>audacious, bold</i>	audacity
<i>bre'vis, -e</i>	<i>short</i>	brevity, brief
<i>diffi'cilis, -e</i>	<i>difficult</i>	
<i>fē'lix</i> (gen. <i>-ī'cis</i>)	<i>happy</i>	felicitate, felicity
<i>for'tis, -e</i>	<i>brave</i>	force, fortitude
<i>lēn'is, -e</i>	<i>soft, gentle</i>	lenience
<i>om'nis, -e</i>	<i>all, whole</i>	omnibus
<i>pār</i> (gen. <i>pa'ris</i>)	<i>equal</i>	parity, par
<i>po'tēns</i> (gen. <i>-en'tis</i>)	<i>powerful</i>	omnipotent

¹ Present participles as such (*-āns, -antis*, first conjugation; *-ēns, -entis*, 2d, 3d, and 4th conjugations) and a few adjectives of one ending have *-e* in the ablative singular.

Present participles, used as adjectives, have *-ī* in ablative singular.

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
prū'dēns (gen. -en'tis)	<i>prudent, cautious</i>	
re'cēns (gen. -en'tis)	<i>recent</i>	
in'ter (with acc.)	<i>between, among</i>	interchange
incen'dō, -ere, in- cen'dī, incēn'sus	<i>set on fire</i>	incense, incendiary

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) (1) Give the base and stem of every noun and adjective, and the three stems of every verb in the vocabularies of Lessons LII and LIII; (2) divide them into syllables, pointing out which one must be accented.

(b) Identify and translate :

incendite, incendent, incēnsus erat, incendēbantur, cognōveram, cognitī sunt, permovēbantur.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

- Ars longa, brevis vīta est.
- Graecia māter (*mother*) omnium artium fuit.
- Mare vāstum lēnī ventō nōn turbātur.
- Hostēs ā prīncipe ācrī et audācī victī erant.
- Quandō hominēs parēs erunt?
- Brevī sed ācrī bellō commovēbiminī.
- Militēs fortēs ā prīncipibus prūdentibus dūcēbantur.
- Cīvitās ab omnibus cīvibus fortibus dēfendētur.
- Est iter difficile inter montem altum et flūmen celere.
- Homō potēns et fēlix multōs amīcōs habet.
- Audācēs hostēs omnēs agrōs nostrōs vāstant et omnia oppida nostra incendunt.
- Memoria recentium iniūriārum ā potentī populō Rōmānō cōservāta erat.

(d) Point out in (c) all the adjectives of the third declension, indicating the group to which they belong (the group with three endings, with two endings, or with one ending), and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline (1) in the singular : **omnis Graecia** ;

(2) in the plural : **omnēs cīvēs, omnia oppida** ;

(3) in both numbers : **vir fortis, ventus lēnis, puella audāx, bellum recēns, iter difficile.**

(b) Put every plural form in the singular :

1. Audācēs fortūna iuvat. 2. Populōs potentēs timēbimus. 3. Artibus difficilibus sē dabat. 4. Bellis brevibus nōn commōtī estis. 5. Virtūtem virōrum fortium et prīncipum audācium laudā. 6. Proelia ācria nōn timent.

(c) Review. Add the proper endings :

1. Omn— hominibus. 2. Agricolam fēlī—. 3. Arma par—. 4. Ars difficil—. 5. Iniūriās recen—. 6. Amīcīs poten—. 7. Omn— familia. 8. Bella brev—.

(d) Give the second persons singular and plural of all the tenses you know of :

1. Urbem incendere. 2. Prīncipēs prūdentēs cognōscere. 3. Bellō recentī commovērī.

(e) Review. Put the verb

1. in the present : **Multōs sociōs potentēs habuērunt.**
2. in the plural : **Quid dīcis? Quid facit? Quid sciō?**
3. in the singular : **Breve sed ācre bellum gessistis.**
4. in the past : **Ad flūmen celere conveniunt.**
5. in the past perfect : **Ab hostibus omnēs casae incenduntur.**
6. in the perfect : **Verba amīcī prūdentis audīmus.**
7. in the future : **Gallī fortēs ā prīncipe audācī victī sunt.**

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) I shall not set on fire, the house was set on fire, she leads, you were led, he was not hindering, we guarded, she was not defended.

(b) 1. Soft winds do not disturb the vast sea.

2. The Romans were powerful and brave.

3. At that time all men were not equal.

4. All the houses of the large town had been set on fire by the enemy.

5. A recent and bitter war disturbed the whole state.

6. Your audacious soldiers will wage a short war.

7. You are giving yourself up to a difficult art.

8. All the good citizens will defend and save the state.

9. If you are prudent, your dear friends will be happy.

10. She will not be happy if you do not listen to (*audire*) her.

11. Our march was difficult because (*quod*) we were hindered by high mountains and swift rivers.

READING LESSON

I. DĒ AMĪCITIĀ (A Distich on Friendship)

Dōnec eris fēlix, multōs numerābis amīcōs ;
Tempora sī fuerint ¹ nūbila, sōlus eris.

II. ĒN EA ŌRNĀMENTA MEA ! (Behold, here are my jewels !)

Amīca Cornēliae, mātris Gracchōrum celebrium, eī ōrnāmenta pretiōsa sua ostendēbat. Cornēlia, quae nūlla tālia habēbat, liberōs suōs vocāvit et eōs amīcae exhibēns, dixit,
“ Ēn ea ōrnāmenta mea ! ”

¹ fuerint, are.

III. AGRICOLA ET ANGUIS (The Farmer and the Snake)

Agricola anguem frīgore paene exstinctum repperit. Misericordiā mōtus, eum pectore fōvit. Mox anguis recreātus virēs recēpit et agricolae prō beneficiō vulnus lētāle inflixit.

Malī tālem mercēdem prō beneficiis reddere solent.

IV. ASINUS LEŌNIS PELLE INDŪTUS (The Donkey Wearing a Lion's Skin)

Asinus leōnis pelle indūtus per campōs currēbat et omnia alia animālia terrēbat. Hominēs etiam et mulierēs et puerī fugiēbant. Sed subitō auris ingēns ē pelle leōnis ēminet. Tum omnēs agricolae rident et eum verberibus castigant et ad stabulum agunt.

EXERCISES

(a) Point out all the adjectives of the third declension, indicating to what group they belong, and explain each case.

(b) Review. The above stories may be used as material for dictation.

COLLATERAL READING

THE GRACCHI (133-121 B.C.)

Notable efforts at reform had been made, but the older statesmen were too selfish, too narrow, or too timid; and the great attempt at reform fell to two youths, the Gracchi brothers, throbbing with noble enthusiasm and with the fire of genius.

Their father had been a magnificent aristocrat. Their mother, *Cornelia*, is as famous for her fine culture and noble nature as for being the "Mother of the Gracchi." Tiberius himself was early distinguished in war and marked by his

uprightness and energy. *This was the first man to strike at the root of the industrial, moral, and political decay of Italy, by trying to rebuild the yeoman class.*

Tiberius obtained the tribuneship for the year 133, and at once brought forward an agrarian law. It was the obsolete land clause of the Licinian law in a gentler but more effective form. It was passed in spite of the opposition of the Senate and the wealthy men.

Tiberius next proposed to extend Roman citizenship to all Italy. . . . A riot broke out, and the more violent of the Senators and their friends murdered Gracchus and some three hundred of his adherents. . . . But the work of Tiberius lived on. . . . The land commission (composed of the friends of Tiberius) did its work zealously, and in 125 B.C. *the citizen list of Rome had increased by eighty thousand farmers.* . . . After a few years the Senate abolished the commission. . . . Just nine years after his brother's death, *Caius Gracchus* took up the work. . . . Now he was Rome's greatest orator, a dauntless, resolute, clear-sighted man, long brooding on personal revenge and on patriotic reform. . . .

First the land commission was reëstablished, and its work was extended *to the founding of Roman colonies in distant parts of Italy.* Still more important, *Caius introduced the plan of Roman colonization outside Italy. The colonists were to keep full Roman citizenship.*

Then by various laws Caius took away power from the senate, and himself ruled in its place. He had tried to provide against his brother's fate by a law expressly legalizing reëlection to the tribuneship, and he served two terms, virtually as dictator. . . .

When Gracchus stood for a third election he was defeated. Now that he was no longer protected by the sanctity of the tribuneship, the nobles were bent upon his ruin. The chance was soon found. The Senate tried to repeal the law for the colony at Carthage. . . . A bloody battle followed in

the streets. Gracchus, taking no part in the conflict himself, was slain. . . .

The victorious Senate struck hard. It resumed its sovereign rule. The proposed colonies were abandoned, *the peasants were permitted to sell their land, and the commission was abolished.* The old economic decay began again, and soon the work of the Gracchi was but a memory.

LESSON LIV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

111. Formation of Comparatives. — The nominative of comparatives is formed by adding to the base of the positive the suffix **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **-ius** for the neuter.

POSITIVE	BASE	COMPARATIVE
altus, -a, -um	alt-	altior (m. and f.), altius (n.), <i>higher, rather high</i>
fortis, -e	fort-	fortior (m. and f.), fortius (n.), <i>braver, rather brave</i>

112. Declension of Comparatives. — Comparatives are declined on the model of nouns with consonant stems of the third declension (see § 94), that is, the ablative singular ends in **-e**, the genitive plural in **-um**, the nominative and accusative neuter plural in **-a**.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Base and stem : altior-			
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER
Nom. : al'tior	al'tius	altiō'rēs	altiō'ra
Gen. :	altiō'ris	altiō'rum	
Dat. :	altiō'rī	altiō'ribus	
Acc. : altiō'rem	al'tius	altiō'rēs	altiō'ra
Abl. :	altiō're	altiō'ribus	

Exception: Adjectives having a vowel before the ending **-us** form the comparative by the use of **magis**, *more*.

necessārius, *necessary* **magis necessārius**, *more necessary*



CAVE CANEM — LOOK OUT FOR THE DOG!

A mosaic pavement at the entrance to a house in Pompeii.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
ca'nis, -is, m.	<i>dog</i>	canine
ci'bus, -ī, m.	<i>food</i>	
mēns, men'tis, f.	<i>mind, thought</i>	mental
pā'nis, -is, m.	<i>bread</i>	pannier, pantry
cē'terī, -ae, -a, pl.	<i>the other</i>	et cetera, etc.
doc'tus, -a, -um	<i>learned</i>	doctor
necessā'rius, -a, -um	<i>necessary</i>	necessity
vē'lōx (gen. -ōcis)	<i>swift, fast</i>	velocity
ma'gis	<i>more</i>	magistrate
quam	<i>than</i>	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Give the base of the following adjectives :

longus, fortis, cārus, vėlōx, potēns, brevis, laetus, piger, celer, audāx.

(b) Identify and translate the following comparatives :

altior (*Model: altior, nominative singular masculine and feminine of the comparative formed from the adjective altus, -a, -um*); longiōris, lēnius, celeriōra, tardiōrem, fortiōrēs, doctiōribus, fidiōrī, vėlōciōre.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Pedes tardior quam eques est.
2. Amīcōs fidiōrēs dēligō.
3. Bellum brevius ā prīncipe audāciōre parātur.
4. Cantā, poēta, glōriam virī fortiōris.
5. Belgae (the *Belgians*) fortiōrēs quam cēterī Galli erant.
6. Maria altiōra quam flūmina sunt.

7. *Lepus animal celerius quam canis est.*
8. *Nihil est v̄lōcius quam mēns.*
9. *Magister doctior quam discipulus esse dēbet.*
10. *Iter per Sēquanōs (Sequanians, a Gallic tribe on the Rhone) difficilius quam iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam erat.*
11. *Pānis magis necessārius est quam cētera genera cibī.*

(d) Point out every comparative in (c), explaining its ending, and giving the positive form of the adjective from which it is derived.

(e) Give the comparative (masculine, feminine, and neuter forms, nominative singular and plural) of the following adjectives :

doctus, lēnis, celeber, incertus, prūdēns, ācer, v̄rus.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline in both numbers :

puella pulchrior, animal celerius, mīles audācior, templum antīquius.

(b) Review. Put the italicized words in the plural :

1. *Fīlius meus prūdentior est.* 2. *Glōriam virī fortiōris cantō.* 3. *Proelium brevius parābitur.* 4. *Canem fīdiōrem habēo.* 5. *Artī difficiliōrī sē dabat.*

(c) Review. Put the italicized words in the singular :

1. *Puellae impigriōrēs quam puerī sunt.* 2. *Glōria mīlitibus ācriōribus datur.* 3. *Canēs tardiōrēs quam leporēs sunt.* 4. *Montibus altiōribus impedimur.*

(d) Review. Give the first persons singular and plural of : (1) the present ; (2) the perfect ; (3) the future of :

1. *Amīcōs fīdiōres dēligere.* 2. *Bellum brevius parāre.*
3. *Canem v̄lōciōrem habēre.* 4. *Flūmine altiōre impedīrī.*

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

1. I am happier than my friend.
2. The girl is more diligent than the boy.
3. Dogs are more faithful than all other animals.
4. Dogs are slower than hares.
5. Cavalrymen are faster than infantrymen.
6. We were in a more bitter fight.
7. Who is preparing a longer war?
8. What is quicker than the mind?
9. We like good bread; what is more necessary than bread?
10. Your rampart is higher but it will not hinder us.
11. Our soldiers are led by bolder chiefs.
12. The other teachers are more learned.
13. Listen to the words of a more prudent friend.
14. Roads through the mountains are shorter but more difficult than roads through the plains.

READING LESSON

I. RESPŌNSUM LACŌNICUM (A Laconic Answer)

Nūntius Lacōnī dixit, "Magnus numerus hostium est." Lacō respondit, "Tantō ¹ illūstrior glōria nostra erit."

II. RĒX ĒSURIĒNS (A Hungry King)

Ptolemaeus rēx, peragrāns Aegyptum sine comitibus, ēsuriēbat. Cibārius pānis ā rūsticō eī datus est. "Nihil umquam mihi vīsum est," ait, "eō pāne ² iūcundius."

¹ Tantō (*by*) *so much*. Ablative of degree of difference with a comparative.

² eō pāne = *quam is pānis*. The ablative may be used to replace *quam* followed by a nominative or an accusative case.

III. VACCA, CAPELLA, OVIS, LEŌ (The Cow, the Goat, the Sheep, and the Lion)

Vacca et capella et ovis cum leōne sociae erant. Cervum vāstī corporis cēpērunt. Leō quattuor partēs fēcīt. “Ego prīmam,” ait, “tollō quod nōminor leō; mihi secundam tribuētis quia fortior sum; tertia mea est quod potentior sum; quicumque quārtam tanget, ā mē necābitur.” Sic tōtam praedam sibi tribuit.

Haec fābula docet humilēs cum potentibus sociōs numquam esse dēbēre.

IV. ANSERĒS ET GRUĒS (The Geese and the Cranes)

Quondam ānserēs et gruēs herbam prāti ēdēbant. Dominus prāti vēnit. Gruēs, leviōrēs et celeriōrēs quam ānserēs, facile āvolāvērunt, sed ānserēs, impedīti gravitāte corporis, captī et necātī sunt.

Sic saepe humilēs, cum potentibus in eōdem maleficiō sociī, sōlī poenās dant, dum aliī salvī ēvādunt.

V. EGO MĒ IPSE CŪRŌ (I take Care of Myself)

Scīpiō Nāsica, cēnsor factus, sē gravem et sevērū prae-buit. Quondam numerum equitū cēnsēbat. Equitem ōbēsū et pinguem, equum vērō¹ eiusdem macrum et strigōsum vīdit. “Cūr,” inquit cēnsor, “pinguior es quam equus tuus?” — “Quod,” respondit eques, “ego mē ipse cūrō, equum vērō servus.”

Respōnsum nōn verēcundum vīsum est et eques graviter obiūrgātus et multā damnātus est.

COLLATERAL READING

ROMAN CENSORS

The officers of chief dignity in the Roman Republic, from least to greatest, were: *Aediles* (two), with oversight over

¹ vērō, but (literally, in truth), never starts a clause.

police and public works; *Praetors* (two), with the chief judicial power; *Consuls* (two), leaders in war and foreign policy; *Censors* (two); *Dictator* (one, and in critical times only).

These five were called *curule offices*, because the holders, dividing among themselves the old royal power, kept the right to use the curule chair — the ivory “throne” of the old kings. There were also the two *inferior aediles*, the eight *quaestors* (in charge of the treasury and with some judicial power), and the ten *tribunes*.

. . . In 443 B.C., a new office, the *censorship*, was created, to take over the religious part of the consul’s duty and his most important powers. To this office, *only patricians* could be elected. Every fifth year two censors were chosen, with power to revise the lists of the citizens and of the Senate. By their mere order they could deprive any man of citizenship, or degrade a senator. They also exercised a general moral oversight over the state. Either censor could veto action by the other. Their tremendous power was used commonly with moderation, and not for partisan ends.

LESSON LV

THE SUPERLATIVE

113. Formation of Superlatives (*-issimus, -a, -um*).

— The Latin superlative is formed by adding the suffix *-issimus* (m.), *-issima* (f.), *-issimum* (n.) to the base. It is declined like *bonus, -a, -um*.

POSITIVE	BASE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>altus, -a, -um</i>	<i>alt-</i>	<i>altissimus, -a, -um</i> <i>the highest, very high</i>
<i>fortis, -e</i>	<i>fort-</i>	<i>fortissimus, -a, -um</i> <i>the bravest, very brave</i>

(a) *Slightly Irregular Superlatives.* — (1) All adjectives ending in *-er* form the superlative by adding the suffix *-rimus, -a, -um* to the nominative masculine singular.

POSITIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>Masc. Fem. Neuter</i>	
<i>piger pigra pigrum</i>	<i>pigerrimus, -a, -um</i> <i>the laziest, very lazy</i>
<i>ācer ācris ācre</i>	<i>ācerrimus, -a, -um</i> <i>the most eager, very eager</i>

(2) Five adjectives, ending in *-ilis*, form the superlative by adding *-limus, -a, -um* to the base.

They are

<i>facilis, -e, easy</i>	<i>similis, -e, similar</i>
<i>difficilis, -e, difficult</i>	<i>dissimilis, -e, different</i>
<i>humilis, -e, humble</i>	

POSITIVE	BASE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis, -e	facil-	facillimus, -a, -um <i>the easiest, very easy</i>

*Note that the same adjectives which form the comparative by the use of **magis**, more, form the superlative by the use of **maximē**, most.*

necessārius magis necessārius maximē necessārius

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
dissi'milis, -e	<i>different</i>	dissimilar
fa'cilis, -e	<i>easy</i>	facility
nō'bilis, -e	<i>noble</i>	nobility
pau'per (gen. -eris) ¹	<i>poor</i>	pauper, poverty
si'milis, -e	<i>similar</i>	similitude
ma'ximē	<i>most</i>	maximum

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

- Give the base of the adjectives in the vocabulary.
- Read carefully and translate :

cārus, cārior, cārissimus	longa, longior, longissima
nōbilis, nōbilio, nōbilissima	necessārium, magis neces-
facile, facilius, facillimum	sārium, maximē neces-
ācer, ācrior, ācerrimus	sārium

- Identify :

faciliōrī, difficiliōra, fortiōribus, longissimīs, miserri-
mōrum, facillima, ācerrimōs.

- Pronounce carefully and translate :

- Canis fidissimum omnium animālium est.**
- Pānis maximē necessārius cibus est.**

¹ **Pauper**, an adjective of the third declension with one ending, is declined like a noun with a consonant stem (see § 94).

3. Vir pauperrimus nōn semper miserrimus est.
4. Facillimum nōn difficillimum iter dēligunt.
5. Causae nostrae nōn similēs sunt; dissimillimae sunt.
6. Bella ācerrima brevissima sunt.
7. Oppidum vāllō altissimō mūnītum est.
8. Belgae fortissimī omnium Gallōrum erant.
9. Lēgātōs virōs nōbilissimōs cīvitatīs ad Caesarem mit-tunt.

(e) Point out all the superlatives in (d), and explain their formation and endings.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline in both numbers :

amīcus cārissimus, rosa pulcherrima, iter facillimum.

(b) Put the italicized words (1) in the plural :

1. *Canem fīdiōrem* dēligunt; *canem fīdissimum* dēligunt.
2. *Bellum brevius* parāmus; *bellum brevissimum* parāmus.
3. *Monte altiōre* impediuntur; *monte altissimō* impediuntur.

(2) In the singular :

1. *Doctiōrēs sunt; doctissimī sunt.* 2. *Puerōs pauperi-ōrēs iuvāmus; puerōs pauperrimōs iuvāmus.* 3. *Itinera faciliōra dēligō; itinera facillima dēligō.*

(c) Review. Give the third persons singular and plural of the present, perfect, and future of :

1. Itineribus difficillimīs in Galliam contendere.
2. Montibus altissimīs impedīrī.
3. Rēgem superbissimum vincere.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

1. Your brother is my dearest friend.
2. Our teachers are very learned.
3. We are helping the poorest and the most unhappy.

4. The hostages were the most noble citizens.
5. Bread is the most necessary of all foods.
6. The longest rivers are not always the deepest.
7. I shall give the most beautiful books to the most diligent pupils.
8. Wars have often very similar causes.
9. The bravest soldiers are led by the boldest chiefs.
10. The shortest way is through the mountains, but it is the most difficult.

READING LESSON

I. ORĪGŌ OBSCŪRISSIMA EURĪPIDIS ET DĒMOSTHENIS
(The Very Obscure Origin of Euripides and Demosthenes)

Illūstriſsimī virī saepe humillimō locō nātī sunt. Eurīpidēs, nōtissimus poēta tragicus, mātrem habuit quae olera vēndēbat, et pater Dēmosthenis, ēloquentissimī ōrātōrum Graecōrum, cultellōs vēndēbat.

II. GORGĪAS LEONTĪNUS, VIR DOCTISSIMUS (Gorgias of
Leontini, a Very Learned Man)

Graeci Gorgiae Leontinō, virō ēloquentissimō et doctissimō aetātis suae, in templō Apollinis Delphicī statuam auream collocāvērunt.

III. VĪPERA ET LĪMA (The Viper and the File)

Vīpera praedam quaerēbat. Forte in officīnam fabri vēnit, limam vīdit et momordit. Rīsit līma. "Stultissima es," ait, "improba; tē nōn timeō; dūrissima sum; ferrum rōdō et malitiam tuam contemnō."

IV. HELVĒTIA (Switzerland)

Undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte, flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte, monte Iūrā altis-

simō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā, lacū¹ Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. (From *Caesar*.)

COLLATERAL READING

GREEK ORACLES AND ROMAN AUGURS

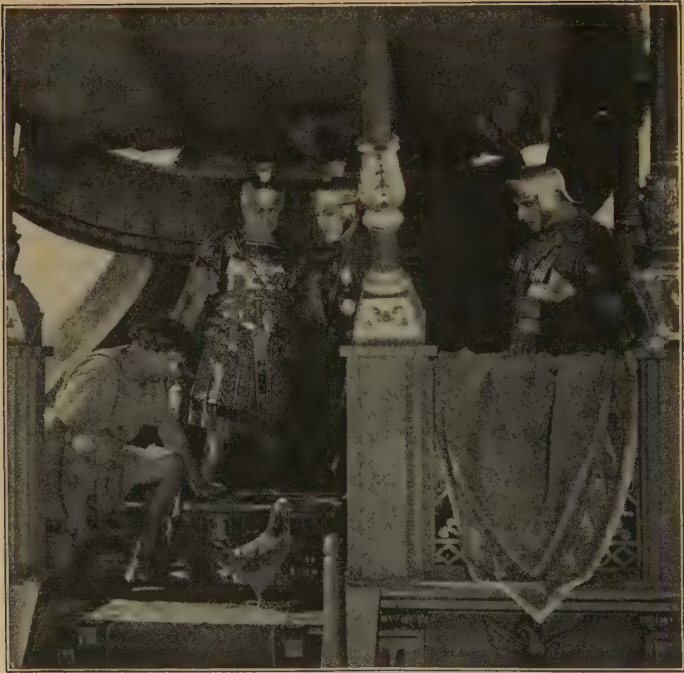
Apollo, the sun god, was also the god of prophecy among the Greeks. One of his chief temples was at Delphi, far up the



THE RUINS OF DELPHI.

slopes of Mount Parnassus, amid wild and rugged scenery. From a fissure in the ground, within the temple, volcanic gases poured forth. A priestess would inhale the gas until she passed into a trance (or seemed to do so); and, while in this state, she was supposed to see into the future, by the aid

¹ lacū, ablative singular of lacus (gen. lacūs), lake, fourth declension.



AUGUR OBSERVING THE SACRED CHICKENS.

of the god. *The advice of this "oracle" was sought by men and by governments throughout all Hellas* (Davis' *Readings*, I, Nos. 41-43).

The gods at Rome manifested their will not by oracles but by omens, or *auspices*. These auspices were sought especially in the conduct of birds, and in the color and size of the entrails of animals. The interpretation of such signs became a kind of science, in the possession of a "college" (*collection*) of augurs. Their "science" came from the Etruscans, and seems to have been related to old Babylonian customs.

Religion became a mighty political instrument. No public act (vote, election, or battle) could be begun without

divine approval. If the gods were properly consulted concerning a proposed measure and had manifested their approval, then the Romans felt they were under obligation to see it carried through. And the thrifty Roman drove hard bargains with his gods. The augurs, or soothsayers, called for fresh animals until the entrails gave the signs desired by the ruling magistrate, and then the gods were as much bound as if they had shown favor at the first trial. The sky was watched until the desired birds did appear, and in the later periods tame birds were kept to give the required indications.

LESSON LVI

ADVERBS

114. Formation of Adverbs (*-ē* and *-iter*). — We have seen (§ 60) how adverbs are derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions (*-us*, *-a*, *-um*).

Adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension are formed by adding *-iter* to the base.

Note that *-iter* is replaced (a) by *-ter* in the case of a few adjectives of one ending; (b) by *-er* when the adjective ends in *-āns*, *-ēns* (base, *ant-*, *ent-*).

ADJECTIVES	BASE	ADVERBS	
lentus, -a, -um	lent-	lentē	<i>slowly</i>
ācer, ācris, ācre	ācr-	ācriter	<i>eagerly</i>
fortis, -e	fort-	fortiter	<i>bravely</i>
audāx	audāc-	audācter	<i>boldly</i>
prūdēns	prūdēt-	prūdentē	<i>prudently</i>

115. Comparison of Adverbs. — The comparative of adverbs derived from adjectives is like the neuter singular form of the comparative of the adjective.

The superlative is formed regularly (see § 60).

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lentē	lentius	lentissimē
ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
audācter	audācius	audācissimē
prūdentē	prūdentius	prūdentissimē

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
multitū'dō, -inis, f.	<i>great number</i>	multitude
dī'ligēns (gen. -en'tis)	<i>diligent, careful</i>	
gra'vis, -e	<i>heavy</i>	gravity
ve'hemēns (gen. -en'tis)	<i>impetuous</i>	vehemence
ā'criter	<i>sharply</i>	
cele'riter	<i>quickly</i>	
dīligen'ter	<i>diligently, carefully</i>	
fa'cile ¹	<i>easily</i>	
for'titer	<i>bravely</i>	
glōriō'sē	<i>gloriously</i>	
gra'viter	<i>heavily, hard</i>	
prūden'ter	<i>prudently, with prudence</i>	
vehemen'ter	<i>impetuously</i>	
coe'pī, ² coep'tus	<i>begin</i>	inception
iū'dicō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus	<i>judge</i>	judicature, adjudicate
pre'mō, -ere, pres'sī,	<i>press hard</i>	pressure, op-
pres'sus		pression
prōcē'dō, -ere,	<i>advance</i>	process, pro-
-ces'sī, —		ceed
resis'tō, -ere, re'stiti, —	<i>resist</i>	
longē lātēque	<i>far and wide</i>	

¹ Some adverbs are not formed regularly; they are like the accusative or ablative neuter singular of the adjective.

ADJECTIVES
facilis, -e
primus, -a, -um
brevis, -e

ADVERBS
facile, <i>easily</i>
primum, primō, <i>first, at first, for the first time</i>
brevi (understood, tempore), <i>shortly</i>

² This verb is used only in the perfect tenses.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Give (1) the base of each of the following adjectives :

doctus, vehemēns, superbus, gravis, lātus, pulcher, ācer, dīligēns, similis, fēlix, vėlōx, tardus, celer ;

(2) The positive, the comparative, and the superlative of the adverb derived from each of them.

(b) Identify and translate :

iūdicant, premēbam, resistimus, iūdicāverāmus, pressistī, resistant, iūdicārī, pressī erāmus, restitit, prōcessērunt.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Lentē prōcēdere dēbētis.
2. Sī vehementer pugnābis, glōriōsē vincēs.
3. Animālia timidissima celerrimē fugiunt.
4. Id facile et celeriter faciēmus.
5. Omnēs casae longē lātēque incēnsae sunt.
6. Prūdenter iūdicāre, rēctē facere, diligenter labōrāre dēbēmus.
7. Cīvēs bonī fortiter patriam dēfendent.
8. Militēs ācrius resistere et fortius pugnāre coeperant.
9. Ā multitūdine hostium graviter premuntur.
10. Tum omnēs ācerrimē et fortissimē restitērunt.

(d) Indicate in (c) (1) every adverb used in its positive form ; (2) every adverb used in the comparative or superlative form.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) (1) Conjugate and (2) give the past perfect of : ācritēr pugnāre coepī.

(b) Review. Give the first persons singular and plural of (1) the present; (2) the past; (3) the future; (4) the perfect of:

1. Prūdenter iūdicāre. 2. Graviter premī. 3. Celerimē fugere. 4. Lentē prōcēdere.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

1. A great number of slaves were working most diligently.
2. Our allies are advancing quickly, more quickly than the enemy.
3. You (singular) do not always judge with prudence.
4. The Romans will easily defeat all their enemies.
5. They fight impetuously and win gloriously.
6. Our fields are laid waste far and wide.
7. Work more diligently, and you will always be praised.
8. We fought sharply and resisted courageously.
9. He was very hard pressed by a great number of cavalrymen, and he began to flee slowly.

READING LESSON

I. SOMNIUM VĒRUM ĒVĀSIT (The Dream Came True)

Eudēmus, vir Cyprius, Aristotelis familiāris, peragrāns Macedoniam, ad urbem pervēnit quae ab Alexandrō tyrannō crūdēliter et iniūstē administrābātur.

In eā urbe Eudēmus aegerrimus fuit. In somnō iuvenem vidit quī eī dixit, "Mox tū convalēscēs et Alexander tyrannus peribit."

Atque ita quidem omnia ēvēnērunt. Eudēmus convaluit et tyrannus ā frātribus uxōris interfectus est.

II. FORTITŪDŌ ARRIAE (Arria's Bravery)

Caecīna Paetus, marītus Arriae, aegerrimus erat. Filius eōrum quoque aegrōtābat. Puer dēcessit. Fīliō māter fūnus

parāvit et exsequiās dūxit sed marītō mortem fili nōn nūntiāvit.

Quotiēns in cubiculum intrābat, marītus interrogābat, "Quid puer agit?" Arria fortiter respondēbat, "Bene quiēvit, libenter cibum sūmpsit."



A ROMAN MATRON.

Deinde, cum diū prohibitaē lacrimae prōrumpēbant, ē cubiculō celeriter exibat. Tum sē dolōrī dabat.

COLLATERAL READING

WOMEN'S CONDITION UNDER THE EMPIRE

Woman became the equal of man in law, and his companion instead of his servant in the family. . . .

The English historian, Lecky, says :

"Intellectual culture was much diffused among them, and we meet with noble instances of large and accomplished minds united with all the gracefulness of intense womanhood and all the fidelity of the truest love. . . . When Paetus, a

noble Roman, was ordered by Nero to put himself to death, his friends knew that his wife Arria, with her love and her heroic fervor, would not survive him. Her son-in-law tried to dissuade her from suicide by saying: 'If *I* am called upon to perish, would you wish your daughter to die with

me? ' She answered, ' Yes, if she has then lived with you as long and happily as I with Paetus.'

Paetus for a moment hesitated to strike the fatal blow, but Arria, taking the dagger, plunged it deeply into her breast, and, dying, handed it to her husband, exclaiming, ' My Paetus, it does not pain.' "

LESSON LVII

REVIEW

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Compare the declensions of **parvus**, -a, -um; **noster**, -tra, -trum (§ 46) with those of **ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**; **fortis**, -e; **fēlix** (§§ 108, 110).

(b) Compare the declensions of the adjectives **ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**; **fortis**, -e; **fēlix** with those of the nouns **urbs** and **mare** (§ 105).

(c) Compare the declension of the comparative **altior**, **altius** (§ 112) with that of **cōsul** and **flūmen** (§ 105).

(d) Review the present imperative, active and passive, of the four conjugations (§ 109).

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Translate into English the following words :

1. *Nouns*

A. FIRST DECLENSION

Graecia

B. SECOND DECLENSION

annus cibus

C. THIRD DECLENSION

ars
canis

lepus
mēns

multitūdō
pānis

2. Adjectives

A. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

cēteri

doctus

necessārius

B. THIRD DECLENSION

(1) Adjectives of Three Endings

acer

celeber

celer

(2) Adjectives of Two Endings

brevis

facilis

lēnis

omnis

difficilis

fortis

nōbilis

similis

dissimilis

gravis

(3) Adjectives of One Ending

audāx

pār

prūdēns

vehemēns

diligēns

pauper

recēns

vēlōx

fēlix

potēns

3. Adverbs

ācritēr

diligenter

graviter

prūdenter

audācter

facile

magis

quam

brevi

fortiter

maximē

vehementer

celeriter

glōriōsē

primum

prīmō

4. Verbs

A. FIRST CONJUGATION

cōservāre

iūdicāre

B. THIRD CONJUGATION

coepi

incendere

prōcēdere

resistere

cognōscere

premere

5. Other Parts of Speech

inter

6. Idiom

longē lātēque

(b) Divide all the words in (a) into syllables, indicating which one must be accented, and tell why.

(c) Point out in (a) : (1) the masculine nouns ; (2) the feminine nouns ; (3) the neuter nouns.

(d) Give (1) the base of all the nouns in (a) ; (2) their genitives, singular and plural.

(e) Give (1) the base of all the adjectives in (a) ; (2) their feminine and neuter forms, nominative singular ; (3) their genitives, singular and plural ; (4) their comparatives and superlatives, nominative singular masculine, feminine, and neuter.

(f) Answer the following questions, and illustrate :

1. What are the nominative endings of the adjectives of the first and second declensions ?

2. Into how many groups are the adjectives of the third declension divided ?

3. What do we mean by (a) adjectives of three endings ; (b) of two endings ; (c) of one ending ?

4. Give the endings of the third declension adjectives.

5. How is the comparative of a Latin adjective formed ?

6. How are Latin comparatives declined ?

7. How is the superlative of a Latin adjective formed ?

8. How is the superlative of an adjective (a) ending in **-er**, (b) ending in **-ilis**, formed ?

9. What adjectives form their comparatives and superlatives by using respectively **magis** and **maximē** ?

10. How are superlatives declined ?

11. How are adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions formed ?

12. How are adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension formed ?

13. When is the ending **-iter** replaced in an adverb (a) by **-ter** ; (b) by **-er** ?

14. What forms of the adjective are sometimes used adverbially?

15. How are the comparative and superlative of an adverb formed?

16. How are the second person singular and the second person plural of the present imperative active of the four conjugations formed?

17. How are the same persons of the present imperative passive of the four conjugations formed?

III. Written.

(a) Decline in both numbers :

vir celeber ; **vulnus** grave ; **nauta** audāx ; **canis** vĕlōcior ; **bellum** brevius ; **ars** difficillima.

(b) Translate the following words into Latin, marking all long vowels :

1. *Nouns*

art	food	Greece	mind
bread	great number	hare	thought
dog			year

2. *Adjectives*

all	diligent	heavy	prudent
audacious	eager	impetuous	quick
bitter	easy	learned	recent
bold	equal	necessary	sharp
brave	famous	noble	short
cautious	fast	the other	similar
celebrated	gentle	poor	soft
different	happy	powerful	swift
difficult			whole

3. *Adverbs*

bravely	gloriously	more	very quickly
very bravely	heavily	most	sharply
diligently	very hard	prudently	very sharply
easily	impetuously	quickly	than

4. *Verbs*

to advance	I began	to learn	to resist
to become	to judge	to press (hard)	to set on fire
acquainted			
with			

5. *Other Parts of Speech*

among between

6. *Idiom*

far and wide

(c) Derivation. — (1) From what Latin words are the following English words derived?

fortitude, canine, gravity, velocity, omnipotent, celerity, brevity, annual.

(2) Make a list of the English derivatives and cognates of **premere** according to Type I (see p. 178); of **cognōscere** according to Type II; of **iūdicāre** according to Type III.

LESSON LVIII

READING LESSON

I. L. IŪNIUS BRŪTUS, RŌMĀNŌRUM CŌNSUL PRĪMUS (A. C. 509; Annō U. C. 245)

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus et ultimus rēx Rōmae, et filiū eius pessimī et prāvissimī erant. Itaque odium populiuscēpērunt et Rōmā expulsi sunt. Duo cōsulēs creāti sunt: L. Iūnius Brūtus et L. Tarquinius Collātinus.

Erant in urbe paucī nōbilēs adulēscētēs amīcī Tarquiniōrum. Inter eōs adulēscētēs ipsī filiī Brūtī cōsulis erant. Contrā cōsulēs coniūrāvērunt et Tarquinium rēgem nocte in urbem accipere statuērunt.

Unus ex servīs sermōnem eōrum excēpit et coniūrātiōnem ad cōsulēs celerrimē dētulit. Scriptae ad Tarquinium litterae manifestum facinus fēcērunt. Prōditōrēs in vincula coniecti sunt, deinde damnāti. Stābant ad pālum dēligātī adulēscētēs nōbilissimī, sed liberī cōsulis omnium in sē oculōs convertēbant. Lictōrēs iuvenēs virgīs caedunt, secūrīque feriunt. Supplicī nōn spectātor modo, sed etiam exāctor erat Brūtus, quī filiis suis veniam negāverat. “Mihi filiī meī cārissimī sunt,” inquit, “sed libertās patriae meae cārior est.”

II. C. MŪCIUS SCAEVOLA (A. C. 507; Annō U. C. 247)

Porsenna, nōtissimus rēx Etruscōrum et socius Tarquini Superbī, ultimī Rōmānōrum rēgis, urbem obsidēbat. Rōma in maximō periculō erat. Trecentī iuvenēs nōbilissimī contrā Porsennam coniūrāvērunt et rēgem interficere et patriam servāre statuērunt.

Inter eōs Gāius Mūcius erat. In castra Porsennae vēnit. Ibi in cōnfertissimā turbā prope rēgium tribūnal¹ cōstitit. Stipendium tunc forte militibus dabātur et scriba cum rēge simili ferē ōrnātū² sedēbat. Mūcius dēceptus scribam prō rēge occīdit.

Apprehēnsus et ad rēgem dētractus, dextram³ accēnsō ad sacrificium foculō iniēcit. "Cūr dextram ūris?" rēx eum interrogāvit. Adulēscēns respondit, "Eam pūniō quod in caede peccāvit."

Porsenna, incrēdibilī fortitūdine attonitus, iuvenem fortissimum liberārī⁴ iussit. Cognōmen Scaevola Gāiō Mūciō datum est.

Quam pulchrum exemplum fortitudinis et amōris patriae!

III. CLOELIA VIRGŌ

(A. C. 507; Annō U. C. 247)

Porsenna, incrēdibilī fortitūdine C. Mūci Scaevolae terri-
tus, cum Rōmānīs pācem celeriter fēcit et obsidēs accēpit. Inter eōs Cloelia, virgō nōbilissima, erat. Castra rēgis nōn procul ā rīpā Tiberis posita erant. Cloelia, dēceptīs cūstō-
dibus,⁵ nocte equum arripuit et flūmen celere trāiēcit.

Ubi fuga virginis fortissimae nūntiāta est, rēx, primō⁶ irā incēnsus, Rōmam⁷ lēgātōs mīsit et Cloeliam obsidem repe-
tīvit. Rōmānī eam restituērunt.

Tum Porsenna, virginis virtūte permōtus, eam laudāvit

¹ tribūnal: a platform made of turf from which the commander in chief rendered justice to the soldiers or addressed them.

² simili ferē ōrnātū, dressed almost like (the king).

³ dextram, right hand.

⁴ See footnote 3, page 298.

⁵ This is another use of the *ablative absolute* which was discussed in footnote 1, on page 315.

⁶ primō or primum; see footnote 1, page 351.

⁷ Rōmam, to Rome. See footnote 1, on page 324.



MŪCIUS SCAEVOLA.

From a painting by Rubens.

et liberāvit, et ei partem obsidum dedit. Cloelia virginēs puerōsque ēlēgit et cum eis in patriam rediit.

Rōmānī novam in fēminā virtūtem novō genere honōris, statuā equestri, dōnāvērunt. In summā¹ viā Sacrā est posita statua virginis celebris, insidentis in equō.

¹ In summā, *At the highest point of*; see footnote 2, page 232.

COLLATERAL READING

I. THE TIBER

The Tiber flows through Rome from north to south in a channel which in classical times varied from 60 to 100 metres. So great is the amount of sand and mud which the river has always carried down that the seashore at its mouth has steadily advanced, and the site of the original town of Ostia is now 6600 metres inland. . . . The inundations of the Tiber have always been a source of great danger to large sections of the city, not only near the river, where the water actually overflows, but as far as the Pantheon, where the water sets back through underground channels. One hundred and thirty-two of these inundations have been recorded since the traditional one when Romulus and Remus were exposed to the flood, one hundred and six of them since the Christian era. . . . Where the river approaches most nearly to the Capitoline, it divides and flows around an island about 270 metres in length and 70 metres in greatest breadth. . . .

II. THE SACRA VIA

The Sacra via, the oldest and most famous street in Rome, began near the present site of the Colosseum, and ran northwest to the summit of the Velia, which it crossed near the arch of Titus. This was the *summa Sacra via*, and from here the street curved towards the north and extended to the east end of the Forum. Its continuation passed through the Forum valley to the foot of the Capitoline. . . . Originally the name Sacra via was given only to that part of the street which was between the Velia and the Forum, but it was soon made to include the whole extent from the Colosseum to the Forum, and in modern times even the part within the Forum.

— *The Topography and Monuments of Ancient Rome* by Platner.

LESSON LIX

DEMONSTRATIVES. INDIRECT DISCOURSE

116. Hic, Haec, Hoc may be used as a demonstrative adjective or a demonstrative pronoun, meaning *this, this one*, and is declined as follows :

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
Nom. : hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen. : hu'ius	hu'ius	hu'ius	hō'rum	hā'rum	hō'rum
Dat. : huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc. : hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl. : hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

117. Indirect Discourse. An indirect statement or quotation, after a verb meaning *say, know, think*, and the like, is said to be in indirect discourse. The verb is put in the infinitive and the subject of the infinitive is in the accusative case. Compare English, *I know him to be right.*

DIRECT STATEMENT

Hic puer bonus est. *This boy is good.*

DIRECT QUOTATION

Dicō, " Hic puer bonus est." *I say, " This boy is good."*

INDIRECT QUOTATION

Dicō hunc puerum bonum esse. *I say that this boy is good.*

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
sa'lūs, -ū'tis, f.	<i>safety</i>	salute, salutary
trīs'tis, -e	<i>sad</i>	
tur'pis, -e	<i>shameful</i>	turpitude
addū'cō, -ere, ad- dū'xī, adduc'tus	<i>lead to, prompt</i>	
in'colō, -ere, in- co'lui, —	<i>inhabit</i>	colony

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Tell which of the following English sentences are (1) direct statements; (2) direct quotations; (3) indirect quotations:

1. I am diligent. 2. I said, "I am diligent." 3. He knows that I am diligent. 4. I thought, "It is shameful."
5. Do you think that it is shameful? 6. You were working.
7. He told me that you were working.

(b) Identify and translate:

hic, is, eam, eius, hunc, id, huius, eā, hīs, eōrum, eīs, hā-
rum, hōc, hās, eōs, eī, hōrum, hī, hae.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Hic puer tristis est; haec puella laeta est.
2. Putō hunc puerum tristem esse.
3. Hoc templum antiquum est.
4. Dicunt hoc templum antiquum esse.
5. Hunc cīvem laudāmus.
6. Scit nōs hunc cīvem laudāre.
7. Huic puellae praemium dedī.
8. Audīmus incolās huius oppidī bellum timēre.

9. Ad hanc insulam nāvigābimus.
10. Erant hae causae bellī ācris.
11. Haec praemia nōbīs data sunt.
12. Nūntiāmus hīs militibus signum proelī darī.
13. Numquam fugā salūtem petere dēbēs : hoc enim turpe est ; exīstimō hoc turpe esse.
14. Hostēs hīs factīs adductī sunt.
15. Omnem Galliam incolunt trēs (*three*) populī : hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.
16. Caesar dixit Belgās fortissimōs omnium Gallōrum esse.

(d) (1) Indicate and explain all the uses of **hic**, **haec**, **hoc** in (c) ; (2) explain the use of the subject accusative in sentences 2, 4, 6, 8, 12, 13 and 16.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline in both numbers :

hoc factum, **hic mīles**, **haec rēgīna**.

(b) Put all the italicized words in the plural :

1. *Haec lēx*. 2. *Hoc signum* videō. 3. *Huic puellae rosam* dedī.
4. *Altitūdō huius flūminis* nōn magna est.
5. *Hunc discipulum* laudō. 6. *Hanc puellam* nōn laudō.

(c) Make all the italicized words singular :

1. *Haec nōmina* audiō. 2. *Sunt hae causae* bellī.
3. *Hī servī tardī* sunt. 4. *Virtūs hōrum mīlitum* magna est.
5. Ab *hīs nautīs* servātus sum. 6. *Hās rosās* amō.

(d) Review. Replace the italicized infinitive by (1) the present ; (2) the perfect ; (3) the future ; (4) the past :

1. *Incolere*: Tū Galliam nōn —.
2. *Petere*: Vōs salūtem —.

3. *Addūcī*: Nōs hīs causīs nōn —.
4. *Scīre*: Amīcus meus hoc nōn —.
5. *Dīcere*: Quis haec verba —?
6. *Darī*: Tibi hoc praemium —.

(e) Change the following direct statements into indirect discourse by using such verbs as **putāre**, **dīcere**, **scīre**, **audīre**, **nūntiāre** :

1. Belgae Galliam incolunt. 2. Rīpae flūminis altae sunt.
3. Haec puella rosās amat. 4. Rōmānī fugā salūtem nōn petunt.

(f) Change the following direct quotations into indirect discourse :

1. Dīcit, “Hic vir patriam dēfendit.” 2. Respondunt, “Hoc turpe est.”
3. Dīcō, “Ego hīs praemiīs nōn addūcor.”

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

1. These little girls are sad ; I hear that these little girls are sad.
2. This good man is helping his friends ; we know that this good man is helping his friends.
3. The enemy (plural) is hindered by the depth of this river ; they say that the enemy is hindered by the depth of this river.
4. The bravery of these soldiers is saving the country ; it is known that the bravery of these soldiers is saving the country.
5. We are not prompted by these shameful causes ; we say that we are not prompted by these shameful causes.
6. These people used to live in Italy ; I know that these people are now living in Gaul.

7. The victory was announced to the consul by this swift messenger.

8. I shall give a reward to this good boy.

9. You ought to praise these skillful sailors.

10. You sought safety in flight; this was shameful.

READING LESSON

I. DĒCEPTA AVIDITĀS (Disappointed Greediness)

Canis, per flūmen natāns, carnem in ōre tenēbat. Imāginem suam in aquā vīdit. Putāns alterum canem praedam in ōre habēre, eam ēripere statuit; carnem quam tenēbat dīmīsit, sed hanc praedam quam petēbat, nōn attigit.

Is, quī aliēnum bonum petit, proprium meritō āmittit.

II. FABIA GĒNS (The Fabian Clan)

(A. C. 479; Annō U. C. 275)

Rōmānī incursiōnibus Vēientium vexābantur. Huic populō bellum indīxērunt, sed Fabia gēns sōla hoc bellum suscipere cōstituit. Omnēs Rōmānī Fabiōs laudāvērunt. Hī arma cēpērunt et per urbem incessērunt. Erant trecentī sex nōbilissimī virī. Hōrum dux M. Fabius cōsul erat.

Prīmō¹ Fabiī hostēs vīcērunt. Audācia Fabiōrum crēvit. Tum in rīpā Cremerae flūminis castra posuērunt. Ibi Vēientēs eōs in insidiās ēlicuērunt. In hōc proeliō omnēs Fabiī periērunt. Ūnus superfuit ex hāc tantā gente quī propter aetātem puerilem ad pugnam nōn ductus erat.

Hic puer prōgenitor erat dictātōris Q. Fabī Maximī cui cognōmen Cūntātōris datum est quod Hannibalem morā frēgit.

Porta quā Fabiī exierant *Scelerāta* est appellāta.

¹See footnote 1, page 351.

COLLATERAL READING

THE "FABIAN POLICY"

After the defeat of a Roman army of 40,000 men near *Lake Trasimene*, Quintus Fabius Maximus was named dictator to save Rome. That wary old general adopted the wise policy of delay ("Fabian Policy") to wear out Hannibal and gain breathing time for Rome. He would not give battle; but he followed close at the Carthaginian's heels, from place to place. Even Hannibal could not catch Fabius unawares; and he did not dare to attack the intrenched Roman camps. But he had to draw the Italian "allies" from Rome, or he would have to flee from Italy. So far, not a city in Italy had opened its gates to him as a shelter.

But in Rome many of the common people murmured impatiently, nicknaming Fabius *Cunctator* (the Laggard). Popular leaders, too, began to grumble that the Senate protracted the war in order to gain glory for the aristocratic generals; and the following summer the new consuls were given 90,000 men — by far the largest army Rome had ever put in the field, and several times Hannibal's army — with orders to crush the invader.

The result was the battle of Cannae — "a carnival of cold steel, a butchery, not a battle." Hannibal lost 6000 men. Rome lost 60,000 dead and 20,000 prisoners. A consul, a fourth of the senators, nearly all the officers, and over a fifth of the fighting population of the city perished. Hannibal sent home a bushel of gold rings from the hands of fallen Roman nobles.

Rome learned from disaster . . . and fell back upon iron constancy and steadfast caution. She risked no more pitched battles with Hannibal. The policy of Fabius was again adopted, varied by sudden telling blows from the vigorous soldier, Marcellus, who was called the "Sword" of Rome, as Fabius was called her "Shield."

LESSON LX

DEMONSTRATIVES

118. Ille, Illa, Illud is used as a demonstrative adjective or a demonstrative pronoun, meaning *that, that one*. It is declined as follows :

SINGULAR			PLURAL
MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	
Nom. : ille	illa	illud	(The plural is like that of bonus, -a, -um.)
Gen. : illi'us	illi'us	illi'us	
Dat. : illi	illi	illi	
Acc. : illum	illam	illud	
Abl. : illō	illā	illō	

119. Ipse, Ipsa, Ipsum is used as an intensive adjective or pronoun, meaning *self, himself, herself, etc.* It is declined as follows :

SINGULAR			PLURAL
MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	
Nom. : ipse	ipsa	ipsum	(The plural is like that of bonus, -a, -um.)
Gen. : ipsi'us	ipsi'us	ipsi'us	
Dat. : ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	
Acc. : ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	
Abl. : ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
<i>dux, du'cis, m.</i>	<i>leader</i>	
<i>nā'vis, -is, f.</i>	<i>ship</i>	navigation
<i>pōns, pon'tis, m.</i>	<i>bridge</i>	pontoon
<i>me'dius, -a, -um</i>	<i>middle</i>	medium
<i>aut . . . aut</i>	<i>either . . . or</i>	
<i>quod</i>	<i>because</i>	
<i>prohi'beō, -ē're,</i> <i>-hi'buī, -hi'bitus</i>	<i>prevent, keep off</i>	prohibition
<i>ve'ho, -ere, ve'xī</i>	<i>carry</i>	vehicle, inveigh
<i>ve'hor, ve'hī, vec'tus</i>	<i>be carried, sail</i>	



PŌNS RŌMĀNUS.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and translate :

is, hic, ille, ipse, hās, illud, ipsius, eās, ipsō, id, illius, hōrum, illā, huic, hōc, ipsōrum, illī, huius.

(b) Identify and translate :

vehimus, vehuntur, vehētis, vecta erat, vectī sumus, prohibēbāmus, prohibuistī, prohibitum est, prohibēbō.

(c) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Hic puer impigrior quam ille est ; sciō hunc puerum impigrum esse.

2. Illīus bellī haec causa fuit.

3. Hoc turpius quam illud est.

4. Hī librī illī puellae dabuntur.

5. Verba tua ab hīs, nōn ab illis audientur.

6. Quis nūntiat rēgem ipsum in illā nāve vehī?

7. Putāmus illa animālia vėlōciōra quam haec esse.

8. Nāvēs nostrae ad illās īnsulās nāvīgābant.

9. Militēs audīvērunt rīpās hōrum flūminum altiōrēs quam illōrum esse.

10. Tū ipsa, amīca mea, illud facere dēbēs.

11. Illī omnēs hominēs, magnō periculō adductī, in fugā salūtem pōnunt.

12. Praesidium prope illum pontem ā duce ipsō positum erat.

13. Mediam partem Galliae incolunt quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī vocantur.

14. Helvētīi cum Germānīs saepe contendunt quod aut suis finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

(d) Point out in (c) all the cases of (1) **ille, illa, illud** ; (2) **ipse, ipsa, ipsum**, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline in both numbers :

illud flūmen, illa nāvis, ille pōns, rēx ipse, rēgīna ipsa, oppidum ipsum.

(b) Put in the plural all italicized words :

1. *Ille magister et hic discipulus.* 2. *Illa domina et haec serva.* 3. *Illud templum et hoc oppidum.* 4. *Fuga*

illius militis. 5. Sciō multōs nautās in *illā nāve* esse.
6. *Illī puellae*, nōn *huic*, rosās dabō.

(c) Make singular all the italicized words :

1. Dā mihi *illōs pulchrōs librōs*. 2. *Hās rosās* nōn dēligō. 3. Virtūs *illōrum prīncipum*. 4. *Illae nāvēs pulcherrimae sunt*; putō *illās nāvēs pulcherrimās* esse. 5. *Illa perīcula* nōn timēs.

(d) Review. Replace each dash by the proper form of *ille* :

1. — puer laetus erat. 2. — viam mōnstrō.
3. In — nāvibus vectī sunt. 4. Dux — militum audāx est. 5. In — flūmine pōns erat. 6. Dā mihi — librōs.

(e) Review. Replace each dash by the proper form of *ipse* :

1. Rēgēs — interfectī sunt. 2. Ab suis — amicīs nōn laudātus est. 3. Rēgīna — tristis est. 4. Caesarī — victōriam nūntiāvī. 5. Miles ācer perīculum — amat.

(f) Review. Put

- (1) in the plural: **In quā nāve vehor?**
- (2) in the singular: **Nāvēs eōs vehent.**
- (3) in the present: **Bellum gessērunt.**
- (4) in the past: **Cum Germānīs contendimus.**
- (5) in the future: **Suis finibus illōs prohibent.**
- (6) in the perfect: **Dux prope pontem praesidium pōnēbat.**

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

1. This messenger is swifter than that one; I say that this messenger is swifter than that one.

2. The causes of those wars are shameful ; we know that the causes of those wars are shameful.

3. Those ships carry wheat to our allies ; it is announced that those ships carry wheat to our allies.

4. We shall not sail on those ships, but on these.

5. Your soldiers will keep off those people from your territory.

6. That bridge was defended by brave soldiers.

7. The leader himself does not know that.

8. Those ambassadors were sent to (ad) Caesar himself.

9. The city will be saved by the citizens themselves.

10. The queen herself knows that we do not fear those dangers.

READING LESSON

MENĒNIUS AGRIPPA

(A. C. 494 ; Annō U. C. 260)

Menēnius Agrippa concordiam inter patriciōs plēbemque restituit. Plēbs misera, tribūtīs militiāque exhausta, sēditionem fēcit. Magna pars populī urbem reliquit et in montem trāns Aniēnem sēcessit.

Tum senātōrēs ad plēbem Menēnium Agrippam, virum ēloquentissimum, mīsērunt. Hic illīs fābulam dē ventre et membrīs corporis hūmānī nārrāvit.

Membra quondam ventrī dīxērunt, " Nōs tē semper ministeriō nostrō alimus, dum tū turpiter ōtiōsus es. Illud nōn diūtius faciēmus." Dum igitur ventrī cibum subtrahunt, corpus dēbilitātur, membra ipsa quoque dēficiunt, tandem intellegunt ventrem nōn ōtiōsum esse. Sic patriciī et plēbs, quasi ūnum corpus, discordiā dēficiunt et pereunt, concordiā valent.

Hāc fābulā Menēnius mentēs hominum flēxit : plēbs in urbem rediit. Tum primum tribūnī plēbis creatī sunt, et illī

libertātem populi contrā superbiam nōbilitātis dēfendere coepērunt.

COLLATERAL READING

PATRICIANS AND PLEBEIANS

Livy, an old Roman historian, gives a graphic account of the first great clash between the classes (497 B.C.). Probably the story is essentially correct, and certainly it illustrates the methods by which the plebeians made their gains.



BRIDGE OVER THE ANIO.

This road leads to the Sacred Mount.

The plebs, driven to despair by the cruelty of patrician creditors, refused to serve in a war against the Volscians, until the consul won them over by freeing all debtors from prison. But when the army returned victorious, the other consul refused to recognize his colleague's acts; he arrested the debtors again, and enforced the law with merciless cruelty. On a renewal of the war, the betrayed plebs again declined to fight; but finally Manius Valerius (of the

great Valerian house "that loved the people well") was made dictator, and him they trusted. Victory again followed; but Valerius was unable to get the consent of the Senate to his proposed changes in the law. So the plebeian army, still in battle-array outside the gates, marched away to a hill across the Anio, some three miles from Rome, where, they declared, they were going to build a Rome of their own. The "strike" brought the patricians to some real concessions, and the plebs returned from the "Sacred Mount."

The secession of 497 B.C. gave the plebs the right to choose *tribunes* (see footnote, page 192). . . .

About 460 B.C., the plebeians began to demand written laws. . . . and after a ten-year contest a board of ten men (*Decemvirs*) was elected to put the laws into writing. . . . The new thing about the "Laws of the Twelve Tables" (see page 15) was that they were now known to all, and that *they applied to plebeian and patrician alike.*

LESSON LXI

RELATIVE PRONOUN — INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

120. The Relative Pronoun, which we have met several times in this book, is declined as follows :

Quī, quae, quod, who, which, that

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
Nom. : quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen. : cu'ius	cu'ius	cu'ius	quō'rum	quā'rum	quō'rum
Dat. : cui	cui	cui	qui'bus	qui'bus	qui'bus
Acc. : quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl. : quō	quā	quō	qui'bus	qui'bus	qui'bus

121. Agreement of the Relative Pronoun. — A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case is determined by its use in its own clause.

1. Iuvā mē, quī amīcus tuus sum. *Help me who am your friend.*
2. Servōs quī pigrī sunt, nōn liberō. *I do not free slaves who are lazy.*
3. Serva quam liberō nōn pigra est. *The slave-girl whom I free is not lazy.*

In 1, quī is masculine gender, singular number, first person, like its antecedent mē, but it is *nominative* case because it is the subject of the verb sum.

In 2, quī is masculine gender, plural number, third person, like its antecedent servōs, but it is *nominative* case because it is the subject of the verb sunt.

In 3, *quam* is feminine gender, singular number, third person, like its antecedent *serva*, but *accusative* case because it is the direct object of the verb *liberō*.

122. The Interrogative Adjective Quī, Quae, Quod, is declined like the relative pronoun.

Quī puer bonus est?	<i>What boy is good?</i>
Cui puerō praemium dabō?	<i>To what boy shall I give a reward?</i>
In quā insulā sumus?	<i>On what island are we?</i>

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
lit'tera, -ae, f.	<i>letter (of the alphabet)</i>	literature
lit'terae, -ārum, f. pl.	<i>letter, epistle</i>	
le'gō, -e're, lē'gī, lēc'tus	<i>read, choose</i>	lecture, election
me'reō, -ē're, -uī, -itus	<i>deserve</i>	merit, demerit
hodiē	<i>to-day</i>	hodiernal

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and translate :

quī, quibus, quārum, quem, cuius, quās, quō, quae, cui, quā.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Populī quī Galliam incolunt fortissimī sunt.
2. Bellum quod parāmus longum erit.
3. Tē quae amīca cāra mea es, iuvābō.
4. Litterās quās ad mē misistī, lēgī.
5. Quod ego fuī, id tū hodiē es.
6. Agricolaē quōrum agrī vastābantur miserī erant.

7. Verba quibus permovēbāmur audīvimus.

8. Nūntius ā quō (*or per quem*) victōria nūntiātur vėlōx est.

9. Puella cui praemium datum est id nōn merēbat.

10. Quae rosa pulcherrima est? Quās litterās lēgistī? Quī discipulus praemium meret? Cui discipulō id datur? Quod dōnum accēpit? Quae verba audīvistis? In quā nāve vehuntur?

(c) Point out in (b) all the relative pronouns and the interrogative adjectives, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Replace the dash by the proper form of the relative pronoun :

1. Vir — patriam dēfendit cīvis bonus est.
2. Vir — laudāmus patriam dēfendit.
3. Vir ā — patria dēfenditur cīvis bonus est.
4. Litterās — Cicerō ad Caesarem mīsit lēgimus.
5. Litterae — ā Cicerōne ad Caesarem missae sunt nōn longae erant.
6. Incola — casa incenditur miser est.
7. Incolae — casae incendentur miserī erunt.

(b) Replace the dash by the proper form of the interrogative adjective :

1. — puer praemium meret? 2. — puerī praemia merent?
3. — puella pulcherrima est? 4. — puellae pulcherrimae sunt?
5. — librum legis? 6. — librōs legis?
7. — litterās legis? 8. — discipulō librum dedistī?
9. — discipulīs librōs dedistī?

(c) Put in the plural :

1. Librum quem mihi dedistī lēgī. 2. Puella quam vidī pulchra est.
3. Nauta ā quō servātus sum fortis erat.

4. Amicus cui pecūniam dēbeō irātus est. 5. Dux cuius victōria nūntiātur audāx est. 6. Quod templum vīdistī?
7. In quā nāve vehitur?

(d) Put in the singular :

1. Servī quōs liberāvimus bonī erant. 2. Oppida quae occupātis antīqua sunt. 3. Nunc sociī quibus frūmentum dedimus, tūtī sunt. 4. Quōs populōs vīcistis?

(e) Give the second person, singular and plural, of all the tenses you know, of : 1. **Id merēre.** 2. **Litterās Cicerōnis legere.**

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

(a) He deserves, I am reading, they were reading, we shall not read, you (singular) had deserved, you have read, they will deserve, the letter was read, the rewards are deserved.

(b) 1. To-day I shall read the book which she gave me.

2. The boys who received the rewards did not deserve them.

3. The danger in which we are to-day does not frighten us.

4. The grain which we sent saved them.

5. He did not read the letter which you wrote him.

6. The soldiers whose courage was praised had been wounded.

7. The boat on which we shall sail is fast.

8. They will not defend me who have always been their faithful ally.

9. Caesar, to whom the victory of the enemy was announced, was angry.

10. What soldier is brave? What letter shall we read? What gifts have you received? By what messenger was the victory announced? To what consul was it announced?

READING LESSON

CICERŌNIS LOCUS (Cicero's Joke)

Cicerō, cuius ōrātiōnēs et litterās grātissimē legimus, facētissimus erat. Ōrātor magnus cui mulier dicēbat sē trīgintā annōs habēre, "Vērū est," inquit, "nam hoc iam vīgintī annōs ante audīvī."

RESPŌNSUM LACŌNICUM (A Laconic Answer)

Leōnidās quī Lacedaemoniōrum rēx erat, et cui Xerxēs, Persārum rēx, scripserat, "Mitte arma," eī respondit, "Venī et ea cape."

LEŌNIDAE ALIUD RESPŌNSUM (Another Answer of Leonidas)

Īdem Leōnidās, cui nūntius dicēbat, "Hostēs prope nōs sunt," eī respondit, "Et nōs prope illōs sumus."

ENNĪ POĒTAE IMĀGŌ (The Wax Mask of the Poet Ennius)

Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō Āfricānus, ā quō Hannibal, Poenōrum dux celeberrimus, ad Zamam victus est, Ennī poētae imāginem in sepulchrō gentis Cornēliae collocārī iussit, quod Scīpiōnum gesta carminibus suis illūstrāverat.

COLLATERAL READING

A ROMAN FUNERAL

When a prominent Roman died, the members of the family bewailed him (*conclāmāre*); hence the expression "conclāmātum est," "all is over." The death of a person had to be reported at the temple of Venus Libitīna (the goddess of corpses), where it was recorded.

After the body was washed, perfumed, and dressed in a toga, it lay in state from three to seven days in the hall (*ātrium*). On the day of the funeral, there was a procession,

led by flutists and trumpeters, and two hired female mourners, singing the funeral song (*nēnia*). They were followed by men (clients, freedmen or heirs of the deceased), carrying the litter on which the corpse was. Then came the chief mimic (*archimīmus*), who reproduced the features, the attitude, the way of talking, and even the funny traits of the dead person. If he belonged to the nobility, hired mourners would carry the *imāginēs* (wax masks of the ancestors). Behind them walked the family, the male relatives wearing black clothes (*toga pulla*), the women's garments being disarranged, and their hair dishevelled.

Finally the body was cremated outside the city walls with things and even animals of which the deceased was fond. A few days later the relatives, barefooted, would go and gather the ashes in an urn, which was then placed in the family grave. Near Rome, the highways, and especially the Via Appia, were lined with tombs.

But all the poor, and some rich people were not cremated, but buried, the former in a common ditch, the latter in stone coffins, which were laid in more or less sumptuous graves.

The funeral ended with a banquet, and a sacrifice which was offered to purify the house. — After *Rome et les Romains*, by Bornecque and Mornet.

LESSON LXII

FOURTH DECLENSION

123. Fourth Declension. — Nouns of which the genitive singular ends in **-ūs** belong to the fourth declension.



CORNŪ.

Gender. 1. Nouns of the fourth declension, ending in **-us**, are masculine except a few, such as **manus**, *hand*, **domus**, *house*, which are feminine.

2. Nouns ending in **-ū** are neuter.

exercitus, m., *army*

cornū, n., *horn, wing*
(of an army)

Base: **exercit-**

Base: **corn-**

	SINGULAR	Endings
Nom. :	exerc'itus	-us
Gen. :	exerc'itūs	-ūs
Dat. :	exerci'tuī	-uī
Acc. :	exerc'itum	-um
Abl. :	exerc'itū	-ū

	SINGULAR	Endings
Nom. :	cor'nū	-ū
Gen. :	cor'nūs	-ūs
Dat. :	cor'nū	-ū
Acc. :	cor'nū	-ū
Abl. :	cor'nū	-ū

	PLURAL	
Nom. :	exerc'itūs	-ūs
Gen. :	exerci'tuum	-uum
Dat. :	exerci'tibus	-ibus
Acc. :	exerc'itūs	-ūs
Abl. :	exerci'tibus	-ibus

	PLURAL	
Nom. :	cor'nua	-ua
Gen. :	cor'num	-uum
Dat. :	cor'nibus	-ibus
Acc. :	cor'nua	-ua
Abl. :	cor'nibus	-ibus

Note. All the masculine and feminine nouns are declined like **exercitus**, and all neuter nouns, like **cornū**.

124. Ablative of Time. — The time at which or within which a thing is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Adventū cōsulis.	<i>On the arrival of the consul.</i>
Eō annō.	<i>In that year.</i>
Paucīs annīs.	<i>Within a few years.</i>

125. Ablative of Cause. — Cause may be expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.

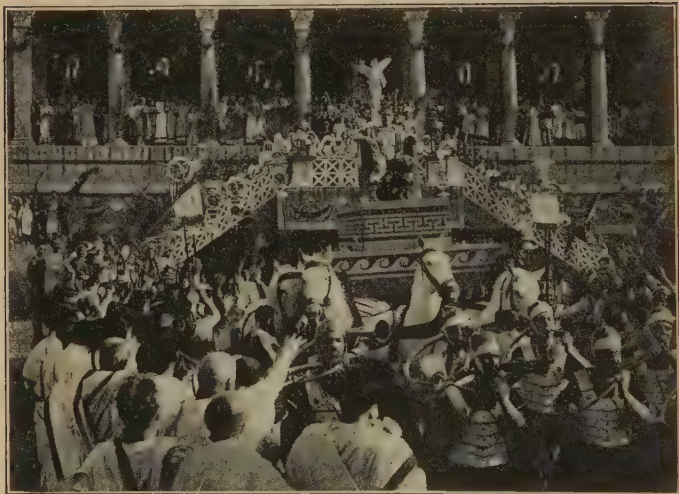
Inopiā auxiliī victī sumus. *We were defeated for lack of help.*

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
adven'tus, -ūs, m.	arrival	advent
exer'citus, -ūs, m.	army	exercise
frūc'tus, -ūs, m.	fruit, reward	fructify
por'tus, -ūs, m.	port, harbor	
senā'tus, -ūs, m.	senate	
do'mus, -ūs, f.	house	domestic, domicile
ma'nus, -ūs, f.	hand, band (of men)	manual, manufacture
cor'nū, -ūs, n.	horn, wing (of an army)	cornet, cornucopia
aes'tās, -ā'tis, f.	summer	
auxi'lium, -i'lī, n.	help	auxiliary
cer'vus, -ī, m.	stag	cervine
hi'ems, -emis, f.	winter	
ino'pia, -ae, f.	lack	
nox, noc'tis, f.	night	nocturnal, nocturne
dex'ter, -tra, -trum	right (side)	dexterous, dexterity
sinis'ter, -tra, -trum	left	sinister
pel'lō, -ere, pe'pulī, pul'sus	drive, defeat	pulse, repel, repulse

Note. **Domus** is of the fourth declension, but it also has the following forms of the second :

domī — genitive	} singular
domō — ablative	
domōs — accusative plural	



CORNUA.

A celebration in which many horns furnished the music.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and translate :

pellunt, commovēbāmus, dēfendēt, cūstōdiam, pulsus es, commovēmur, dēfenditur, cūstōdiminī, ēreptum erat, pepulērunt, dedistis, timēbunt.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Brevī tempore hostēs exercitum Rōmānum pepulērunt.
2. Adventū Caesaris signum proelī in dextrō cornū datur.

3. Sinistrum cornu inopiā auxili pulsum est.

4. Cervī cornibus sē dēfendunt; dicō cervōs cornibus sē dēfendere.

5. Hieme et aestāte multitudō nāvium in portibus Ītalīae erat.

6. Senātus populusque Rōmānus inopiā frūmentī et frūctuum commōtī sunt.

7. Fugā militum sociōrum Rōmānī ab hostibus pulsī sunt.

8. Nocte canis fīdus domum cūstōdit; scīmus canēs fīdōs domōs (*or* domūs) cūstōdīre.

9. Cassius amīcum suum ē manibus praemium ēripere vīdit.

(c) Indicate in (b) all nouns of the fourth declension, and explain each case.

(d) Point out in (b) the ablatives of cause and the ablatives of time.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline (1) in the singular: **adventus noster**; (2) in both numbers: **manus parva**, **fructus bonus**, **cornū longum**.

(b) Replace (1) the singular by the plural:

1. Puella manum parvam habet. 2. Nāvis in portū est.
3. Domus cōsulis incēnsa est. 4. Exercitum dūcō.

(2) the plural by the singular:

1. Canēs domōs cūstōdiunt. 2. Prīncipēs exercituum fortēs sunt.
3. Sunt portūs magnī in Ītaliā. 4. Frūctūs bonōs habēmus.

(c) Review. Supply the proper endings:

1. In dext— corn— erāmus. 2. Multōs frūct— habētis.
3. Cervus corn— sē dēfendit. 4. Cassius prīnceps in sinist— corn— erat.
5. Cervī corn— ācerrim— habent.

(d) Review. Give the second persons singular and plural of all the tenses you know of :

1. *Exercitum hostium pellere.* 2. *Ā dextrō cornū pellī.*



NĀVIS IN PORTŪ EST.

(e) Review. Replace the active voice by the passive :

1. *Cassius sinistrum cornū dūcit.* 2. *Exercitus noster hostēs pepulit.* 3. *Canis domum cūstōdiēbat.* 4. *Puerī mihi fructūs dant.* 5. *Militēs amicum ē manibus meis ēripiunt.*

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

1. Stags have pointed horns; we know that stags have pointed horns.

2. Within a few years there were many harbors in Italy; I think that there are many harbors in Italy.

3. The lack of fruit (plural) and of other foods that year alarmed the Roman Senate and people; we hear that the lack of fruit and other foods alarms the Roman Senate.

4. (Because of) the difficult roads our right wing advanced slowly.

5. We defeated the left wing of the enemy in a short time.

6. The enemy fought impetuously but was defeated by the Roman army for lack of help.

7. On your arrival the victory will be announced to the Roman Senate and people.

8. Faithful dogs every night watch their masters' houses, winter and summer.

READING LESSON

I. HORĀTIUS COCLES (Horatius the One-eyed)

(A. C. 507; Annō U. C. 247)

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus et ultimus rēx Rōmae, expulsus erat. Sociōs suōs convocāvit et Rōmānīs bellum indixit.

Porsenna, rēx Etruscōrum, auxilium eī dedit et cum magnō exercitū contrā Rōmānōs prōcessit. Prīmō impetū montem Iāniculum cēpit. Metus magnus Rōmānōs invāsīt.

Eō tempore in flūmine Tiberī pōns ligneus, dictus Pōns Sublicius, erat. Hic pōns ab Horātiō Cocclite et aliis militibus cūstōdiēbātur. Horātiō cognōmen Cocclitis datum erat, quod in aliō proeliō oculum amiserat.

Hostēs ad Pontem Sublicium prōcessērunt. Horātius sōlus prō ponte stetit et impetum hostium sustinuit. Exercitūs Tarquinī et Porsennae cōspectū tantae virtūtis obstupēfacti sunt.

Tandem pōns ā tergō ruptus est. Tum Horātius armātus in Tiberim dēsiliuit et integer ad Rōmānōs trānāvit.

Rōma servāta est. Grāta propter tantam virtūtem cīvītās fuit; itaque Horātiō ager magnus datus est. Statua eius quoque in forō posita est.

Virtūtem huius virī laudāre dēbēmus.

II. T. MĀNLIUS TORQUĀTUS

(A. C. 361; Annō U. C. 393)

Eō tempore Gallī trāns Aniēnem flūmen castra posuērunt. Rōmānī in alterā ripā flūminis cōstitēbant. Pōns in mediō flūmine erat.

Tunc Gallus, eximiā corporis magnitudīne, in vacuum pontem prōcessit et maximā vōce clāmāvit, “Ad pugnam fortissimum militem Rōmānum vocō.”

Diū in exercitū Rōmānō silentium fuit. Tunc T. Mānlius ex statīōne ad imperātōrem pergit. “Sī tū permittis,” inquit, “cum illā bēluā pugnābō.” Imperātōr, “Macte virtūte,” inquit, “estō; perge et nōmen Rōmānum invictum praestā.”

Gallus illum expectābat. Ubi signum proelī eīs datum est, Mānlius inter scūtum et corpus Gallī sēsē insinuāvit atque ūnō ictū ventrem interfōdit. Ipse torquem Gallī detrāxit, quem cruōre respersum collō suō circumdedit.

Metus cum admirātiōne Gallōs dēfixerat; Rōmānī alacrēs, laudantēs militem suum, ad imperātōrem eum perdūxērunt. Mānlius inde cognōmen Torquātī accēpit.

COLLATERAL READING

THE SENATE

Under the kings, the patrician government had three parts, — king, Senate, and Assembly. . . . The Senate seems to have been originally a council of the chiefs of the 300 clans (or *gentes*) that made up the three tribes (Latin, Sabine, Etruscan). It could *advise* the king, and it could *veto* any change in old custom. . . .

After the kings were expelled, the Senate gained power. Its relation to a one-year consul was very different from its old relation to a life-king. . . . Its advice became more and more like a command, until it grew to be the real "government."

. . . In 287, after a sharp clash, *the people took from the Senate its power to veto the plebiscites of the Assembly.*



CICERO DENOUNCING CATILINE IN THE SENATE.

Indirectly, too, the people now elected even the Senate. The censors, in filling vacancies in that body, were required first to appoint those who had held curule offices, and commonly it left them little choice.

None the less the Senate was really the guiding force in the government. It contained the wisdom and experience of Rome. . . . No consul would think of bringing a law before the people without the previous approval of the Senate (so that indirectly that body, rather than the Assembly, had become the real legislature). No officer could draw money

from the treasury without the Senate's consent. It declared and managed wars. It received ambassadors and made alliances. And certainly, for over a hundred years, by its sagacity and energy, this "assembly of kings" justified its usurpation, earning Mommsen's epithet, — the foremost political corporation of all time.

LESSON LXIII

FIFTH DECLENSION

126. The Fifth Declension. — Nouns ending in *-ēs*, genitive singular *-ēī*, belong to the fifth declension. They are feminine, except *diēs*, *day*, which is usually masculine in the singular and always in the plural. They are declined on the following models :

	<i>diēs</i> , m. or f., <i>day</i>	<i>rēs</i> , f., <i>thing, affair</i>	
Base :	<i>di-</i>	Base :	<i>r-</i>
SINGULAR			
			<i>Endings</i>
Nom. :	<i>di'ēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
Gen. :	<i>diē'ī</i>	<i>re'ī</i>	<i>-ēī</i>
Dat. :	<i>diē'ī</i>	<i>re'ī</i>	<i>-ēī</i>
Acc. :	<i>di'em</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>-em</i>
Abl. :	<i>di'ē</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>-ē</i>
PLURAL			
Nom. :	<i>di'ēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
Gen. :	<i>diē'rum</i>	<i>rē'rum</i>	<i>-ērum</i>
Dat. :	<i>diē'bus</i>	<i>rē'bus</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>
Acc. :	<i>di'ēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
Abl. :	<i>diē'bus</i>	<i>rē'bus</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>

Note. Only *diēs*, *day*, and *rēs*, *thing*, are fully declined in both numbers. Most other words are found only in the singular. Note that *rēs* has a short *ē* in the genitive and dative singular, because it is preceded by a consonant.

127. Accusative of Duration of Time, and Extent of Space. — Duration of time (answering the question

how long?) and extent of space (answering the question *how far?*) are both expressed by the accusative without a preposition.

Sex annōs labōrāvit. *He worked for six years.*

Vāllum sex pedēs altum erat. *The rampart was six feet high.*

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
a'ciēs, -ē'ī, f.	<i>line of battle</i>	
di'ēs, -ē'ī, m. or f.	<i>day</i>	diurnal
rēs, re'ī, f.	<i>thing</i>	republic
rēs militā'ris	<i>military matters, warfare</i>	
rēs no'vae (plur.)	<i>revolution</i>	
rēs pū'blica	<i>republic, state</i>	
spēs, spe'ī, ¹ f.	<i>hope</i>	desperate
pēs, pe'dis, m.	<i>foot</i>	pedal, impede
prae'da, -ae, f.	<i>plunder</i>	predacious, predatory
scien'tia, -ae, f.	<i>science, knowledge</i>	
militā'ris, -e	<i>military</i>	militant, militarist
pos'terus, ² -a, -um	<i>next</i>	posterior, posterity
quīnquāgintā (indeclinable)	<i>fifty</i>	
vīgin'tī (indeclinable)	<i>twenty</i>	
exspec'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus	<i>expect, await</i>	
in'struō, -u'ere, in- strū'xī, in'strūctus	<i>draw up</i>	instruct, instruction

¹ See § 126, note. ² Not used in the singular nominative masculine.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Identify and translate :

instrūxērunt, expectant, faciunt, expectābimus, instrūcti estis, fēcerās, instruunt, expectātus es, instruēbam, faciētis.

(b) Pronounce carefully and translate :

1. Brevi tempore Caesar aciem instrūxit.
2. Posterō diē hostēs castra mōvērunt.
3. Pōns quinquāgintā pedēs longus erat.
4. Omnem spem salūtis in virtūte, nōn in fugā, pōnēmus.
5. Hieme diēs brevēs, longi aestāte sunt.
6. Rēs publica multōs annōs in magnō periculō fuit.
7. Caesar vīginti diēs iter fēcit.
8. Scientiam magnam rei militāris habēbat.
9. Spē praedae adducti iter per prōvinciam per vim fēcerant.
10. Exercitus Rōmānus ā Germānīs paucōrum diērum iter aberat.
11. Paucōs annōs Rōmāni sociōs frūmentō et cēteris rēbus iūvērunt.
12. Rēs novae ab omnibus cīvibus expectābantur.

(c) In (b) point out (1) all the nouns of the fifth declension, and explain each case ; (2) the accusatives of duration of time and the ablatives of time.

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline (1) in the singular : **omnis spēs, rēs publica, brevis diēs, prima aciēs** (*the front line*) ;

(2) in the plural : **rēs novae, vīginti diēs.**

(b) Supply (1) the proper singular endings :

1. Aci— instrūcta est.
2. Sp— salūtis in fugā posuērunt.
3. Salūs re— publicae in manibus cīvium bonōrum

erat. 4. Re— pūblicam in periculō vidēmus. 5. Scien-
tiam re— mīlitāris nōn habeo.

(2) the proper plural endings :

1. Omnēs rē— (direct object) parāmus. 2. Mult—
ann— amīcum pecūniā et cēterīs rē— iūvī. 3. Diē—
hieme brevēs sunt. 4. Militēs vīgintī diē— iter fēcērunt.

(c) Give the present, perfect, and future of :

1. **Aciem instruere.** 2. **Spē praedae addūcī.**

(d) 1. Review. Put

(1) in the singular : **In virtūte, nōn in fugā, spem salūtis
posuimus.**

(2) in the plural : **Spē praedae nōn adductus sum.**

(3) in the present : **Aciem instrūxerat.**

(4) in the perfect : **Reī pūblīcae vītā dat.**

(5) in the past : **Rēs novās expectāvērunt.**

(6) in the future : **Iter quīnquāgintā diēs fēcī.**

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

1. Warfare is a science; they say that warfare is a science.

2. The line of battle is drawn up in a short time; it is announced that the line of battle is being drawn up.

3. The hope of a reward often prompts children; I think that the hope of a reward often prompts children.

4. Good soldiers are never prompted by the hope of plunder; we know that good soldiers are never prompted by the hope of plunder.

5. All men know that days are short in winter and long in summer.

6. The cottages were fifty feet long and twenty feet wide.

7. The next day we took up arms.

8. For many years they gave (to) their friends money and all the other things.

9. A revolution is expected within a few days; the safety of the republic is in our hands.

10. We have been many days in the territory of the enemy.

11. We shall make the journey in twenty days.



THE RHINE.

READING LESSON

PROELIUM ĀCRE CUM ARIOVISTŌ, RĒGE GERMĀNŌRUM
(A Desperate Battle with Ariovistus, King of the Germans)

Caesar ā dextrō cornū proelium commisit. Signum datum est et Rōmānī ācriter in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. Tum hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt, et, reiectis pilis,¹ cominus gladiis pugnātum est.²

¹ reiectis pilis: ablative absolute, see footnote 1, p. 315.

² pugnātum est: neuter form; literally, *it was fought*; freely, *they fought*.

Germānī celeriter ex cōsuētūdine suā phalangem fēcērunt et impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Complūrēs nostrī in phalangem insiluērunt, et scūta manibus revellērunt et dēsuper Germānōs vulnerāvērunt.

Hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta est, sed ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine militum Germānī nostram aciem premēbant. P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātum nostrum dūcēbat, periculum animadvertit et tertiam aciem nostrīs subsidiō ¹ mīsīt.

Ita proelium restitūtum est atque hostēs terga vertērunt, neque fugere dēstitērunt priusquam ad flūmen Rhēnum circiter quīndecim milia ² passuum ex eō locō pervēnērunt.

Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfisī trānāre contendērunt, aut lintribus salūtem repperērunt. Ariovistus nāviculā profūgit; equitēs nostrī reliquōs omnēs interfēcērunt. Duae uxōrēs Ariovistī in eā fugā periērunt. — After Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō*, I, 52, 53.

COLLATERAL READING

ROMAN DAILY LIFE

In the early period, Romans had hardly any other occupation than farming and war. The daily life we are going to describe is supposed to take place towards the end of the Republic or the beginning of the Empire.

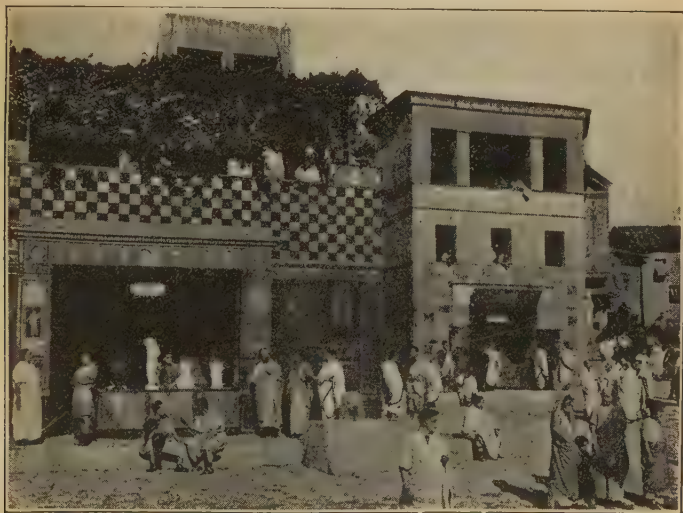
At daybreak, at 4 o'clock in summer, at 6 in winter, the clients ³ would fill the hall (*ātrium*) to pay their respects to the patron, to talk business with him, to ask his advice, and at a later period, to receive the *sportula* (a little basket containing food or money). As soon as his clients had left him,

¹ Both *nostrīs* and *subsidiō* are in the dative; *nostrīs* is the indirect object, and *subsidiō* is the dative of purpose or end, *for help*.

² *milia*: extent of space is expressed by the accusative. See § 127.

³ A client was one "who put himself under the protection of a man of distinction and influence, who was called his patron."

the master of the house had his breakfast, composed of bread dipped in wine, bread and honey, olives, dates, or cheese. Then he went out, followed or not by his clients, to pay visits of all kinds to important people, relatives, etc., to attend to his work, to listen to some public recitation, or to see a gladiatorial show or a wild beast fight in the amphitheater, which lasted the whole day.



CLIENTS LOITERING ABOUT THE STREETS.

If the clients had nothing to do, they loitered in the forum, on the *via Sacra*, in the basilicas,¹ under the porticoes which surrounded the *Campus Mārtius* (a public promenade lined with superb buildings), or in the public gardens and on the Appian Way where they might admire fine teams, and showy carriages and litters. People of the lower class filled the inns.

The streets of Rome were crowded till noon, which was

¹ A basilica was a public building used for a merchants' exchange and for the courts.

luncheon time, as with us. The luncheon consisted of fish, vegetables, and fruit, and was followed by the siesta. Then came the hour for bathing. Common people went to the public baths, which were very numerous; rich people had their own bathrooms.

The Romans of the earlier period had dinner at noon; it consisted then of vegetables and the national dish, the *puls* (porridge), which for a very long time supplied the place of bread. Later, on account of business pressure, the dinner took place at two or three instead of at twelve.

On entering the dining room (*triclinium*), the guests took off their sandals and their togas, and stretched out on couches, with the left elbow resting on a cushion. Dining rooms were very small, for the ancients rarely feasted more than nine persons at a time. Around the table were three couches on which were laid soft cushions. Table cloths were not used before the second century of the Christian era, but each guest had a napkin. There were neither forks nor knives; the guests had to use their fingers.

The meal, which lasted very long, consisted of side dishes (*gustātiō*), various courses (*cēna prīma, secunda, tertia*, etc.) and a dessert of cakes and fruit (*mēnsae secundae*). Before the dessert there was offered the sacrifice of a cake mixed with salt to the Lares (or Penates, the household gods). Toward the close of the dinner, the guests drank wine diluted with water. — After *Rome et les Romains*, by Bornecque and Mornet.

LESSON LXIV

REVIEW

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(a) Review the declensions of **is**, **ea**, **id**, § 69; **hic**, **haec**, **hoc**, § 116; **ille**, **illa**, **illud**, § 118; **ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, § 119.

(b) Review the declensions of **exercitus** and **cornū**, § 123; and of **diēs**, § 126.

(c) Translate into English the following words:

1. *Nouns*

A. FIRST DECLENSION

inopia	littera	praeda	scientia
---------------	----------------	---------------	-----------------

B. SECOND DECLENSION

auxilium	cervus
-----------------	---------------

C. THIRD DECLENSION

aestās	nāvis	pēs	salūs
hiems	nox	pōns	dux

D. FOURTH DECLENSION

adventus	domus	frūctus	portus
cornū	exercitus	manus	senātus

E. FIFTH DECLENSION

aciēs	diēs	rēs	spēs
--------------	-------------	------------	-------------

F. IDIOMS

rēs militāris

rēs novae

rēs pūblica

2. *Adjectives*

A. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

dexter

medius

posterus

sinister

B. THIRD DECLENSION

militāris

trīstis

turpis

3. *Adjectives and Pronouns*hic, haec, hoc
quīnquāgintāille, illa, illud
quī, quae, quodipse, ipsa, ipsum
vīginti4. *Verbs*

A. FIRST CONJUGATION

expectāre

B. SECOND CONJUGATION

merēre

prohibēre

C. THIRD CONJUGATION

addūcere
incolereīnstruere
pellerevehere
legere5. *Other Parts of Speech*

aut . . . aut . . .

hodiē

quod

(d) Divide all the words in (c) into syllables, pointing out which one must be accented, and tell why.

(e) Point out in (c) 1: (1) the masculine nouns; (2) the feminine nouns; (3) the neuter nouns.

(f) Give (1) the base of all the nouns in (c) 1; (2) their genitives, singular and plural.

(g) Give (1) the base of all the adjectives in (c) 2; (2) their feminine and neuter forms, nominative singular; (3) their genitives, singular and plural; (4) the comparatives and superlatives, nominative singular, masculine, feminine, and neuter, of **trīstis** and **turpis**.

(h) Answer the following questions and illustrate:

1. How can you tell whether a noun ending in **-us** belongs to the second or the fourth declension?

2. What is the ending of the nominative singular of neuter nouns of the fourth declension?

3. What endings of the fourth declension are like (a) those of the second; (b) those of the third?

4. What are the peculiarities of the noun **domus**?

5. What are the endings of the nominative and genitive singular of nouns of the fifth declension?

6. What is the gender of the nouns of the fifth declension?

7. What endings of the fifth declension are like those of the third? (Compare with **cōsul** and **urbs**, § 105.)

8. Make a direct statement in English.

9. Change it into indirect discourse.

10. Make a direct quotation in English.

11. Change it into indirect discourse.

12. In what mood do you put a Latin verb in the indirect discourse if it comes after such verbs as *say, think, know, perceive*?

13. In what case do you put the subject of such a verb?

14. By what cases do you express (a) time at which or within which; (b) cause; (c) duration of time; (d) extent of space?

II. Oral and Written.

(a) Decline (1) in the singular: **senātus ipse**; **aciēs ipsa**;

(2) in both numbers : **hic fructus ; illa manus ; illud cornū ;**

(3) in the plural : **cīvēs ipsī ; hae rēs novae.**

(b) Change the indirect discourse into direct statements by dropping the first verb and putting the second in the proper mood :

1. Putō praedam magnam esse. 2. Dīcunt senātum populumque Rōmānum pācem petere. 3. Scīmus cornua cervōrum ācerrima esse. 4. Audīmus ā duce aciem instrui et signum proelī dari.

(c) Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels :

1. *Nouns*

army	help	night	senate
arrival	hope	plunder	ship
bridge	horn	port	stag
day	house	republic	summer
foot	knowledge	revolution	thing
fruit	lack	safety	wing (army)
hand	line of battle	leader	winter
harbor	military matters	letter	warfare

2. *Adjectives and Pronouns*

fifty	right	shameful	this one
left	sad	twenty	that
military	—self	this	that one
next	who	which	what

3. *Verbs*

to carry	to drive	to keep off	to prompt
to defeat	to expect	to live in	to sail
to draw up	to inhabit	to prevent	to read

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

either . . . or . . . because to-day

(d) Derivation. (1) From what Latin words are the following English words derived?

domestic, instruct, manual, pedal, repulse, colony, prohibition, pontiff, navigation, vehicle, diurnal, nocturnal.

(2) Make a list of English derivatives of **instruere**, according to Type I (see p. 178); of **pellere**, according to Type II; and of **vehere**, according to Type III.

LESSON LXV

READING LESSON

I. CN. MĀRTIUS CORIOLĀNUS

(A. C. 491; Annō U. C. 263)

Cn. Mārtius Coriolānus iuvenis gentis patriciae erat. Iniūstē damnātus, ad Volscōs concessit eōsque adversus Rōmānōs concitāvit. Imperātor ā Volscīs factus, ad quārtum ab urbe lapidem castra posuit et agrum Rōmānum vāstāvit. Rōma in maximō periculō erat.

Lēgātī ad Coriolānum missī sunt sed in castra nōn receptī sunt. Sacerdōtēs supplicēs ad illum iērunť, sed animum illius nōn flexērunt. Stupēbat senātus; trepidābat populus; metus maximus erat; mulierēs ac virī pariter mortem imminentem exspectābant.

Tum Veturia, Coriolānī māter, et Volumnia uxor cum duōbus parvīs filiīs castra illius petīvērunt. Ubi mātrem adspexit, Coriolānus, "Tū, māter," inquit, "īram meam vīcistī; tuīs precibus patriae iniūriam condōnō."

Ille castra mōvit et exercitum ex agrō Rōmānō abdūxit. Coriolānus postea ā Volscīs, ut prōditor, occisus est.

Parentēs amāre et colere dēbēmus.

II. L. QUĪNCTIUS CINCINNĀTUS

(A. C. 458; Annō U. C. 296)

Aequī¹ cōnsulem Minucium atque exercitum eius circumsessōs tenēbant. Hoc ubi Rōmānīs nūntiātum est, metus maximus fuit. Senātus dictātōrem creāre voluit. L. Quīnc-

¹ Aequī: the *Aequi*, a warlike people of Latium.

tium Cincinnātum omnium cōsēnsū dictātor creātus est. Ille, spēs ūnica rei pūblicae Rōmānae, trāns Tiberim agrum parvum colēbat.

Quīnctius igitur Rōmam¹ vēnit et togā purpureā indūtus est. Posterō diē hostēs vicit et exercitum Rōmānum libēravit. In urbem triumphāns rediit.

Sextō decimō diē, dictātūrā quam in sex mēnsēs accēperat sē abdicāvit et ad bovēs agricola quī rem pūblicam servāverat, rediit. Quam magnum exemplum probitātis et modestiae!

III. VIRGINIA

(A. C. 449; Annō U. C. 305)

Annō trecentēsimō ab urbe conditā, decemvirī creāti sunt. Ūnus ex eīs, Appius Claudius, pessimus et prāvissimus fuit. Quondam Virginiam, virginem plēbēiam pulcherrimam, vīdit et eam in numerō servārū habēre voluit.

Pater huius puellae, L. Virginius, quī centuriō erat, cōram populō ab laniō cultrum arripuit et pectus Virginiae trānsfixit, exclāmāns, “Accipe, mea cārissima filia, libertātem tuam et mortem.” Tum Appiō cultrum cruentum ostendit et dīxit, “Iūrō per hunc sanguinem innocentem, Appi; iniūriam filiae cārissimae meae vindicābō.”

Exercitus ā patre Virginiae concitātus montem Aventinum occupāvit; decem tribūnōs militum creāvit; decemvirōs omnēs aut morte aut exsiliō pūnivit; ipse Appius Claudius in carcere occīsus est.

IV. M. ATILIUS RĒGULUS

(A. C. 267; Annō A. C. 487)

M. Atilius Rēgulus ūnus ex ducibus celeberrimīs et civibus probissimīs Rōmae fuit.

¹ The preposition *ad* is omitted before names of towns. (See footnote 1, page 324.)

Ille, in proeliō ā Poenīs captus, in carcerem coniectus est. Quattuor post annōs, Poenī cum Rōmānīs captīvōs permūtāre et pācem facere voluērunt. Rēgulum Rōmam¹ lēgātum misērunt. Ille Carthāginem¹ redire dēbēbat.

Rēgulus Rōmānīs bellum suāsīt et negāvit esse ūtile captīvōs permūtārī. Carthāginem rediit ubi crūdelissimīs suppliciīs necātus est.

Fidem servāre semper dēbēmus.

V. COMMON WORDS, PHRASES, AND PROVERBS²

LATIN	A	ENGLISH
Ab ūnō disce omnēs		<i>From one learn (understand) all</i>
Ad hoc		<i>To this effect or purpose</i>
Ad valōrem		<i>According to value</i>
Age quod agis		<i>Get at your work</i>
Ālea iacta est		<i>The die is cast (See p. 234.)</i>
Alma māter		<i>Foster mother (name given by graduates to their college or university)</i>
Alter ego		<i>Another self, bosom friend</i>
Ante merīdiem (abbreviated A.M.)		<i>Before noon</i>
Aurea mediocritās		<i>The golden mean, that is, neither extreme</i>
Aut Caesar aut nūllus		<i>(To be) either Caesar or nobody</i>
B		
Bis dat quī citō dat		<i>He gives twice who gives quickly</i>
Bonā fidē		<i>In good faith</i>

¹ See footnote, p. 407.

² This list is composed of adjectives of the first and second declensions, and of the third; of personal pronouns; of demonstrative adjectives and pronouns; of adverbs; of nouns of the five declensions, and verbs of the four conjugations.

C

LATIN

ENGLISH

Carpe diem

Make use of the day, seize the opportunity

Cāsus belli

A cause for war

Contrā bonōs mōrēs

Contrary to good customs

Corpus dēlictī

The essential part of the offense

Cum grānō salis

With a grain of salt

D

Dē iūre

By right of law

Dē propriō mōtū

Of one's own motion, spontaneously

Diem perdidī

"I have lost a day" (Emperor Titus' exclamation because he had failed to perform a good deed during the day)

Diēs irae

The day of wrath (the first words of a well-known hymn)

Dīvide et imperā

Divide and rule (the motto of Louis XI, king of France)

Dominus vōbiscum

(May) the Lord be with you

Dūra lēx, sed lēx

Harsh law, but (it is) the law

Dum spirō, spērō

While I breathe, I hope (part of the motto of South Carolina)

E

Ecce homō!

Behold the man! (especially applied to paintings of Jesus Christ, wearing a crown of thorns)

Ē plūribus ūnum

Out of many, one (the motto of the United States)

LATIN

ENGLISH

Et tū, Brūte

*And you, too, Brutus (See
p. 234.)*

Ex tempore

Without preparation, offhand

F

Fidēs Pūnica

Punic faith, treachery

H

Hōc tempore

At this time

Hodiē mihi, crās tibi

*To-day my turn, to-morrow
yours (in old epitaphs)*

I

In articulō mortis

At the point of death

In hōc signō vincēs

*By this sign (i.e., the cross)
thou shalt conquer (the
motto of the Emperor Con-
stantine)*

In mediās rēs

Into the midst of things

In pāce

In peace

In rē

In the matter of, concerning

In statū quō

In the condition at the time

In tōtō

Entirely, completely

Inter alia

Among other things

Inter nōs

Between ourselves

Ipsō factō

By the fact itself

Iūre et factō

By right and in fact

Iūs divīnum

Divine law

LATIN	L	ENGLISH
Lapsus calamī		<i>A slip of the pen</i>
Lapsus linguae		<i>A slip of the tongue</i>
Lapsus memoriae		<i>A slip of the memory</i>
Lūx et lēx		<i>Light and law</i> (the motto of the University of North Dakota)
Lūx et vērītās		<i>Light and truth</i> (the motto of Yale University)
	M	
Magnum opus		<i>The chief work of an author</i>
Malā fidē		<i>In bad faith, treacherously</i>
Mēns sāna in corpore sānō		<i>A sound mind in a sound body</i>
	N	
Nūlla diēs sine lineā		<i>Not a day without a line, that is, without something done</i>
	O	
Ōrā prō nōbīs		<i>Pray for us</i>
Ō tempora! ō mōres!		<i>O the times! O the customs!</i>
Ōtium cum dignitāte		<i>Ease with dignity</i>
	P	
Parī passū		<i>At equal pace, evenly</i>
Pater noster		<i>Our Father</i> (the Lord's prayer)
Pāx vōbiscum		<i>Peace (be) with you</i>
Per capita		<i>For each person, apiece</i>
Per diem		<i>By the day</i>
Per sē		<i>By itself, intrinsically</i>
Plēnō iūre		<i>With full power</i>
Post merīdiem (abbreviated P.M.)		<i>After noon</i>
Post mortem		<i>After death</i>
Primā faciē		<i>On the first view</i>
Prō tempore		<i>For the time being, temporarily</i>

Q

LATIN

ENGLISH

Quī bene amat bene castigat	<i>He who loves well, chastises well</i>
Quid prō quō	<i>One thing for another, an equivalent</i>
Quot hominēs, tot sententiae	<i>As many opinions as men, every</i>
or	<i>man in his own humor</i>
Quot capita, tot sēnsūs	

R

Repetitiō est māter studiōrum	<i>Repetition is the mother of learning</i>
-------------------------------	---

S

Salūs populī suprēma est lēx	<i>The welfare of the people is the supreme law (the motto of the State of Missouri)</i>
Salvē !	<i>Hail!</i>
Sic vōs nōn vōbīs	<i>Thus you (labor) not for yourselves (See page 291.)</i>
Sic trānsit glōria mundi	<i>So passes away the glory of the world</i>
Sine diē	<i>Indefinitely</i>
Sine quā nōn	<i>Something indispensable</i>
Sub iūdice	<i>Under consideration</i>
Suī generis	<i>Of its own kind, unique</i>
Suum cuique	<i>To each his own</i>

T

Tē Deum laudāmus	<i>We praise thee, O God (the first words of a well-known Latin hymn)</i>
------------------	---

U

Ūnā vōce	<i>With one voice, unanimously</i>
----------	------------------------------------

V

LATIN	ENGLISH
Vāde mēcum	<i>Go with me, a name for an indispensable aid, especially a book</i>
Valē	<i>Farewell</i>
Vīvā vōce	<i>By word of mouth, orally</i>
Vīve valēque	<i>Live and be well, farewell</i>
Vōx populī, vōx Deī	<i>The voice of the people is the voice of God</i>

EXERCISE

(a) One of the pupils reads the preceding Latin phrases, and his classmates, having previously closed their books, translate them.

(b) Another reads the English expressions, and the others render them into Latin.

ADDITIONAL READING LESSONS¹

HISTORIA RŌMĀNA

ANTĪQUISSIMĪ ĪTALIAE RĒGĒS (THE EARLIEST KINGS OF ITALY)

Antīquissimīs temporibus Sāturnus, deus agricultūrae, in Ītaliā vēnit. Ibi in monte Iāniculō arcem condidit, eamque Sāturniam appellāvit. Hic Ītalōs prīmus agricultūram docuit.²

Posteā Lātīnus in illīs regiōnibus rēgnāvit. Eō tempore Trōia, nōtissima Asiae urbs, ā Graecīs dēlēta est. Hinc Aenēās, Anchīsae filius, cum multīs Trōiānīs aufūgit et in Ītaliā pervēnit. Lātīnus rēx eī filiam in mātirimōnium dedit. Aenēās urbem condidit quam in honōrem uxōris Lāvīnium vocāvit.

RĒGĒS ALBAE LONGAE (THE KINGS OF ALBA LONGA)

Post Aenēae mortem, Ascanius, eius filius, rēgnum accēpit. Hic sēdem rēgnī in alium locum trānstulit, urbem in monte Albānō condidit, eamque Albam Longam appellāvit.

Ūnus ex eius posterīs, Silvius Procās, rēx Albānōrum, duōs filiōs, Numitōrem et Amūlium, reliquit. Numitor paterna bona, Amūlius rēgnum obtinuit.

RŌMULUS ET REMUS

Amūlius frātris filium in insidiās indūxit et interfēcit. Rheam Silviam, Numitōris filiam mātremque Rōmulī et

¹ These Reading Lessons can be translated easily by students who have gone through Lesson L.

² *docēre* takes two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.

Remī, in vincula coniēcit, puerōsque in Tiberim flūmen abicī¹ iussit.

Forte Tiberis sē effudērat, et aqua refluēns puerōs in sicco reliquit. Lupa eōs invēnit et aluit. Postea Faustulus pāstor puerōs in lupae spēluncā repperit et uxōrī dedit.

RŌMA CONDITA EST (ROME IS FOUNDED, 753 B.C.)²

Sic Rōmulus et Remus pueritiam inter pāstōrēs trānsēgērunt. Adulēscentēs Amūlium interfēcērunt et Numitōrī avō rēgnum restituērunt. Tum urbem parvam in monte Palātīnō condidērunt, quam Rōmulus ā suō nōmine Rōmam vocāvit. Dum, frātrem irrīdēns, moenia novae urbis trānsiit,³ Remus ā Rōmulō occīsus est.

VIRGINĒS SABĪNAE RAPTAE SUNT (THE SABINE GIRLS ARE CARRIED OFF)

Rōmulus cīvium numerum augēre voluit. Multitūdinem vīcīnōrum in novam urbem recēpit; centum (100)⁴ ex senīōribus ēlēgit, quōs senātōrēs propter senectūtem nōmināvit, et populum in trīgintā (30) cūriās distribuit.

Sed Rōmulus ipse et cīvēs novae urbis uxōrēs nōn habēbant. Itaque fēstum Neptūnī et lūdōs instituit et vīcīnōs populōs ad spectāculum lūdōrum invītāvit. Multī ex finitimīs populīs cum mulieribus et liberīs Rōmam⁵ vērunt. Dum hī lūdōs spectant, Rōmānī virginēs eōrum rapuerunt.

Populī illī quōrum virginēs raptae erant Rōmānīs bellum indīxērunt, sed Rōmulus eōs multis pugnīs vīcit. Annō rēgnī trīcēsīmō septīmō (37th), inter magnam tempestātem, Rōmulus repente oculis hominum subductus est.

¹ See § 117.

² In titles Latin perfect is better replaced by English present.

³ See footnote, page 212.

⁴ Figures in parentheses are translation of preceding Latin numbers.

⁵ See footnote, page 407.

NUMA POMPILIUS, SECUNDUS RĒX RŌMĀNŌRUM (NUMA POMPILIUS, THE SECOND KING OF THE ROMANS, 715 B.C.)

Posteā, Numa Pompilius, ūnus ex Sabīnīs, rēx creātus est. Hic nūllum bellum gessit, sed nōn minus quam Rōmulus urbī prōfuit. Nam Rōmānīs lēgēs dedit mōrēsque cōstituit. Illī proeliōrum cōsuētūdine iam latrōnēs et sēmi-barbarī putābantur. Annum in decem mēnsēs dīvisit, et multa templa aedificāvit. Sē omnia quae faciēbat cōsiliō nymphae Ēgeriae, uxōris suae, facere¹ dicēbat.

TULLUS HOSTĪLIUS TERTIUS RĒX RŌMĀNŌRUM (TULLUS HOSTILIUS, THE THIRD KING OF THE ROMANS, 672 B.C.)

Post Numae mortem, Tullus Hostilius imperium suscēpit. Hic Albānīs bellum indixit et Albam Longam dēlēvit. Vēientes quoque superāvit. Montem Caelium urbī adiēcit. Trīgintā duōs (32) annōs rēgnāvit. Fulmine ictus cum domō suā ārsit.

ANCUS MĀRTIUS, QUĀRTUS RĒX RŌMĀNŌRUM (ANCUS MARTIUS, THE FOURTH KING OF THE ROMANS, 640 B.C.)

Post Tullum Hostilium Ancus Mārtius, Numae Pompili nepōs, rēx creātus est. Contrā Latīnōs pugnāvit. Carcerem prīmus aedificāvit. Aventinum Iāniculumque montēs urbī adiēcit, et mūrō lapideō eam circumdedit. Ad Tiberis flūminis ōstia urbem condidit, Ōstiamque vocāvit. Vicēsīmō quārtō (24th) imperī annō, morbō obiit.

LŪCIUS TARQUINIUS PRĪSCUS, QUĪNTUS RĒX RŌMĀNŌRUM (LUCIUS TARQUIN, THE ELDER, THE FIFTH KING OF THE ROMANS, 616 B.C.)

Deinde Lūcius Tarquinius Prīscus, quī nōmen ā Tarquiniīs, antiquissimā Etrūriae urbe, accēpit, filiīs Ancī rēgnum ēri-

¹ See § 117.

puit. Numerum senātōrum duplicāvit, Circum aedificāvit, lūdōsque Rōmānōs instituit. Mūrōs et cloācās fēcit et templum Iovis in Capitōliō inchoāvit.

Plūra bella fēliciter gessit et multōs agrōs urbī adiūnxit. Primus triumphāns in urbem rediit. Trīcēsīmō octāvō (38th) imperī annō ab Ancī filiis, quibus rēgnum ēripuerat, occīsus est.

SERVIUS TULLIUS, SEXTUS RĒX RŌMĀNŌRUM (SERVIUS TULLIUS, THE SIXTH KING OF THE ROMANS, 578 B.C.)

Post hunc, Servius Tullius imperium suscepit. Montēs trēs, Quirinālem, Viminālem, Ēsquilinum, urbī adiūnxit, et fossās circum mūrū dūxit. Prīmus cēsum omnium incolārum instituit, quī adhūc incognitus erat. Sub eō Rōma, cum hīs quī in agris erant, octōgintā quattuor mīlia (84,000) cīvium habuit.

Rēx Tulliae, filiae suae, et Tarquinī Superbī, generi suī, scelere occīsus est. Tullia in forum properāvit et prīma marītum rēgem salūtāvit. Corpus rēgis in viā iacēbat. Tullia, domum¹ rediēns, aurīgam super patris corpus carpentum agere² iussit.

TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS, SEPTIMUS ET ULTIMUS RĒX RŌMĀNŌRUM (TARQUIN THE PROUD, THE SEVENTH AND LAST KING OF THE ROMANS, 553 B.C.)

Tarquinius cognōmen Superbī mōribus meruit. Multōs finitimōs populōs superāvit. Templum Iovis in Capitōliō exaedificāvit. Postea, dum Ardeam, urbem Latīnōrum, oppugnat, imperium perdidit. Nam filius eius, Tarquinius Iūnior, Lucrētiam, Collātīni uxōrem, iniuriā affēcit, quae sē cultrō occīdit. Maritus, pater, amīcī populum concitāvērunt et Tarquiniō imperium ēripuērunt.

Mox milītēs quoque, quī Ardeam cum ipsō rēge obsidē-

¹ See footnote 1, page 324.

² See § 117.

bant, eum reliquērunt. Tarquinius, ad urbem rediēns, exclūsus est et cum uxōre et liberis suis fūgit.

Tarquiniō expulsō,¹ duo cōsulēs, Lūcius Iūnius Brūtus, ācerrimus vindex libertātis, et Tarquinius Collātīnus, Lucrētiaē marītus, creātī sunt.²

The following pages are the continuation of the History of Rome, after the victory of Manlius Torquatus (see page 390).

MĀRCUS VALERIUS CORVĪNUS

Annō urbis conditae³ quadringentēsīmō sextō (406th), novum bellum cum Gallīs commōtum est. Iterum Gallus, rōbore et armīs insignis, prōcessit et ad pugnam ūnum ex Rōmānīs vocāvit. Mārcus Valerius, tribūnus militum, sē obtulit. Tum corvus in galeā eius cōnsēdit. Signum proelī datum est. Dum pugnant, corvus ālis et unguibus oculōs Galli verberāvit. Ita Gallus interfectus est ā tribūnō Valeriō, quī hinc Corvīnī cognōmen accēpit.

PUGNA APUD FURCULĀS CAUDĪNĀS (THE BATTLE OF THE CAUDINE FORKS, 321 B.C.)

Annō quadringentēsīmō tricēsīmō secundō (432nd) post urbem conditam,³ Titus Veturius et Spurius Postumius cōsulēs contrā Samnitēs bellum gerēbant. Hī ā Pontiō Telesīnō, duce hostium, in insidiās inductī sunt. Nam Samnitēs apud Furculās Caudīnās in angustiās Rōmānōs pellexērunt, ingentī dēdecōre vīcērunt, sub iugum⁴ mīsērunt.

¹ See footnote 1, page 315.

² Other stories about legendary or historical Roman personages are to be found in the Reading Lessons XLVI to LXIV.

³ See footnote, page 314.

⁴ Sub iugum, under the yoke, an instrument made of two spears placed erect, and a third laid transversely upon them. To pass under the yoke was a sign of abject defeat.

Post bellum ūndēquīnquāgintā (49) annōrum, Samnītēs superātī sunt ā Lūciō Papiriō cōnsule, quī septem milia (7,000) eōrum sub iugum mīsīt.

Eō tempore Appius Claudius cēnsor Aquam Claudiam indūxit et Viam Appiam strāvit.¹

PYRRHUS, ĒPĪRĪ RĒX (PYRRHUS, KING OF EPIRUS,
281 B.C.)

Tarentīnī lēgātīs Rōmānōrum iniūriam fēcerant. Hī illis bellum indīxērunt. Tarentīnī auxilium ā Pyrrhō, Ēpīrī rēge, petiērunt. Is mox in Ītāliam vēnit; tum primum Rōmānī cum trānsmarinō hoste pugnāvērunt.

Pūblius Valerius Laevīnus cōsul contrā eum missus est. Pyrrhus auxiliō elephantōrum Rōmānōs vīcit. Nox proeliō finem dedit. Laevīnus tamen per noctem fūgit. Pyrrhus Rōmānōs mille octīngentōs (1800) cēpit, eōsque summō honōre tractāvit. Eōs quī in proeliō interfectī erant omnēs adversīs vulneribus et ferōcī vultū etiam mortuōs iacere vīdit et dīxit, "Dux audāx cum tālibus virīs brevī orbem terrārum subigere potest."

Posteā Pyrrhus ad Rōmam² perrēxit; omnia ferrō et ignī vāstāvit. Mox perterritus exercitus Rōmānus in Campāniam sē recēpit. Lēgātī, ad Pyrrhum missī, pācem petiērunt. Is lēgātōs honōrificē accēpit et captīvōs Rōmānōs sine pretiō reddidit, sed partem Ītaliae quam armīs occupāverat retinere volēbat. Rōmānī eam condiціōnem accipere nōluērunt. Ūnus ex lēgātīs Fabricius erat. Rēx eum ad sē transīre³ volēbat; itaque eī quārtam partem rēgnī suī prōmīsīt, sed ā Fabriciō contemptus est.

¹ See footnote, page 314.

² **Ad Rōmam**, *towards Rome*. Pyrrhus got only within 24 miles of the city, but if he had reached Rome, **Rōmam** would be used without a preposition (see footnote, page 407).

³ See § 117.

In alterō proeliō Pyrrhus vulnerātus est, elephantī interfectī, vīgintī milia (20,000) hostium occīsa sunt. Pyrrhus Tarentum ¹fūgit. Tum Fabricius contrā eum missus est. Ad hunc medicus Pyrrhī nocte vēnit quī rēgem venēnō occīdere volēbat. Hunc Fabricius vīctum reducī iussit ad dominum. Tunc rēx dixit, “Difficilius est Fabricium ab honestāte quam sōlem ā cursū suō āvertere.” Paulō post, Pyrrhus, tertiō proeliō victus, ex Italiā recessit et in Graeciam rediit, ubi interfectus est.

PRIMUM BELLUM PUNICUM (THE FIRST PUNIC WAR,
264-241 B.C.)

Annō quadringentēsīmō nōnāgēsīmō (490th) post urbem conditam, exercitūs Rōmānōrū in Siciliam trānsiērunt, Hierōnem, Syrācūsārum rēgem, et Poenōs quī multās urbēs in eā insulā occupāverant, superāvērunt.

Quintō annō huius bellī quod contrā Poenōs gerēbātur, primum Rōmānī in marī pugnāvērunt. Gāius Duilius cōsul Carthāginiēnsēs vīcit, trīgintā (30) nāvēs occupāvit, quattuordecim (14) mersit, septem milia (7000) hostium cēpit, tria milia (3,000) occīdit. Nulla victōria Rōmānīs grātiōr fuit.

Paulō post, bellum in Āfricam trānslātum est. Hamilcar, Carthāginiēnsium dux, pugnā nāvālī superātus est, nam sexāgintā quattuor (64) nāvēs perdidit; Rōmānī vīgintī duās (22) āmisērunt. Exercitūs Rōmānī in Āfricam venērunt et Poenōs in plūribus proeliīs vīcērunt. Magnum numerum hominum cēpērunt et septuāgintā quattuor (74) urbēs in fidem accēpērunt.

Tum victī Carthāginiēnsēs pācem ā Rōmānīs petiērunt. Mārcus Atilius Rēgulus, Rōmānōrum dux, dūrissimās condiciōnēs dedit. Poenī eās reiēcērunt et auxilium ā Lacedaemoniīs petiērunt. Hī Xanthippum mīsērunt, quī

¹ Tarentum: See note 2, page 420.

Rōmānōs magnō proeliō vīcit. Rēgulus ipse captus et in vincula coniectus est.

FINIS PRIMĪ BELLĪ PŪNICĪ (END OF THE FIRST PUNIC
WAR)

Tandem, annō bellī Pūnicī vīcēsīmō tertiō (23rd), magnum proelium nāvāle commissum est prope Lilybaeum, prōmunturium Siciliae. In eō proeliō, septuāgintā trēs (73) Carthāginiēnsium nāvēs captae, centum vīgintī quinque (125) mersae, trīgintā duo mīlia (32,000) hostium capta, tredecim mīlia (13,000) occīsa sunt. Statim Carthāginiēnsēs pācem petiērunt eisque pāx data est. Captivī Rōmānī quī ā Carthāginiēnsibus tenēbantur redditī sunt. Poenī Siciliā, Sardinīā, cēteris īnsulis quae inter Ītaliā et Āfricā iacent dēcessērunt, omnemque Hispāniā quae citrā Ibērum est Rōmānīs dēdidērunt.

SECUNDUM BELLUM PŪNICUM (THE SECOND PUNIC
WAR, 218–202 B.C.)

Paulō post, Pūnicum bellum renovātum est per Hannibalem, Carthāginiēnsium ducem. Hamilcar, pater Hannibalis, eum, novem (9) annōs nātum, ārīs admōverat, ubi puer odium aeternum in Rōmānōs iūrāverat. Hic, iuvenis vīgintī (20) annōrum, Saguntum, Hispāniae urbem, populū Rōmānī socium, oppugnāvit. Saguntīnī fame victī sunt et Rōmānī Carthāginiēnsibus bellum indixērunt.

HANNIBAL IN ĪTALIĀ (HANNIBAL IN ITALY)

Hannibal Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et Alpēs trānsiit. In Ītaliā, octōgintā mīlia (80,000) peditum, decem mīlia (10,000) equitum, septem et trīgintā (37) elephantōs abdūxit. Intereā, multī Ligurēs et Gallī cum Hannibale sē coniūnxērunt. Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō, Rōmānōrum dux, ab Hannibale ad Ticīnum flūmen superātus est. Tum Sempŕonius Grac-

chus quoque ad Trebiam flūmen victus est. Multī populi Hannibalī sē dēdidērunt. Paulō post, is Flāminium cōnsulem ad Trasumennum lacum superāvit. Ipse Flāminius interfectus est atque Rōmānōrum vīgintī quīnque mīlia (25,000) occīsa sunt.

PUGNA CANNĒNSIS (BATTLE OF CANNAE, 216 B.C.)

Lūcius Aemilius Paulus et Pūblius Terentius Varrō contrā Hannibalem mittuntur. Rōmānī enim intellēxerant Hannibalem nōn aliter vinci¹ posse quam morā; Varrō tamen, apud vicum quī Cannae appellātur, in Āpuliā pugnam commisit. Duo cōsulēs victī sunt atque Paulus interfectus est. In eā pugnā cōsulārēs aut praetōrii vīgintī (20), senātōrēs trīgintā (30) captī sunt aut occīsī; mīlitum quadrāgintā mīlia (40,000), equitum tria mīlia quīngentī (3,500) periērunt. In hīs tantīs calamitatibus nēmō tamen pācis mentiōnem fēcit!

Post eam pugnam multae Ītaliae urbēs cum Hannibale sē coniūnxērunt. Hannibal cum Rōmānīs captīvōs permūtāre voluit, sed senātus respondit, "Eī cīvēs quī armātī capī possunt ūtilēs nōn sunt." Eōs omnēs ille postea variīs suppliciis interfēcit et trēs modiōs aureōrum ānulōrum² Carthāginem misit, quōs manibus equitum Rōmānōrum et senātōrum detrāxerat.

Interea in Hispāniā frāter Hannibalis, Hasdrubal, qui ibi cum magnō exercitū remānserat, ā duōbus Scīpiōnibus vincitur et in pugnā trīgintā quīnque mīlia (35,000) hominum perdit.

MARCELLUS ET LAEVINUS IN SICILIĀ (MARCELLUS AND
LAEVINUS IN SICILY)

In Siciliā rēs prōsperē gesta est. Mārcellus magnam huius insulae partem cēpit quam Poenī occupāverant. Syrā-

¹ See § 117.

² Golden rings were worn only by knights and senators.

cūsās, nōbilissimam urbem, expugnāvit et ingentem praedam inde Rōmam mīsīt.

Laevīnus in Macedoniā cum Philippō rēge et multīs Graeciae populis amicitiam fēcīt. Is in Siciliam trānsiit et Hannōnem, Poenōrum principem, apud Agrigentum cēpit; quadrāgintā (40) urbēs in dēditionem accēpit; vīgintī sex (26) expugnāvit. Ita omnem Siciliam subēgit et cum ingentī gloriā Rōmam rediit.

PŪBLIUS CORNĒLIUS SCĪPIŌ IN HISPĀNIĀ (PUBLIUS
CORNELIUS SCIPIO IN SPAIN)

Intereā in Hispāniam, ubi duō Scīpiōnēs ab Hasdrubale interfectī erant, missus est Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō, vir Rōmānōrum omnium ferē primus. Hic, puer duodēvīgintī (18) annōrum, in pugnā ad Ticīnum flūmen, patrem singulārī virtūte servāverat.

Scīpiō, vīgintī quattuor (24) annōs nātus, in Hispāniam missus est et diē quō vēnit Carthāginem Novam cēpit, in quā tōtum aurum et argentum et bellī apparātum Poenī habēbant. Nōbilissimōs quoque quōs obsidēs ab Hispānīs accēperant ibi tenēbant. Hōs obsidēs parentibus Scīpiō reddidit. Itaque omnēs ferē Hispāniae urbēs ad eum ūnō animō trānsiērunt.

HASDRUBAL OCCĪSUS EST (HASDRUBAL IS SLAIN)

Eō tempore, Hasdrubal, ā frātre ex Hispāniā in Ītaliā ēvocātus, apud Sēnam, Picēnī urbem, in insidiās incidit et strēnuē pugnāns occīsus est. Plūrimae autem urbēs quae in Bruttiīs ab Hannibale tenēbantur Rōmānīs sē trādidērunt.

ĪTALIA LĪBERĀTA EST (ITALY IS FREED)

Annō quārtō decimō (14th) postquam Hannibal in Ītaliā vēnerat, Scīpiō cōsul creatus et in Āfricā missus est. Ibi contrā Hannōnem, Carthāginiēnsium principem, prōsperē

pugnat tōtumque eius exercitum dēlet. Secundō proeliō ūndecim milia (11,000) hominum occīdit et castra cēpit cum quattuor milibus quingentīs (4500) militibus. Syphācem, Numidiae rēgem, quī cum Poenīs sē coniūnxerat, cēpit, eumque cum nōbilissimīs Numidīs et magnīs spoliīs Rōmam mīsit. Tōta ferē Ītalia Hannibalem dēserit. Ipse ā Carthāginiēnsibus in Āfricam redire iubētur. Ita Ītalia liberāta est.

PUGNA AD ZAMAM (BATTLE AT ZAMA, 202 B.C.)

Post plūres pugnās, pāx plūs quam semel frūstrā temptāta est. Tandem proelium commissum est in quō duo perītissimī ducēs cōpiās suās ad bellum ēdūcēbant. Scīpiō victor recēdit; Hannibal cum paucīs equitibus ēvādīt.

Post hoc proelium, pāx Carthāginiēnsibus data est. Scīpiō Rōmam rediit, ingentī glōriā triumphāvit, Āfricānus appellātus est. Sic finem accēpit secundum Pūnicum bellum.

TERTIUM BELLUM PŪNICUM (THE THIRD PUNIC WAR, 149–146 B.C.)

Fīnitīs bellīs¹ contrā Macedoniam et Syriam, susceptum est bellum adversus Carthāginem. Lūcius Mārcius Cēnsōrinus et Mānius Mānlius cōsulēs in Āfricam trānsiērunt et Carthāginem oppugnāvērunt. Multa ibi glōriōsē gesta sunt per Scīpiōnem, Scīpiōnis Āfricānī nepōtem, quī tribūnus in Āfricā militābat. Huius ingēns metus et reverentia apud omnēs erat et ducēs Carthāginiēnsium contrā eum dīmīcāre nōn audēbant.

CARTHĀGŌ DĒLĒTA EST (CARTHAGE IS BLOTTED OUT)

Tertiō annō postquam Rōmānī in Āfricam trānsierant, Scīpiō cōsul creatus est et contrā Carthāginem missus est.

¹ See footnote 1, page 315.

Eam urbem, ā cīvibus ācerrimē dēfēnsam, cēpit et dēlēvit. Ibi ingēns praeda capta est, plūrimaque inventa sunt quae multārum urbium excidiīs Carthāgiēnsēs collēgerant. Haec omnia Scīpiō urbibus Ītalīae, Siciliāe, Āfricāe reddidit, quae sua recognōscēbant. Ita Carthāgō septingentēsimō (700th) annō postquam condita erat, dēlēta est. Scīpiō nōmen Āfricānī Iūniōris accēpit.

AEMILIUS PAULUS IN MACEDONIĀ (AEMILIUS PAULUS
IN MACEDONIA)

Post pugnam ad Zamam, susceptum est bellum adversus Philippum, Macedoniae rēgem. Superātus est rēx ā Titō Quīntiō Flāmininō apud Cynoscephalās, pāxque eī data est. Captīvōs Rōmānōs reddidit, omnēs suās nāvēs praeter quīnquāgintā (50) Rōmānīs dedit, mille talenta praestitit, obsidem filium Dēmētrium dedit. Titus Quīntius etiam cum Lacedaemoniīs bellum gessit et ducem eōrum Nabidem vīcit.

Post mortem Philippī, rēgis Macedoniae, filius eius Perseus ingentēs cōpiās parāvit et rebellāvit. Dux Rōmānōrum, Pūblius Licinius cōsul, contrā eum missus, gravī proeliō ā rēge victus est. Rēx tamen pācem petēbat, sed Rōmānī eam praetāre nōluērunt.

Mox Aemilius Paulus cōsul rēgem ad Pydnam, Macedoniae urbem, superāvit et vīgintī milia (20,000) peditum eius occīdit. Equitātus cum rēge fūgit. Urbēs Macedoniae omnēs quās rēx tenuerat Rōmānīs sē dēdidērunt. Ipse Perseus ab amicīs dēsertus in Paulī potestātem vēnit. Hic cum ingentī pompā Rōmam rediit in nāve Perseī, inūsītatae magnitudinis, nam sēdecim (16) rēmōrum ōrdinēs habēbat. Triumphāvit magnificentissimē in currū aureō, duōbus filiīs utrōque latere adstantibus.¹ Ante currum inter captīvōs duo rēgis filiī et ipse Perseus ductī sunt.

¹ See footnote 1, page 315.

TRĒS CELEBERRIMĪ TRIUMPHĪ (THREE VERY
FAMOUS TRIUMPHS)

Interim in Macedoniā Andriscus, quī Pseudophilippus quoque appellātur, arma mōvit et Pūblium Iuventium, Rōmānōrum ducem, vīcit. Post eum, Quīntus Caecilius Metellus dux ā Rōmānīs contrā Pseudophilippum missus, vīgintī quīnque mīlia (25,000) mīlitum eius occīdit, Macedoniam recēpit, ipsum Pseudophilippum in potestātem suam redēgit.

Corinthiī lēgātīs Rōmānīs iniūriam fēcerant. Corinthum, nōbilissimam Graeciae urbem, Mummius cōsul cēpit et dēlēvit.

Trēs igitur simul celeberrimī triumphī fuērunt : triumphus Scīpiōnis ex Āfricā, ante cuius currum ductus est Hasdrubal¹; triumphus Metellī ex Macedoniā, cuius currum praecessit Andriscus; triumphus Mummī ex Corinthō, ante quem statuæ aēneae et pictae pictūrae et alia urbis nōtissimae ōrnāmenta praelāta sunt.

IN LŪSITĀNIĀ (IN PORTUGAL)

Annō sescentēsīmō decimō (610th) post urbem conditam, Viriāthus in Lūsitāniā bellum contrā Rōmānōs excitāvit. Pāstor primō fuit, mox latrōnum dux; postrēmō, multās gentēs ad bellum concitāvit et vindex libertātis Hispāniae exīstimābātur. Sed ā mīlitibus suis interfectus est. Interfectōrēs eius praemium ā Caepiōne cōsule petiērunt; sed eis respondit, "Numquam Rōmānīs placet imperātōrem ā mīlitibus suis interficī." ²

NUMANTIA DĒLĒTA EST (NUMANTIA IS DESTROYED)

Deinde bellum cum Numantiā, urbe opulentissimā Hispāniae, susceptum est. Victus est ā Numantīnis Quīntus

¹ Hasdrubal: this general was Hannibal's brother-in-law, the founder of New Carthage in Spain.

² See § 117.

Pompēius, et post eum Gāius Hostilius Mancīnus cōsul, quī cum eīs infāmem pācem fēcit. Senātus populusque hanc pācem infrīngī atque ipsum Mancīnum hostibus trādī iussit.¹ Tum Pūblius Scīpiō Āfricānus in Hispāniam missus est. Is primō ducem ignāvum corrēxit; tum multās Hispāniae urbēs bellō cēpit aut in dēditionem accēpit. Postrēmō ipsam Numantiam fame ad dēditionem coēgit et dēlēvit; reliquam Hispāniam in fidem accēpit.

HANNIBALIS MORS (DEATH OF HANNIBAL)

Finītō bellō Macedonicō,² susceptum est bellum contrā Antiochum, Syriae rēgem, Hannibalis socium. Missus est adversus eum Lūcius Cornēlius Scīpiō cōsul, cui frāter eius Scīpiō Āfricānus lēgātus additus est.

Hannibal nāvālī proeliō victus est et Antiochus ad Magnēsiam, Asiae urbem, ā Cornēliō Scīpiōne ingentī proeliō superātus est. Tum rēx Antiochus pācem petiit. Pāx eī data est. Intrā Taurum recessit atque Rōmānīs decem mīlia (10,000) talentōrum et vīgintī obsidēs praebuit. Hannibal, quī in Bithŷniam fūgerat, venēnum bibit et apud Libyssam sepultus est. Scīpiō Rōmam rediit et ingentī glōriā triumphāvit. Nōmen Asiaticī, ad imitātiōnem frātris, accēpit.

GĀIUS MARIUS IN NUMIDIĀ

Pūbliō Scīpiōne Nāsicā et Lūciō Calpurniō Bēstiā cōsulibus,³ Iugurthae, Numidārum rēgī, bellum indictum est. Iugurtha Micipsae filiōs, patruēlēs suōs, necāverat. Missus

¹ Note that the verb is in the singular although it has two subjects. This is possible because *Senātus populusque* usually expresses one thought, "the government."

² See footnote 1, page 315.

³ This is an ablative absolute construction (see footnote 1, page 315). Translate: "In the year when Publius Scipio Nasica and Lucius Calpurnius Bestia were consuls."

adversus eum cōsul Calpurnius Bēstia, corruptus rēgis pecūniā, cum eō turpissimam pācem fēcit, quae ā senātū improbāta est. Quīntus Caecilius Metellus cōsul Iugurtham variīs proeliīs vīcit, elephantōs eius occīdit vel cēpit, multās urbēs in dēditionem accēpit. Tum in Numidiam missus est Gāius Marius, quī bellō finem impōsuit, ipsumque Iugurtham cēpit. Ante currum Marī triumphantis Iugurtha cum duōbus filiīs ductus est vīctus, et mox iussū cōsulis in carcere strangulātus est.

MARIUS TEUTOBOCHUM CĒPIT (MARIUS CAPTURES TEUTOBOCHUS)

Dum bellum contrā Iugurtham, rēgem Numidiae, gerebatur, Cimbri, Teutonī, aliaeque Germānōrum et Gallōrum gentēs Ītaliā terrēbant. Ingēns metus in urbe fuit. Ergō Marius cōsul creātus est eīque bellum adversus Cimbrōs et Teutonōs commissum est. Duōbus proeliīs cum Cimbris ducenta mīlia (200,000) hostium cecīdit, octōgintā mīlia (80,000) cēpit, eōrumque rēgem Teutobochum. Sed Cimbri et Teutonī quōrum numerus adhūc magnus erat in Ītaliā trānsiērunt. Iterum Gāius Marius et Quīntus Catulus contrā eōs dīmīcāvērunt ad Vērōnam. Centum quadrāgintā mīlia (140,000) aut in pugnā aut in fugā caesa sunt, sexāgintā mīlia (60,000) capta.

LŪCIUS CORNĒLIUS SULLA

Sescentēsīmō quīnquāgēsīmō nōnō (659th) annō ab urbe conditā, gravissimum bellum in Ītaliā ērūpit. Nam Pīcentēs, Mārsī, Pēlignī, quī multōs annōs sociī populi Rōmānī fuerant, iūs civitātis sibi darī volēbant. Quattuor annōs hoc perniciosum bellum tractātum est. Tandem Lūcius Cornēlius Sulla Cluentium, hostium prīncipem, fūdit, et eī bellō finem imposuit. Rōmānī tamen iūs civitātis sociīs tribuērunt.

PRIMUM BELLUM CĪVILE (THE FIRST CIVIL WAR,
88 B.C.)

Annō urbis conditae sescentēsīmō sexāgēsīmō sextō (666th), primum bellum cīvile ērūpit; eōdem annō etiam bellum Mithridāticum. Causam belli cīvilis Gāius Marius dedit. Sullae bellum contrā Mithridātem, rēgem Pontī, commissum erat, sed Marius eī hunc honōrem ēripere voluit. Sulla, cuius legiōnēs adhūc in Ītaliā erant, cum exercitū Rōmam vēnit et adversāriōs aut interfēcit aut fugāvit. Tum in Asiam trānsiit et Mithridātem superāvit.

Dum Sulla in Graeciā et Asiā cum Mithridāte pugnat, Marius, quī fugātus erat, et Cornēlius Cinna, ūnus ex cōsulibus, Rōmam rediērunt et nōbilissimōs senātōres et cōsulārēs virōs interfēcērunt. Domō Sullae delētā,¹ filiōs et uxōrem eius ad fugam compulērunt. Reliquus senātus ex urbe fugiēns ad Sullam in Graeciam vēnit et ab eō auxilium petiit.

Sulla in Ītaliā rediit, hostium exercitūs vicit, Rōmam sanguine cīvium replēvit. Duodecim milia (12,000) inermium, quī sē dēdiderant, interficī iussit atque duo milia (2,000) equitum et senātōrum prōscripsit.

Duo haec bella fūnestissima ultrā centum quīnquāgintā milia (150,000) hominum, virōs cōsulārēs vīginti quattuor (24), praetōriōs septem (7), aediliciōs sexāgintā (60), senātōrēs ducentōs (200) ferē cōsūmpsērunt.

BELLUM GLADIATŌRUM. — SPARTACUS (THE WAR OF
THE GLADIATORS, 73 B.C. — SPARTACUS)

Annō urbis sescentēsīmō octōgēsīmō primō (681st), novum bellum in Ītaliā commōtum est. Septuāgintā enim quattuor (74) gladiatōrēs, ductī ā Spartacō, Crixō, Oenomaō, ē lūdō gladiatōriō Capuae fūgērunt et, Ītaliā peragrantes,

¹ See footnote 1, page 315.

paene nōn levius bellum quam Hannibal mōvērunt. Nam exercitum sexāgintā ferē mīlium (60,000) armātōrum contrāxērunt, multōsque ducēs et duōs Rōmānōs cōsulēs vīcērunt. Ipsī superātī sunt in Āpūliā ā Mārcō Liciniō Crassō prōcōsule, et, post multās calamitatēs, tertiō annō huic bellō finis impositus est.

BELLUM MITHRIDATICUM (WAR AGAINST MITHRIDATES)

Annō urbis conditae sescentēsīmō septuagēsīmō sextō (676th), Lūciō Liciniō Lūcullō et Mārcō Aurēliō Cottā cōsulibus,¹ Nīcomēdēs, rēx Bīthŷniae, obiit et testāmētō populum Rōmānum hērēdem fēcit.

Mithridātēs, quī Pontī rēx erat, Bīthŷniam invādere voluit. Duo cōsulēs, adversus eum missī, variam fortūnam habuērunt.

Cotta apud Chalcēdōnem, Bīthŷniae urbem, victus est. Sed, dum Mithridātēs Cyzicum oppugnat, Lūcullus, alter cōsul, eum ā tergō obsēdit et multis pugnis superāvit. Rēx Pontī Byzantium urbem, quae nunc Constantīnopolis est, fūgit.

Lūcullus nāvālī quoque proeliō ducēs eius oppressit. Ita ūnā hieme et aestāte ā Lūcullō centum ferē mīlia (100,000) mīlitum rēgis exstīncta sunt.

Posteā idem Lūcullus rēgnum Mithridātis invāsīt, ipsumque rēgem apud Cābīra urbem, ubi magnās cōpiās ex omnī rēgnō addūxerat Mithridātēs, ingentī proeliō vīcit et castra eius dīripuit.

Armenia quoque Minor quam tenēbat, ei ērepta est. Susceptus est Mithridātēs ā Tigrāne, Armeniae Maiōris rēge, quī tum ingentī gloriā imperābat; sed huius quoque rēgnum Lūcullus invāsīt et Tigrānocerta, nōbilissimam Armeniae urbem, cēpit. Ipsum rēgem superāvit et rōbur mīlitum Armeniae dēlēvit.

¹See footnote 3, page 428.

Lūcullus finem eī bellō impōnere parābat, sed eō tempore Gnaeus Pompēius in Armeniam missus est.

POMPĒI GESTA GLŌRIŌSA (THE GLORIOUS DEEDS OF POMPEY)

Eō tempore pīrātae omnia maria infestābant ; ita Rōmānīs, tōtō orbe terrārum victōribus, sōla nāvigātiō nōn tūta erat. Bellum contrā pīrātās Gnaeō Pompēiō dēcrētum est, quod intrā paucōs mēnsēs ingentī fēlicitāte et celeritāte cōnfecit. Tum eī dēcrētum est bellum contrā Mithridātem, Pontī rēgem, et Tigrānem, Armeniae Maiōris rēgem. Mithridātem in Armeniā Minōre nocturnō proeliō vīcit et castra eius diripuit. Mithridātēs cum uxōre et duōbus comitibus fūgit et, paulō post, venēnum bibit. Hunc finem habuit Mithridātēs, vir ingentis industriae atque cōsiliī. Rēgnāvit annōs sexāgintā (60), vīxit septuāgintā duōs (72), contrā Rōmānōs quadrāgintā (40) annōs bellum gessit.

Deinde Pompēius cum Tigrāne, rēge Armeniae, pugnāvit. Hic eī sē dēdidit ; in castra Pompēi vēnit et diadēma suum in eius manibus collocāvit quod eī Pompēius reposuit. Tum Pompēius aliōs etiam rēgēs et gentēs superāvit. Armeniam Minōrem Dēiotarō Galatiae rēgī, dedit quia Rōmānōs contrā Mithridātem iūverat. Inde in Iūdaeam pervēnit. Hierosolymam, caput Iūdaeae, occupāvit, duodecim milia (12,000) Iūdaeōrum occīdit, cēterōs in fidem recēpit. Hīs gestīs finem antīquissimō bellō imposuit.

Ante currum Pompēi triumphantis ductī sunt filiī Mithridātis, filius Tigrānis, et Aristobūlus, rēx Iūdaeōrum. Hōc tempore nūllum per orbem terrārum grave bellum erat.

CATILĪNAE CONIŪRĀTIŌ (CATILINE'S CONSPIRACY, 63 B.C.)

Mārcō Tulliō Cicerōne ōrātōre et Gāiō Antōniō cōsulibus, annō ab urbe conditā sescentēsīmō nōnāgēsīmō primō (691st), Lūcius Sergius Catilīna, vir nōbilissimī generis sed ingeni prāvissimī, in patriam coniūrāvit cum paucīs audācibus

hominibus. Ā Cicerōne expulsus est, socii eius dēprehēnsi in carcere strangulātī sunt. Ab Antōniō, alterō cōnsule, Catilīna ipse proeliō victus est et interfectus.

CAESAR CŌNSUL, 59 B.C.

Gāius Iūlius Caesar cum Lūciō Bibulō cōnsul creātus est, eique Gallia cum decem (10) legiōnibus dēcrēta est. Caesar primō Helvētiōs vīcit; tum semper victor usque ad Ōceanum Britannicum prōcessit. Domuit annis novem (9) omnem ferē Galliam quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum, Ōceanum est. Britannis mox bellum intulit, quibus ante eum nōmen Rōmānōrum nōn cognitum erat. Cum Germānis quoque trāns Rhēnum bellum gessit, eōsque ingentibus proeliis vīcit.

SECUNDUM BELLUM CĪVILE (THE SECOND CIVIL WAR, 49 B.C.)

Bellum cīvile successit quō fortūna populī Rōmānī mūtāta est. Caesar enim victor, ē Galliā rediēns, alterum cōsulātum popōscit, sed ā Mārcellō cōnsule, ā Bibulō, ā Pompēiō, ā Catōne contrādictum¹ est, et Caesar exercitum dīmittere et in urbem redire iussus est. Propter hanc iniūriam, ab Ariminō ubi erat, cum legiōnibus suis Rōmam contendit. Cōsulēs cum Pompēiō, senātus, atque omnēs nōbilēs ex urbe fūgērunt et in Graeciam trānsiērunt. Dum senātus contrā Caesarem bellum parat, hic in urbem vēnit et dictatōrem sē fēcit.

Tum Hispāniās petiit ibique Pompēi legiōnēs superāvit; deinde in Graeciā adversus Pompēium ipsum dīmīcāvit. Primō proeliō Caesar victus est, sed per noctem ēvāsīt. Postrēmō in Thessaliā apud Pharsālum cum ingentibus cōpiis pugnam commīsērunt. Pompēius fūsus est, et castra

¹Contrādictum est: impersonal construction. Translate: "It was opposed," or "opposition was made."

eius direpta sunt. Ipse fugātus Alexandriam vēnit et ā Ptolemaeō, rēge Aegyptī, auxilium petiit. Hic eum occīdit et caput eius et ānulum Caesarī misit. Vidēns caput tanti virī, Caesar lacrimās fūdīt.

CAESAR IN CŪRIĀ INTERFECTUS EST (CAESAR IS MURDERED IN THE SENATE-HOUSE, 44 B.C.)

Mox Caesar Alexandriam petiit eīque Ptolemaeus insidiās parāvit. Rēx victus in Nilō periit et corpus eius cum lōricā aureā inventum est. Caesar Alexandriam cēpit et rēgnum Aegyptī Cleopatrae, Ptolemaei sorōrī, dedit.

Tum Caesar Pharnacem, Mithridātis Magnī filium, quī Pompēium in Thessaliā iūverat, vicit. Paulō post, filiōs Pompēi apud Myndum, urbem Cariae, superāvit.

Inde Caesar Rōmam rediit ubi insolenter et tyrannicē agere coepit. Multī senātōrēs et equitēs in eum coniūrāvērunt. Prīncipēs fuērunt inter coniūrātōs duo Brūtī ex genere eius Brūtī quī rēgēs expulerat et prīmus Rōmae cōsul fuerat. Ergō Caesar, in cūriam veniēns, tribus et vīginti (23) vulneribus cōnfossus est.

TERTIUM BELLUM CĪVĪLE (THE THIRD CIVIL WAR, 43 B.C.)

Postquam Caesar interfectus est, bellum cīvile reparātum est. Mārcus Antōnius cōsul, propter multa scelera, ā senātū hostis iūdicātus est. Missī sunt adversus eum duō cōsulēs, Pānsa et Hirtius, et Octāviānus, Caesaris nepōs, quī postea Augustus appellātus est.

Hī trēs ducēs Antōnium vicērunt. Hic fūgit ad Lepidum, quī magnās cōpiās habēbat. Mox Octāviānus cum Antōniō pācem fēcīt. Iūctus cum Antōniō et Lepidō, rem publicam armīs tenēre coepit senātumque prōscripsit. Per eōs triumvirōs Cicerō, celeberrimus ōrātor Rōmānus, occīsus est multīque alii nōbilēs.

PUGNA APUD PHILIPPŌS (BATTLE AT PHILIPPI, 42 B.C.)

Intereā Brūtus et Cassius, interfectorēs Caesaris, ingēns bellum mōverant. Caesar Octāviānus et Mārcus Antōnius apud Philippōs, Macedoniae urbem, contrā eōs pugnāvērunt. Primō proeliō victī sunt Antōnius et Caesar; periit tamen Cassius, dux nōbilitātis. Secundō proeliō Antōnius et Caesar Brūtum et multōs nōbilēs vicērunt et interfēcērunt.

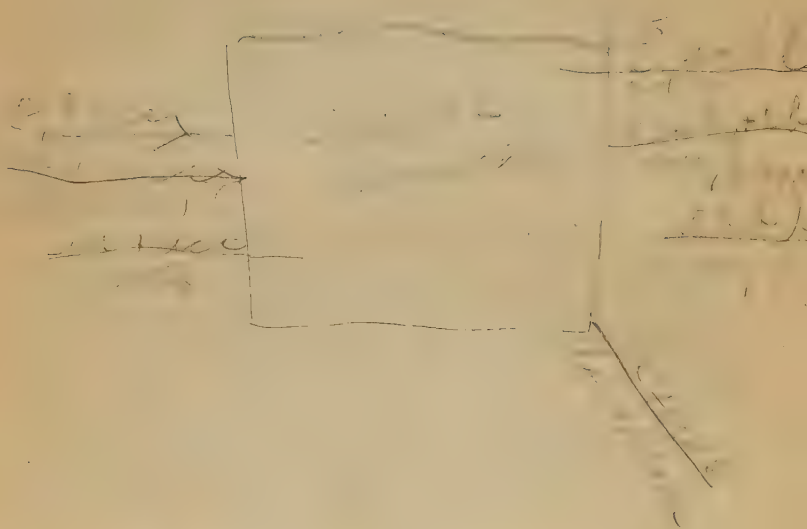
Tum victōrēs rem pūblicam inter sē ita dīvisērunt: Octāviānus Caesar Hispāniās, Galliās, Ītaliā tenuit; Antōnius Orientem, Lepidus Āfricā accēpit.

PUGNA APUD ACTIUM (BATTLE AT ACTIUM, 31 B.C.)

Paulō post, Antōnius sorōrem Caesaris Octāviānī repudiāvit et Cleopatram, rēginā Aegyptī, in mātirimōnium dūxit. Incitātus ā Cleopatrá, quae cupiditāte muliebri in Ītaliā rēgnāre volēbat, Antōnius ingēns bellum mōvit.

Victus est ab Octāviānō nāvālī pugnā nōtā et illūstri apud Actium, quī locus in Ēpīrō est. Hinc fūgit in Aegyptum ubi sē ipse interēmit. Cleopatra aspidis venēnō exstincta est. Aegyptus per Octāviānum Augustum imperiō Rōmānō addita est.

Ita Octāviānus Augustus, Rōmam rediēns, imperium per quadrāgintā et quattuor (44) annōs sōlus obtinuit. Septuāgēsimo sextō (76th) annō obiit et in Campō Mārtiō sepultus est.



APPENDIX

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

FIRST DECLENSION

Via, f., road

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.:	via	viae
Gen.:	viae	viarum
Dat.:	viae	viis
Acc.:	viam	viās
Abl.:	viā	viis

SECOND DECLENSION

servus, m., <i>slave</i>	puer, m., <i>boy</i>	ager, m., <i>field</i>	vir, m., <i>man</i>	dōnum, n., <i>gift</i>
------------------------------------	--------------------------------	----------------------------------	-------------------------------	----------------------------------

SINGULAR

Nom.:	servus	puer	ager	vir	dōnum
Gen.:	servī	puerī	agrī	virī	dōnī
Dat.:	servō	puerō	agrō	virō	dōnō
Acc.:	servum	puerum	agrum	virum	dōnum
Abl.:	servō	puerō	agrō	virō	dōnō

PLURAL

Nom.:	servī	puerī	agrī	virī	dōna
Gen.:	servōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	dōnōrum
Dat.:	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	dōnīs
Acc.:	servōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	dōna
Abl.:	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	dōnīs

THIRD DECLENSION

Consonant Stems

cōnsul, m., <i>consul</i>	cīvitās, f., <i>state</i>	homō, m., <i>man</i>	flūmen, n., <i>river</i>
------------------------------	------------------------------	-------------------------	-----------------------------

SINGULAR

Nom.:	cōnsul	cīvitās	homō	flūmen
Gen.:	cōnsulis	cīvitātis	hominis	flūminis
Dat.:	cōnsulī	cīvitātī	hominī	flūminī
Acc.:	cōnsulem	cīvitātem	hominem	flūmen
Abl.:	cōnsule	cīvitāte	homine	flūmine

PLURAL

Nom.:	cōnsulēs	cīvitātēs	hominēs	flūmina
Gen.:	cōnsulum	cīvitātum	hominum	flūminum
Dat.:	cōnsulibus	cīvitātibus	hominibus	flūminibus
Acc.:	cōnsulēs	cīvitātes	hominēs	flūmina
Abl.:	cōnsulibus	cīvitātibus	hominibus	flūminibus

-i stems

cīvis, m., <i>citizen</i>	urbs, f., <i>city</i>	vīs, f., <i>force</i>	mare, n., <i>sea</i>
------------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------	-------------------------

SINGULAR

Nom.:	cīvis	urbs	vīs	mare
Gen.:	cīvis	urbis	vīs	maris
Dat.:	cīvī	urbī	vī	marī
Acc.:	cīvem	urbem	vim	mare
Abl.:	cīve	urbe	vī	marī

PLURAL

Nom.:	cīvēs	urbēs	vīrēs	maria
Gen.:	cīvium	urbium	vīrium	marium
Dat.:	cīvibus	urbibus	vīribus	maribus
Acc.:	cīvēs	urbēs	vīrēs	maria
Abl.:	cīvibus	urbibus	vīribus	maribus

FOURTH DECLENSION

*exercitus, m., army**cornū, n., horn*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.:	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.:	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.:	exercitui	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.:	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.:	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

FIFTH DECLENSION

*diēs, m., day**rēs, f., thing*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.:	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.:	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
Dat.:	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
Acc.:	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.:	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES¹

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

bonus, bona, bonum, good

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.:	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.:	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.:	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.:	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

¹ The interrogative adjective *quī, quae, quod, what?* is declined like the relative pronoun (page 442).

THIRD DECLENSION

THREE ENDINGS

acer, acris, acre, sharp

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	<i>acer</i>	<i>acris</i>	<i>acre</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
Gen.	<i>acris</i>	<i>acris</i>	<i>acris</i>	<i>acrium</i>	<i>acrium</i>	<i>acrium</i>
Dat.:	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acribus</i>	<i>acribus</i>	<i>acribus</i>
Acc.:	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
Abl.:	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acribus</i>	<i>acribus</i>	<i>acribus</i>

TWO ENDINGS

fortis, forte, brave

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	<i>fortis</i>	<i>forte</i>	<i>fortēs</i>	<i>fortia</i>
Gen.:	<i>fortis</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>fortium</i>	<i>fortium</i>
Dat.:	<i>forti</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fortibus</i>	<i>fortibus</i>
Acc.:	<i>fortem</i>	<i>forte</i>	<i>fortēs</i>	<i>fortia</i>
Abl.:	<i>forti</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fortibus</i>	<i>fortibus</i>

ONE ENDING

fēlix, happy

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.:	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>
Gen.:	<i>fēlicis</i>	<i>fēlicis</i>	<i>fēlicium</i>	<i>fēlicium</i>
Dat.:	<i>fēlici</i>	<i>fēlici</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>
Acc.:	<i>fēlicem</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>
Abl.:	<i>fēlici</i>	<i>fēlici</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>

COMPARATIVE

altior, altius, higher

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.:	<i>altior</i>	<i>altius</i>	<i>altiōrēs</i>	<i>altiōra</i>
Gen.:	<i>altiōris</i>	<i>altiōris</i>	<i>altiōrum</i>	<i>altiōrum</i>
Dat.:	<i>altiōrī</i>	<i>altiōrī</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>
Acc.:	<i>altiōrem</i>	<i>altius</i>	<i>altiōrēs</i>	<i>altiōra</i>
Abl.:	<i>altiōre</i>	<i>altiōre</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>

PRONOUNS

PERSONAL

FIRST PERSON			SECOND PERSON		THIRD PERSON	
Ego, I			Tū, you (thou)		Is, he; ea, she; id, it	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL		
Nom.:	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	For declension, see next page	
Gen.:	meī	{ nostrī nostrum	tui	{ vestrī vestrum		
Dat.:	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs		
Acc.:	mē	nōs	tē	vōs		
Abl.:	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs		

REFLEXIVE

FIRST PERSON

meī, of myself

THIRD PERSON

suī, of himself, herself, itself,
themselves

SECOND PERSON

tui, of yourself

SINGULAR

PLURAL

These are declined like the personal pronouns of the same persons, except that they have no nominative.

Nom.:	none	none
Gen.:	suī	suī
Dat.:	sibi	sibi
Acc.:	sē	sē
Abl.:	sē	sē

DEMONSTRATIVE

hic, haec, hoc, this

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.:	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.:	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.:	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.:	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.:	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

ille, illa, illud, that

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.:	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.:	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.:	illī	illī	illī	illis	illis	illis
Acc.:	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.:	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self

is declined like *ille*, except that the neuter singular nominative and accusative end in *-um*, not in *-ud*.

is, ea, id, this, that, he, she, it

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.:	is	ea	id	eī	eae	ea
Gen.:	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.:	eī	eī	eī	eīs	eīs	eīs
Acc.:	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.:	eō	eā	eō	eīs	eīs	eīs

RELATIVE

quī, quae, quod, who, which, that

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.:	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.:	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.:	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.:	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.:	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

INTERROGATIVE

quis, quid, who? what?

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.:	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.:	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.:	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.:	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.:	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

VERBS

FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal Parts:	laudō	laudāre	laudāvī	laudātus
The three stems:		laudā-	laudāv-	laudāt-

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

*Present**I praise, I am praising, etc.**I am praised, etc.*

laudō	laudāmus	laudor	laudāmur
laudās	laudātis	laudāris	laudāminī
laudat	laudant	laudātur	laudantur

*Past**I praised, I was praising, etc.**I was praised, etc.*

laudābam	laudābāmus	laudābar	laudābāmur
laudābās	laudābātis	laudābāris	laudābāminī
laudābat	laudābant	laudābātur	laudābantur

*Future**I shall praise, etc.**I shall be praised, etc.*

laudābō	laudābimus	laudābor	laudābimur
laudābis	laudābitis	laudāberis	laudābiminī
laudābit	laudābunt	laudābitur	laudābuntur

*Perfect**I have praised, I praised, etc.**I have been (was) praised, etc.*

laudāvī	laudāvimus	laudātus, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{-a, -um} \end{array} \right.$	laudātī,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$
laudāvistī	laudāvistis		-ae, -a	
laudāvit	laudāvērunt		est	

*Past Perfect**I had praised, etc.**I had been praised, etc.*

laudāveram	laudāverāmus	laudātus, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eram} \\ \text{erās} \\ \text{-a, -um} \end{array} \right.$	laudātī,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erāmus} \\ \text{erātis} \\ \text{erant} \end{array} \right.$
laudāverās	laudāverātis		-ae, -a	
laudāverat	laudāverant			

IMPERATIVE

*Present**Praise thou, etc.**be thou praised, etc.*

2d	laudā	laudāte	laudāre	laudāmini
----	-------	---------	---------	-----------

INFINITIVE

*Present**laudāre, to praise**laudārī, to be praised*

PARTICIPLE

*Past**laudātus, -a, -um, having been praised*

SECOND CONJUGATION

Principal Parts:	monēō	monēre	monuī	monitus
The three stems:	monē-	monu-	monit-	

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

*Present**I warn, I am warning, etc.**I am warned, etc.*

monēō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris	monēmini
monet	monent	monētur	monentur

*Past**I warned, I was warning, etc.**I was warned, etc.*

monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris	monēbāmini
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur

*Future**I shall warn, etc.**I shall be warned, etc.*

monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis	monēbimini
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

Perfect

*I have warned, I warned, etc.**I have been (was) warned, etc.*

monuī	monuimus	monitus, -a, -um	} sum es est	monitī, -ae, -a	} sumus estis sunt
monuisti	monuistis				
monuit	monuērunt				

Past Perfect

*I had warned, etc.**I had been warned, etc.*

monueram	monuerāmus	monitus, -a, -um	} eram erās erat	monitī, -ae, -a	} erāmus erātis erant
monuerās	monuerātis				
monuerat	monuerant				

IMPERATIVE

Present

*warn thou, etc.**be thou warned, etc.*

2d	monē	monēte	monēre	monēminī
----	------	--------	--------	----------

INFINITIVE

Present

*monēre, to warn**monērī, to be warned*

PARTICIPLE

Past

monitus, -a, -um, having been warned

THIRD CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: dūcō

dūcere

dūxī,

ductus

The three stems:

dūce-

dūx-

duct-

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

Present

*I lead, I am leading, etc.**I am led, etc.*

dūcō	dūcimur	dūcor	dūcimur
dūcis	dūcitis	dūceris	dūcimini
dūcit	dūcunt	dūcitur	dūcuntur

I led, I am leading, etc.

dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis
dūcēbat	dūcēbant

*Past**I was led, etc.*

dūcēbār	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbāris	dūcēbāminī
dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur

I shall lead, etc.

dūcam	dūcēmus
dūcēs	dūcētis
dūcet	dūcent

*Future**I shall be led, etc.*

dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēris	dūcēminī
dūcētur	dūcentur

I have led, I led, etc.

dūxī	dūximus
dūxistī	dūxistis
dūxit	dūxērunt

*Perfect**I have been (was) led, etc.*

ductus,	sum	ductī,	sumus
-a, -um	es	-ae, -a	estis
	est		sunt

I had led, etc.

dūxeram	dūxerāmus
dūxerās	dūxerātis
dūxerat	dūxerant

*Past Perfect**I had been led, etc.*

ductus,	eram	ductī,	erāmus
-a, -um	erās	-ae, -a	erātis
	erat		erant

IMPERATIVE

*lead thou, etc.*2d dūc¹ dūcite*Present**be thou led, etc.*

dūcere dūcimī

INFINITIVE

Present

dūcere, to lead

dūcī, to be led

PARTICIPLE

Past

ductus, -a, -um, having been led

THIRD CONJUGATION — VERBS IN -IŌ

Principal Parts:	capīō	capere	cēpī	captus
The three stems:	cape-	cēp-	cēp-	capt-

¹ Irregular for dūce.

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE

*Present**I take, I am taking, etc.**I am taken, etc.*

capio capimus
 capis capitis
 capit capiunt

capior capimur
 caperis capimini
 capitur capiuntur

*Past**I took, I was taking, etc.**I was taken, etc.*

capiebam capiēbāmus
 capiēbās capiēbātis
 capiēbat capiēbant

capiebār capiēbāmur
 capiēbāris capiēbāmini
 capiēbātur capiēbantur

*Future**I shall take, etc.**I shall be taken, etc.*

capiam capiēmus
 capiēs capiētis
 capiet capient

capiar capiēmur
 capiēris capiēmini
 capiētur capientur

Perfect

I have taken, I took, etc.,
cēpī, etc.

I have been (was) taken, etc.
captus sum, etc.

Past Perfect

I had taken, etc.
cēperam, etc.

I had been taken, etc.
captus eram, etc.

IMPERATIVE

*Present**take thou, etc.**be thou taken, etc.*

2d cape capite

capere capimini

INFINITIVE

*Present**capere, to take**capī, to be taken*

PARTICIPLE

*Past**captus, -a, -um, having been taken*

COLLEGE ENTRANCE EXAMINATION BOARD

FIRST AND SECOND YEAR WORD LIST

1 ab <i>or</i> ā	31 ager	61 apud
2 abdō	32 agger	62 aqua
3 accēdō	33 aggredior	63 aquila
4 accidō	34 agmen	64 arbitror
5 accipiō	35 agō	65 arbor
6 ācer	36 alacer	66 arcessō
7 aciēs	37 aliēnus	67 arma
8 acūtus	38 aliquis	68 at
9 ad	39 aliter	69 atque <i>or</i> ac
10 adeō (<i>adv.</i>)	40 alius	70 attingō
11 adhibeō	41 alō	71 auctor
12 adigō	42 alter	72 auctōritās
13 aditus	43 altus	73 audāx
14 administrō	44 amicus	74 audeō
15 admittō	45 āmittō	75 audiō
16 admodum	46 amplius	76 augeō
17 adorior	47 amplus	77 aut
18 adsum	48 an	78 autem
19 adulēscēns	49 ancora	79 auxilium
20 adversus (<i>adj.</i>)	50 angustiae	80 barbarus
21 aedificium	51 angustus	81 bellum
22 aeger	52 animadvertō	82 bene
23 aegrē	53 animus	83 beneficium
24 aequō	54 annus	84 bīduum
25 aequus	55 ante	85 bīnī
26 aes	56 antea	86 bis
27 aestās	57 antiquus	87 bonus
28 aestus	58 aperiō	88 brevis
29 aetās	59 appellō, -āre	89 cadō
30 afficiō	60 appropinquō	90 caedēs

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Principal Parts:	audiō	audire	audivi	auditus
The three stems:	audi-	audi-	audi-	audit-

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE

*Present**I hear, I am hearing, etc.**I am heard, etc.*

audiō	audimus	audior	audimur
audis	auditis	audiris	audimini
audit	audiunt	auditur	audiuntur

*Past**I heard, I was hearing, etc.**I was heard, etc.*

audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris	audiēbāmini
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

*Future**I shall hear, etc.**I shall be heard, etc.*

audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris	audiēmini
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

*Perfect**I have heard, I heard, etc.**I have been (was) heard, etc.*

audivī, etc.

auditus sum, etc.

*Past Perfect**I had heard, etc.**I had been heard, etc.*

audiveram, etc.

auditus eram, etc.

IMPERATIVE

*Present**hear thou, etc.**be thou heard, etc.*

2d	audi	audite	audire	audimini
----	------	--------	--------	----------

INFINITIVE

Present

audire, to hear

audiri, to be heard

PARTICIPLE

Past

auditus, -a, -um, having been heard

IRREGULAR VERB: ESSE

Principal Parts: sum, esse, fui

INDICATIVE

*Present**I am, etc.*

sum	sumus
es	estis
est	sunt

*Past**I was, etc.*

eram	erāmus
erās	erātis
erat	erant

*Future**I shall be, etc.*

erō	erimus
eris	eritis
erit	erunt

*Perfect**I have been, I was, etc.*

fui	fuiimus
fuisti	fuistis
fuit	fuērunt

*Past Perfect**I had been*

fueram	fuerāmus
fuerās	fuerātis
fuerat	fuerant

IMPERATIVE

Present

es, be (thou), este, be (you)

INFINITIVE

Present

esse, to be

PARTICIPLE

Past

(lacking)

FIRST AND SECOND YEAR WORD LIST

1 from; by	31 field	61 at; among
2 hide	32 siege-mound	62 water
3 approach	33 attack	63 eagle
4 happen	34 marching column	64 judge; think
5 receive	35 drive; do	65 tree
6 fierce, keen	36 eager, brisk	66 summon
7 line of battle	37 another's; foreign	67 weapons, arms
8 sharp	38 some one	68 but
9 to, toward	39 otherwise	69 and (also)
10 so; even	40 another	70 touch; reach
11 apply; summon	41 nourish	71 founder
12 drive; hurl	42 the other (of two)	72 authority
13 approach (<i>noun</i>)	43 high	73 bold; daring
14 manage	44 friend	74 dare
15 let go; admit	45 send away; lose	75 hear
16 quite, very	46 more; further	76 increase
17 attack	47 large; splendid	77 or
18 be present	48 or	78 but; moreover
19 young man	49 anchor	79 help
20 facing; adverse	50 narrows; strait	80 barbarous
21 building	51 narrow	81 war
22 sick	52 attend to; punish	82 well
23 with difficulty	53 mind; spirit	83 kindness
24 make equal	54 year	84 two days
25 level; fair	55 before (<i>prep.</i>)	85 two by two
26 copper; bronze	56 before (<i>adv.</i>)	86 twice
27 summer	57 ancient	87 good
28 heat; tide	58 open (<i>verb</i>)	88 short
29 age	59 call, name	89 fall
30 affect	60 approach	90 slaughter

91 caedō	131 commeātus	171 contrōversia
92 calamitās	132 commemorō	172 contumēlia
93 campus	133 committō	173 cōpia
94 capiō	134 commodus	174 cornū
95 captivus	135 communicō	175 corpus
96 caput	136 communis	176 cotidiē
97 castellum	137 comperiō	177 creber
98 castra	138 complūrēs	178 crēdō
99 cāsus	139 concēdō	179 cruciātus
100 causa	140 concilium	180 cum (<i>prep.</i>)
101 cēdō	141 condiciō	181 cum (<i>conj.</i>)
102 celer	142 cōnfertus	182 cupidus
103 cēseō	143 cōnfestim	183 cupiō
104 centum	144 cōnficiō	184 cūr
105 centuriō	145 cōnfidō	185 cūra
106 cernō	146 cōnfirmō	186 cūrō
107 certus	147 cōnfligō	187 currō
108 cēteri	148 coniūrō	188 cursus
109 cibus	149 cōnor	189 cūstōs
110 circiter	150 conquirō	190 dē
111 circum	151 cōnscrībō	191 dēbeō
112 circumdō	152 cōnsentiō	192 decem
113 circum sistō	153 cōnsequor	193 dēcernō
114 citerior	154 cōnsidō	194 dēcertō
115 cīvis	155 cōnsilium	195 decimus
116 cīvītās	156 cōnsistō	196 dēclivis
117 clam	157 cōnspiciō	197 dēdō
118 clāmō	158 cōnspicor	198 dēfendō
119 classis	159 cōnstat	199 dēferō
120 claudō	160 cōnstituō	200 dēfessus
121 cliēns	161 cōnsuēscō	201 dēficiō
122 coepī	162 cōnsuētūdō	202 deinde
123 cōgitō	163 cōnsul	203 dēleō
124 cognōscō	164 cōnsulō	204 dēligō, -ere
125 cōgō	165 cōnsūmō	205 dēmōnstrō
126 cohors	166 contemnō	206 dēserō
127 colligō, -ere	167 contendō	207 dēsiderē
128 collis	168 contineō	208 dēsistō
129 collocō	169 continuus	209 dēspērō
130 colloquium	170 contrā	210 dēspiciō

91	slay	131	supplies	171	dispute
92	disaster	132	mention	172	insult
93	plain	133	commit; intrust	173	supply; <i>pl.</i> , forces
94	take	134	convenient	174	horn; (army) wing
95	captive	135	share; impart	175	body
96	head	136	common	176	daily
97	redoubt	137	find out	177	frequent
98	camp	138	several	178	believe; trust
99	chance; accident	139	yield; grant	179	torture
100	cause	140	council	180	with
101	go; yield	141	condition	181	when; since
102	swift	142	crowded	182	desirous
103	estimate; think	143	at once	183	desire
104	a hundred	144	finish; exhaust	184	why
105	centurion	145	trust	185	care
106	discern	146	strengthen	186	care for
107	fixed; certain	147	clash; fight	187	run
108	the others	148	conspire	188	speed; course
109	food	149	try	189	a guard
110	about	150	search out	190	from; concerning
111	around	151	enrol	191	owe; ought
112	put around	152	agree	192	ten
113	stand around	153	overtake	193	decide; decree
114	hither	154	encamp	194	fight to a finish
115	citizen	155	advice; plan	195	tenth
116	citizenship; state	156	stand; halt	196	sloping; steep
117	secretly	157	behold; see	197	surrender
118	shout	158	catch sight of	198	defend
119	fleet	159	it is evident	199	bring; report
120	shut	160	station; decide	200	exhausted
121	dependent	161	be accustomed	201	fail; rebel
122	begin	162	custom	202	then
123	consider; think	163	consul	203	destroy
124	ascertain	164	consult	204	select
125	collect; force	165	use up; consume	205	point out
126	cohort	166	despise	206	desert
127	collect	167	hasten; contend	207	long for; miss
128	hill	168	contain; restrain	208	cease
129	place (<i>verb</i>)	169	successive	209	despair of
130	conference	170	against	210	despise

211 dēsūm	251 equus	291 finīō
212 dētrīmentum	252 et	292 finis
213 deus	253 etiam	293 finitimus
214 dexter	254 etsī	294 fiō
215 dīcō	255 ex or ē	295 firmus
216 diēs	256 exanimō	296 fleō
217 differō	257 excipiō	297 flūmen
218 difficilis	258 exerceō	298 fluō
219 dignus	259 exercitātiō	299 fōrma
220 diligēns	260 exercitus	300 fors
221 dīmīcō	261 exiguus	301 fortis
222 dīrigō	262 existimō	302 fortūna
223 dīripiō	263 exitus	303 fossa
224 disciplīna	264 expediō	304 frangō
225 dispergō	265 experior	305 frāter
226 diū	266 explōrātor	306 frōns, -ntis
227 diversus	267 explōrō	307 frūmentum
228 dividō	268 expōnō	308 frūstrā
229 dō	269 expugnō	309 fuga
230 doceō	270 exspectō	310 fugiō
231 doleō	271 extruō	311 fundō, -ere
232 domus	272 extrā	312 gēns
233 dubitō	273 extrēmus	313 genus
234 dūcō	274 facilis	314 gerō
235 dum	275 faciō	315 gladius
236 duo	276 factiō	316 glōria
237 dūrus	277 facultās	317 grātia
238 dux	278 fallō	318 grātus
239 ēditus	279 fāma	319 gravis
240 efferō	280 fames	320 -gredior
241 efficiō	281 familia	321 habeō
242 ego	282 familiāris	322 hīberna
243 ēgregius	283 ferē	323 hic (<i>pron.</i>)
244 emō	284 ferō	324 hiemō
245 enim	285 ferrum	325 hiems
246 eō, īre	286 ferus	326 homō
247 eō (<i>adv.</i>)	287 fidēs	327 honor
248 eōdem	288 fiducia	328 hōra
249 eques	289 figō	329 hortor
250 equitātus	290 filius	330 hostis

211 be lacking	251 horse	291 end; limit
212 loss	252 and	292 end (<i>noun</i>)
213 god	253 even; also	293 neighbor(ing)
214 right (hand)	254 although	294 be made; become
215 say	255 out of; from	295 strong; firm
216 day	256 kill	296 weep
217 differ; defer	257 take; receive	297 river
218 difficult	258 drill; train	298 flow
219 worthy	259 practice	299 form; beauty
220 diligent	260 army	300 chance
221 fight; struggle	261 scanty	301 brave
222 direct	262 estimate; think	302 fortune
223 plunder	263 exit; issue	303 trench
224 training	264 extricate	304 break
225 scatter	265 try; test	305 brother
226 for a long time	266 scout	306 forehead; front
227 different	267 investigate	307 grain
228 divide	268 set forth; explain	308 in vain
229 give; put	269 take by assault	309 flight
230 teach	270 await	310 flee
231 grieve	271 build up	311 pour; rout
232 home; house	272 outside	312 clan; tribe
233 doubt; hesitate	273 last; end of	313 race; kind
234 lead	274 easy	314 carry on
235 while; until	275 make; do	315 sword
236 two	276 faction; party	316 fame; glory
237 hard	277 ability	317 favor; influence
238 leader	278 deceive	318 pleasing
239 elevated	279 report; fame	319 heavy; serious
240 carry forth; elate	280 hunger	320 step; go
241 accomplish	281 household	321 have
242 I	282 of the household	322 winter quarters
243 distinguished	283 almost; generally	323 this; he
244 buy; take	284 bear; bring	324 spend the winter
245 for	285 iron	325 winter
246 go	286 wild; fierce	326 man
247 thither	287 faith; protection	327 honor; office
248 to the same place	288 confidence	328 hour
249 horseman	289 fix; fasten	329 urge; encourage
250 cavalry	290 son	330 enemy

331 hūc	371 insula	411 lēgātus
332 humilis	372 integer	412 legiō
333 iaciō	373 intellegō	413 lenis
334 iam	374 inter	414 lēvis
335 ibi	375 interclūdō	415 lēx
336 idem	376 intereā	416 liber
337 idōneus	377 intereō	417 liberī
338 ignis	378 interest	418 liberō
339 ignōrō	379 interficiō	419 licet
340 ille	380 interim	420 littera
341 impedimentum	381 interior	421 lītus
342 impediō	382 intermittō	422 locus
343 imperium	383 intervāllum	423 longus
344 imperō	384 intrā	424 loquor
345 impetrō	385 inveniō	425 lūx
346 impetus	386 invitus	426 magis
347 in	387 ipse	427 magistrātus
348 incendō	388 is	428 magnus
349 incīdō	389 iste	429 mālō
350 incipiō	390 ita	430 malus
351 incitō	391 item	431 mandō
352 incolō	392 iter	432 maneō
353 incolumis	393 iubeō	433 manus
354 inde	394 iūdicō	434 mare
355 indicō	395 iugum	435 māter
356 ineō	396 iungō	436 māteria
357 inermis	397 iūrō	437 mātūrus
358 inferior	398 iūs	438 mediocris
359 infimus <i>or</i> imus	399 iūs iūrandum	439 medius
360 inimicus	400 iūstus	440 memoria
361 inīquus	401 iuvō	441 mēns
362 initium	402 labor, -ōris	442 mēnsis
363 iniūria	403 labōrō	443 mercātor
364 inopia	404 laccessō	444 mereō
365 inquam	405 lapis	445 meridiēs
366 insidiae	406 lātus	446 metus
367 insigne	407 latus	447 meus
368 instituō	408 laudō	448 miles
369 instō	409 laus	449 mille
370 instruō	410 lēgatiō	450 minuō

331 hither	371 island	411 lieutenant
332 low; humble	372 whole; uninjured	412 legion
333 throw; hurl	373 understand; know	413 gentle; mild
334 already; now	374 between; among	414 light
335 there	375 cut off	415 law
336 the same	376 meanwhile	416 free (<i>adj.</i>)
337 suitable	377 perish	417 children
338 fire	378 it concerns	418 free (<i>verb</i>)
339 be unaware of	379 kill	419 it is permitted
340 that; he	380 meantime	420 letter; <i>pl.</i> epistle
341 hindrance	381 inner	421 shore
342 hinder	382 interrupt	422 place
343 command (<i>noun</i>)	383 distance; interval	423 long
344 command (<i>verb</i>)	384 within	424 talk; speak
345 gain one's request	385 find; learn	425 light
346 attack	386 unwilling	426 more
347 into; in; on	387 self; himself	427 magistrate
348 set on fire	388 this; that; he	428 large; great
349 fall upon; happen	389 that (of yours)	429 prefer
350 begin	390 so; thus	430 bad
351 incite	391 likewise	431 intrust; order
352 dwell	392 journey; march	432 remain
353 unharmed	393 order (<i>verb</i>)	433 hand; force
354 thence; then	394 judge	434 sea
355 declare	395 yoke; ridge	435 mother
356 enter; begin	396 join	436 material; timber
357 unarmed	397 swear	437 ripe
358 lower; inferior	398 justice; right	438 ordinary
359 lowest; bottom of	399 oath	439 middle (of)
360 enemy	400 just	440 memory
361 uneven; unjust	401 help; delight	441 mind
362 beginning	402 labor; toil	442 month
363 injustice	403 labor; strive	443 trader
364 lack; need	404 provoke	444 deserve
365 say	405 stone	445 mid-day; south
366 ambush; plot	406 broad	446 fear; anxiety
367 mark; decoration	407 side	447 my; mine
368 arrange; begin	408 praise (<i>verb</i>)	448 soldier
369 press on	409 praise (<i>noun</i>)	449 a thousand
370 construct	410 embassy	450 lessen

451 mīror	491 nisi	531 omnis
452 mīrus	492 nōbilis	532 onerārius
453 miser	493 noceō	533 onus
454 mittō	494 noctū	534 opera
455 modo	495 nōlō	535 opiniō
456 modus	496 nōmen	536 oportet
457 moneō	497 nōn	537 oppidum
458 mōns	498 nōndum	538 opportūnus
459 mora	499 nōnus	539 opprimō
460 moror	500 nōscō	540 oppugnō
461 mors	501 noster	541 ops
462 mōs	502 novem	542 opus
463 mōtus	503 novus	543 ōrātiō
464 moveō	504 nox	544 ōrdō
465 mulier	505 nūdō	545 orior
466 multus	506 nūllus	546 ōrō
467 mūniō	507 num	547 ostendō
468 mūnus	508 numerus	548 pābulor
469 mūrus	509 numquam	549 pābulum
470 mūtō	510 nunc	550 pācō
471 nam	511 nūntiō	551 paene
472 namque	512 nūntius	552 palūs
473 nancīscor	513 ob	553 pār
474 nāscor	514 obiciō	554 parcō
475 nātiō	515 obses	555 pāreō
476 nātūra	516 obsideō	556 parō
477 nāvigō	517 obtineō	557 pars
478 nāvis	518 occāsiō	558 parvus
479 -ne	519 occāsus	559 passus
480 nē	520 occidō	560 pateō
481 necesse	521 occultō	561 pater
482 necō	522 occultus	562 patior
483 neglegō	523 occupō	563 paucī
484 negō	524 occurrō	564 paulātim
485 negōtium	525 octāvus	565 paulisper
486 nēmō	526 octō	566 paulum
487 neque <i>or</i> nec	527 oculus	567 pāx
488 neuter	528 offerō	568 pecūnia
489 neve <i>or</i> neu	529 officium	569 pecus
490 nihil	530 omnīnō	570 pedes

451 wonder; admire	491 unless	531 every; all
452 wonderful	492 noble; famous	532 of burden
453 wretched	493 do harm	533 burden
454 send	494 at night	534 work; service
455 only	495 be unwilling	535 opinion
456 manner	496 name	536 ought
457 advise; warn	497 not	537 town
458 mountain; hill	498 not yet	538 opportune
459 delay (<i>noun</i>)	499 ninth	539 overwhelm
460 delay (<i>verb</i>)	500 know; learn	540 storm; assault
461 death	501 our	541 aid; resources
462 custom; habit	502 nine	542 work
463 motion; revolt	503 new	543 speech; oration
464 move	504 night	544 order; rank
465 woman	505 lay bare; expose	545 rise
466 much	506 none; no	546 beg
467 fortify	507 whether	547 show
468 gift; service	508 number	548 forage
469 wall	509 never	549 fodder
470 change	510 now	550 pacify
471 for	511 announce; report	551 almost
472 for (indeed)	512 messenger	552 marsh
473 obtain	513 on account of	553 equal
474 be born	514 oppose	554 spare
475 nation	515 hostage	555 obey
476 nature	516 besiege	556 prepare
477 sail	517 obtain	557 part
478 ship	518 opportunity	558 small
479 (<i>sign of question</i>)	519 setting	559 pace
480 lest	520 cut down; kill	560 be open; extend
481 necessary	521 conceal	561 father
482 kill	522 concealed	562 suffer; allow
483 disregard	523 seize; occupy	563 few
484 deny	524 meet; occur	564 little by little
485 business	525 eighth	565 for a little while
486 no one	526 eight	566 a little
487 and not; nor	527 eye	567 peace
488 neither	528 present; offer	568 money
489 or not; nor	529 duty; service	569 cattle
490 nothing	530 altogether; at all	570 foot-soldier

571 pellō	611 postulō	651 prōnūntiō
572 pendō	612 potēns	652 prope
573 per	613 potestās	653 propinquus
574 pereō	614 potior	654 propter
575 perficiō	615 praebeō	655 propterea
576 perfidia	616 praecipiō	656 prōtinus
577 periculum	617 praeda	657 prōvincia
578 peritus	618 praedicō	658 prūdēns
579 permittō	619 praefectus	659 pūblicus
580 perpetuus	620 praeficiō	660 puer
581 perspicīō	621 praemittō	661 pugna
582 persuādēō	622 praemium	662 putō
583 pertineō	623 praesēns	663 quā
584 perturbō	624 praesertim	664 quaerō
585 pēs	625 praesidium	665 quaestor
586 petō	626 praestō	666 quam
587 pīlum	627 praesum	667 quantus
588 placeō	628 praeter	668 quārtus
589 plānitīēs	629 praeterea	669 quattuor
590 plēbs	630prehendō	670 -que
591 -pleō	631 premō	671 queror
592 plērique	632 prex	672 quī
593 plērumque	633 prīdiē	673 quicumque
594 poena	634 prīmus	674 quīdam
595 polliceor	635 prīnceps	675 quidem
596 pōnō	636 prīncipātus	676 quīēs
597 pōns	637 prior	677 quīētus
598 populus	638 prīstinus	678 quīn
599 populus	639 priusquam	679 quīnque
600 porta	640 prīvātus	680 quīntus
601 portō	641 prō	681 quis
602 portus	642 probō	682 quisquam
603 poscō	643 procul	683 quisque
604 possum	644 prōdō	684 quō
605 post	645 proelium	685 quod
606 posteā	646 profectiō	686 quoniam
607 posteāquam	647 prōficiō	687 quoque
608 posterus	648 proficiscor	688 rapiō
609 postquam	649 prohibeō	689 ratiō
610 postrīdiē	650 prōiciō	690 recēns

571 drive; defeat	611 demand	651 proclaim
572 weigh; pay	612 powerful	652 near; almost
573 through	613 power; authority	653 neighboring
574 perish	614 get possession of	654 on account of
575 accomplish	615 furnish	655 for this reason
576 treachery	616 order; instruct	656 forthwith
577 danger	617 booty	657 province
578 skilful	618 declare; boast	658 prudent
579 permit; intrust	619 commander	659 of the state
580 perpetual	620 put in charge	660 boy
581 perceive	621 send ahead	661 fight; battle
582 persuade	622 reward	662 think
583 reach; pertain	623 present	663 where
584 disturb	624 especially	664 seek; inquire
585 foot	625 garrison; guard	665 treasurer
586 seek	626 excel; show	666 than; how
587 pike	627 be in charge of	667 how great
588 please	628 beyond; except	668 fourth
589 plain	629 besides	669 four
590 common people	630 seize; grasp	670 and
591 fill	631 press; oppress	671 complain
592 the majority	632 prayer	672 who; which
593 generally	633 the day before	673 whoever
594 penalty	634 first	674 a certain
595 promise	635 leader; chief	675 indeed
596 put; place	636 leadership	676 rest; quiet
597 bridge	637 former; earlier	677 quiet
598 devastate	638 earlier; old-time	678 (but) that
599 people	639 before; until	679 five
600 gate	640 private	680 fifth
601 carry	641 for; in behalf of	681 who? any
602 harbor	642 approve	682 any one
603 demand	643 far off	683 each one
604 be able	644 put forth; betray	684 whither
605 after (<i>prep.</i>)	645 battle	685 because
606 afterwards	646 departure	686 since
607 after (<i>conj.</i>)	647 accomplish	687 also
608 following; next	648 set out	688 seize
609 after (<i>conj.</i>)	649 prohibit	689 account; reason
610 on the next day	650 throw; abandon	690 fresh; recent

691 recuperō	731 sententia	771 stō
692 recūsō	732 sentiō	772 studeō
693 reddō	733 septem	773 sub
694 redeō	734 septimus	774 subitō
695 redigō	735 sequor	775 sublevō
696 reficiō	736 servitūs	776 subsequor
697 regiō	737 servō	777 subsidium
698 rēgnum	738 servus	778 succēdō
699 regō	739 sex	779 suī
700 religiō	740 sextus	780 sum
701 relinquō	741 sī	781 summa
702 reliquus	742 sīc	782 summus
703 remittō	743 sicut	783 sūmō
704 rēmus	744 significō	784 superior
705 repente	745 signum	785 superō
706 repentīnus	746 silentium	786 supersum
707 reperiō	747 silva	787 supplicium
708 rēs	748 similis	788 suprā
709 respondeō	749 simul	789 suscipiō
710 restituō	750 simulō	790 suspīcor
711 revertor	751 sine	791 sustineō
712 rēx	752 singulī	792 suus
713 rīpa	753 sinister	793 tam
714 rogō	754 sive or seu	794 tamen
715 rumor	755 socius	795 tangō
716 rumpō	756 sōl	796 tantus
717 rūrsus	757 sollicitō	797 tardō
718 saepe	758 solum	798 tardus
719 sagitta	759 sōlus	799 tegō
720 salūs	760 spatium	800 tēlum
721 satis	761 speciēs	801 temerē
722 saxum	762 spectō	802 tempestās
723 -scendō	763 spērō	803 temptō
724 sciō	764 spēs	804 tempus
725 scrībō	765 -spiciō	805 tendō
726 scūtum	766 sponte	806 teneō
727 secundus	767 statim	807 tergum
728 sed	768 statio	808 terra
729 semper	769 statuō	809 terreō
730 senātus	770 stipendium	810 tertius

691 recover	731 opinion	771 stand
692 refuse	732 feel; think	772 be eager
693 return; render	733 seven	773 under; toward
694 go back	734 seventh	774 suddenly
695 drive back	735 follow	775 lift up; lighten
696 repair	736 slavery	776 follow closely
697 district	737 save; protect	777 reserve; aid
698 kingdom	738 slave	778 succeed
699 rule	739 six	779 himself
700 religion	740 sixth	780 be
701 leave; abandon	741 if	781 sum; command
702 remaining	742 thus; so	782 highest; top of
703 send back	743 just as	783 take; assume
704 oar	744 indicate	784 upper; higher
705 suddenly	745 sign; standard	785 conquer; surpass
706 sudden	746 silence	786 be left; remain
707 find; learn	747 wood; forest	787 punishment
708 thing	748 like	788 above
709 answer	749 at the same time	789 undertake
710 restore	750 pretend	790 suspect
711 return	751 without	791 sustain
712 king	752 one by one	792 his (own)
713 bank	753 left (hand)	793 so
714 ask	754 or if	794 nevertheless
715 report	755 comrade; ally	795 touch
716 break; burst	756 sun	796 so great
717 again	757 stir up; bribe	797 check; delay
718 often	758 only	798 slow; late
719 arrow	759 alone	799 cover
720 safety; welfare	760 space; time	800 dart; spear
721 enough; quite	761 appearance	801 rashly
722 rock	762 look at; face	802 weather; storm
723 climb	763 hope (<i>verb</i>)	803 try; tempt
724 know	764 hope (<i>noun</i>)	804 time
725 write	765 look	805 stretch; extend
726 shield	766 of one's accord	806 hold; keep
727 second	767 at once	807 back
728 but	768 outpost; picket	808 land; earth
729 always	769 set; decide	809 frighten
730 senate	770 tribute; pay	810 third

811 testis	841 unde	871 vester
812 timeō	842 undique	872 vestis
813 tollō	843 ūniversus	873 vetus
814 tormentum	844 ūnus	874 via
815 tot	845 urbs	875 vicus
816 totidem	846 ūsque	876 videō
817 tōtus	847 ūsus	877 vigilia
818 trabs	848 ut <i>or</i> utī	878 vīgintī
819 trādō	849 uter	879 vincō
820 trahō	850 uterque	880 vir
821 trāns	851 ūtilis	881 virtūs
822 trēs	852 ūtor	882 vis
823 tribūnus	853 uxor	883 vīta
824 tribuō	854 vacuus	884 vītō
825 trīdum	855 vadum	885 vīvō
826 tū	856 vagor	886 vīvus
827 tueor	857 valeō	887 vix
828 tum	858 vallēs	888 vocō
829 tumultus	859 vāllum	889 volō
830 tumulus	860 vāstō	890 voluntās
831 turpis	861 vehemēns	891 vōx
832 turris	862 vehō	892 vulgus
833 tūtus	863 vel	893 vulnus
834 tuus	864 veniō	
835 ubi	865 ventus	
836 ūllus	866 vereor	
837 ulterior; ultimus	867 versor	
838 ultrō	868 vertō	
839 umquam	869 vērus	
840 ūnā	870 vesper	

811 witness	841 whence	871 your
812 fear	842 from all sides	872 clothing
813 lift; take away	843 entire; universal	873 old
814 war engine	844 one	874 road; way
815 so many	845 city	875 village
816 just as many	846 as far as; even	876 see
817 whole of	847 experience; need	877 watch (of night)
818 beam; timber	848 that; as; when	878 twenty
819 hand down	849 which (of two)	879 conquer
820 draw; drag	850 both; each	880 man
821 across	851 useful	881 courage
822 three	852 use (<i>verb</i>)	882 force
823 tribune	853 wife	883 life
824 assign; grant	854 empty; vacant	884 avoid
825 three days	855 ford	885 live
826 thou; you	856 roam	886 alive
827 gaze at; protect	857 be strong	887 scarcely
828 then	858 valley	888 call
829 uproar; uprising	859 wall	889 wish
830 mound	860 lay waste	890 purpose; wish
831 disgraceful	861 vehement	891 voice
832 tower	862 carry	892 crowd
833 safe	863 or	893 wound
834 thine; your	864 come	
835 where; when	865 wind	
836 any	866 fear; respect	
837 farther; farthest	867 be busy; live	
838 voluntarily	868 turn	
839 ever	869 true	
840 together	870 evening	

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

Minerva Protecting the Arts from Time	<i>Frontispiece</i>
	PAGE
Galba Puzzling over his English	xii
Arēna	xvi
Villa	xviii
Villa	xx
Columna	xxii
Galba Senecam Salūtat	xxiii
Columna Forum Dividit	xxv
Toga Longa Est	xxvi
Via Longa et Pulchra Est	3
A Roman Boy	4
Casa Agricolae Parva Est	6
Roman Slaves	10
Pictūram Laudō	11
Octāvia et Augusta	14
Puellae Parvae Viam Mōnstrō	17
Pecūnia	19
Cum Diligentiā Labōrō	22
Rōma in Italiā Est	24
Octāvia in Scholā cum Amicā Est	26
Silva Magna	29
The Roman Forum	31
Via Appia	33
The Alban Hills	34
Blind Old Appius Claudius Entering the Senate	35
Nautae Nāvigant	37
Nauta ab Īnsulā Magnā Nāvigat	38
Schola Rōmāna	40
A Scene on the Appian Way	41
Diligentiam Puellārum Pulchrārum Laudō	43
Porta San Sebastiano	45
Domina Rōmāna	47
Puellās Pulchrās Videō	49
Stellae Nautās Monent	52
A Roman House	55

	PAGE
Hastis Pugnans	57
Convivae	58
Aquilae	60
Etruscan Tombs near Orvieto	61
Pictura Pulchra	63
Marcus Aurelius	70
Equus Niger Pulcher Est	71
A Roman Ship	76
Dominus Equi Albī Sum	77
Agri Rōmāni	79
Central View of Carthage To-day	82
Equum Nigrum Videmus	83
Lupus	87
A Roman Altar	88
Puellae cum Puerō Pulchrō Sunt	89
Puer et Agnus	93
Roman Soldiers	94
Equi Rōmāni	97
Homērus	100
Augustus	101
Equi Nigri Sunt	103
Athens	107
Captivi	110
The Roman Forum	112
Equos Albos Videō	115
The Circus Maximus (Restored)	118
A Roman Sword in Its Sheath	120
Vae Victis!	123
Dominum Laudāte	126
Head of a Vestal Virgin	128
The So-called Temple of Vesta at Rome	129
The Dying Gaul	136
Roman Ruins in Gaul	138
Templum Pulchrum Est	140
Rōmāni Oppidum Oppugnant	143
Catō	144
Carthage	145
In Periculō Magnō Est	146
Tuba	148
A Restoration of the Forum Looking Northwest	150
Templa Graeca Antiqua Sunt	152

	PAGE
Place Uses in Latin	154
Castra Rōmāna	157
Gladius et Pilum	159
Restoration of the Forum Looking Southeast	161
Pyrrhus	164
Forum et Tempia Pulchra Sunt	165
Court of a House in Pompeii	168
Servīs Pigrīs Praemia nōn Dabō	170
Templum Antīquum	173
Tuba Signum Dat	176
Colossēum Videō	179
Rōma Antīqua	183
Porta Nigra in Prōvinciā	187
General View of Carthage	191
Laetae Estis	195
Julius Caesar	198
A Part of Hadrian's Villa	206
A Roman Triumph	213
Cicerō	221
Miles Rōmānus	224
A Scene in the Roman Senate	227
The Murder of Caesar	234
Militēs Dūcam	237
Carthage	241
Peditēs Dūxi	245
Jupiter	249
Roman Writing Materials	250
Persōnae Rōmānae	256
A Roman Room Showing a Calendar	258
Flūmen Rōmānum	260
Relief on the Arch of Titus	265
A Luxurious Litter	274
Īnsula in Tiberī	278
The Finding of Romulus and Remus	281
Mōns	287
Augustus	293
Mare	295
Leō	302
Marcus Aurelius about to Sacrifice	306
Rūpēs Tarpeia	315
Cloaca Maxima	317

	PAGE
The Oath of the Horatii. — The So-called Tomb of the Horatii and Curiatii	325
The Alban Lake	326
Cavē Canem — Look out for the Dog	337
The Ruins of Delphi	347
Augur Observing the Sacred Chickens	348
A Roman Matron	354
Mūcius Scaevola	363
Pōns Rōmānus	372
Bridge over the Anio	376
Cornū	384
Cornua	386
Nāvis in Portū Est	388
Cicero Denouncing Catiline in the Senate	391
The Rhine	397
"Clients" Loitering about the Streets	399

VOCABULARIES

ABBREVIATIONS

abl. = ablative
acc. = accusative
adj. = adjective
adv. = adverb
compar. = comparative
conj. = conjunction
dat. = dative
dem. = demonstrative
f. = feminine
fut. = future
gen. = genitive
imper. = imperative
impers. = impersonal
ind. = indicative
indecl. = indeclinable

interj. = interjection
interr. = interrogative
m. = masculine
n. = neuter
num. = numeral
part. = participle
perf. = perfect
pers. = personal
pl. = plural
poss. = possessive
prep. = preposition
pres. = present
pron. = pronoun
rel. = relative
superl. = superlative

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

A. C. = **ante Christum**, *before the Christian era.*

ā, ab, prep. (with abl.), *from, by.*

abdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to disown; sē abdicāre* (with abl.), *to resign.*

abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *to put away, to hide; sē abdere*, *to hide.*

abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *to lead away, to remove, to take along.*

abeō, -īre, -iī, —, *to go away.*

aberam, abesse, see **absum**.

abī, imper. of **abeō**.

abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to throw (away), to cast.*

abruptus, -a, -um, adj., *abrupt, deep, steep.*

absum, abesse, āfuī, —, *to be away, to be absent.*

ac, conj. (same as **atque**), *and, as well as.*

accendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *to kindle, to light.*

accēnsus, past part. of **accendō**.

accēpit, perf. of **accipiō**.

accīnctus, past part. of **accingō**.

accingō, -ere, -cīnxī, -cīnctus, *to gird.*

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *to take, to receive, to accept, to admit, to let in, to welcome; finem accipere, to come to an end; in dēditiōnem accipere, to accept the surrender of.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp, bitter, eager, desperate.*

ācerimē, superl. of **ācriter**.

ācerimus, -a, -um, superl. of **ācer, ācris, ācre**.

aciēs, -ēī, f., *line of battle.*

ācriter, adv., *sharply, fiercely.*

Actium, -tī, n., *Actium*, a promontory in Epirus where Octavianus defeated Antony.

ad, prep. (with acc.), *to, towards, near, for.*

additus, past part. of **addō**.

addō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *to add, to annex.*

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *to lead to, to bring, to prompt, to induce.*

adesse, see **adsum**.

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to display.*

adhūc, adv., *hitherto.*

adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to add, to annex.*

adiēcī, perf. of **adiciō**.

adiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *to join, to annex.*

- administrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to rule.*
- admirātiō**, -ōnis, f., *admiration, wonder.*
- admirātor**, -ōris, m., *admirer.*
- admoneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to warn.*
- admoveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *to bring near, to bring to.*
- adspexī**, perf. of **adspiciō**.
- adspiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *to see.*
- adstāns**, -stantis, pres. part. of **adstō**.
- adstō**, -āre, -stitī, —, *to stand by, to stand up.*
- adsum**, *adesse*, **adfuī**, —, *to be present.*
- adulēscēns**, -centis, m., *a youth.*
- adventus**, -ūs, m., *coming, arrival.*
- adversārius**, -ī, m., *enemy, opponent.*
- adversus**, -a, -um, adj., *in front.*
- adversus**, prep. (with acc.), *against.*
- aedificō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to build.*
- aedilicius**, -cī, m., *a former aedile (magistrate for police and public works).*
- aeger**, -gra, -grum, adj., *ill, sick.*
- aegrōtō**, -āre, -āvī, —, *to be sick.*
- Aegyptus**, -ī, f., *Egypt.*
- Aemilius**, -lī, m., *Aemilius*, the name of a famous Roman clan.
- Aenēas**, -ae, m., *Aeneas*, the Trojan hero and founder of Lavinium.
- aēneus**, -a, -um, adj., *of copper, of bronze.*
- Aequī**, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Aequi*, an early Italian people.
- aequus**, -qua, -quum, adj., *even, level, fair, just.*
- aestās**, -ātis, f., *summer.*
- aetās**, -ātis, f., *age, time.*
- aeternus**, -a, -um, adj., *eternal.*
- affēcī**, perf. of **afficiō**.
- afficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *to treat; iniuriā afficere, to maltreat.*
- affirmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to affirm, to reply affirmatively.*
- Āfrica**, -ae, f., *Africa.*
- Āfricānus**, -ī, m., *Africanus*, the special name of two of the Scipios.
- ager**, **agrī**, m., *field, territory.*
- agnus**, -ī, m., *lamb.*
- agō**, -ere, **ēgī**, **actus**, *to drive, to do, to behave; (dative), grātiās agere, to thank.*
- agricola**, -ae, m., *farmer.*
- agricultūra**, -ae, f., *agriculture.*
- Agrigentum**, -ī, n., *Agrigentum*, a city in southern Sicily, now *Girgenti*.
- Agrippa**, -ae, m., *Agrippa*; see **Menēnius**.
- ait**, *he says, he said.*
- āla**, -ae, f., *wing.*
- alacer**, **alacris**, **alacre**, adj., *quick, lively, happy.*
- Alba**, -ae, f., *Alba*, an Italian city, usually called *Alba Longa*.
- Albānī**, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Albans*.
- Albānus**, -a, -um, adj., *Alban.*

albus, -a, -um, adj., *white*.

ālea, -ae, f., *a die*.

Alexander, -rī, m., *Alexander*, king of Macedonia and conqueror of Persia, called "the Great."

Alexandria, -ae, f., *Alexandria*, the capital of Egypt, founded by Alexander the Great.

alicunde, adv., *from somewhere, from some source*.

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj., *of another, belonging to another*.

alimus, pres. ind. of **alō**.

aliquandō, adv., *some day*.

aliter, adv., *otherwise*.

alius, -a, -ud, adj., *other, another; aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others*.

alligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to tie*.

almus, -a, -um, adj., *nourishing, foster*.

alō, -ere, **aluī**, **altus** or **alitus**, *to feed*.

Alpēs, -ium, f. pl., *the Alps*.

alter, -era, -um, adj., *the other (of two), one, another; alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other*.

altitūdō, -inis, f., *height, depth*.

altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, tall, deep*.

aluī, perf. of **alō**.

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to walk*.

amīca, -ae, f., *friend*.

amīcitia, -ae, f., *friendship, alliance*.

amīcus, -a, -um, adj., *friendly*.

amīcus, -ī, m., *friend*.

amita, -ae, f., *aunt, father's sister*.

āmittō, -ere, **āmīsī**, **āmissus**, *to lose*.

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to love, to like, to be fond of*.

amor, -ōris, m., *love*.

Amūlius, -lī, m., *Amulius*, brother of Numitor, and usurper of his throne.

Anchīsēs, -ae, m., *Anchises*, father of Aeneas.

Ancus, -ī, m., *Ancus Martius*, the fourth king of Rome.

Andriscus, -ī, m., *Andriscus*, a usurper in Macedonia.

anguis, -is, m., *serpent, snake*.

angustiae, -ārum, f. pl., *narrows, narrow pass, defile*.

Aniēnem, see **Aniō**.

animadvertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *to notice*.

animal, -ālis, n., *animal*.

animus, -ī, m., *mind, spirit; ūnō animō, unanimously*.

Aniō, **Aniēnis**, m., *the Anio*, a tributary of the Tiber.

annuō, -ere, -uī, —, *to give assent to, to promise*.

annus, -ī, m., *year*.

ānser, -eris, m., *goose*.

ante, prep. (with acc.), *before, in front of, ago*.

Antiochus, -ī, m., *Antiochus*, called "the Great," king of Syria, defeated by the Romans.

antiquissimus, -a, -um, superl. of **antiquus**, -a, -um.

antiquus, -a, -um, adj., *ancient, old, early*.

Antōnius, -nī, m., *Antony*, the rival of Octavianus Caesar.

ānulus, -ī, m., *ring*.

aperiō, -īre, -eruī, -ertus, *to open*.

apertus, past part. of **aperiō**.

Apollō, -inis, m., *Apollo*, the god of prophecy and music.

apparātus, -ūs, m., *material, supplies*.

appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to call, to name*.

Appius, -ī, m., *Appius Claudius*, builder of the Via Appia and the Claudian Aqueduct.

Appius, -a, -um, adj., *Appian*.

apprehendō, -ere, -hendi, -hēnsus, *to seize*.

Aprīlis, -is, m., *April*.

apud, prep. (with acc.), *at, near, in, among*.

Āpūlia, -ae, f., *Apulia*, a region in southeastern Italy.

aqua, -ae, f., *water*; **Aqua Claudia**, the *Claudian Aqueduct*.

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle*.

Aquītānī, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Aquitanians*; the *Gascons*.

āra, -ae, f., *altar*.

arātrum, -ī, n., *plow*.

arbor, -oris, f., *tree*.

arca, -ae, f., *chest, box, ark*.

arce, *arcis*, see **arx**.

Archelāus, -ī, m., *Archelaus*, a king of Cappadocia in Asia Minor.

Ardea, -ae, f., *Ardea*, a town in Latium.

ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsus, *to be on fire, to burn*.

arēna, -ae, f., *arena*, *amphitheater*.

argenteus, -a, -um, adj., *made of silver, silver*.

argentum, -ī, n., *silver*.

Arīminum, -ī, n., *Ariminum*, a port on the Adriatic, now *Rimini*.

Ariovistus, -ī, m., *Ariovistus*, a German king defeated by Caesar.

Aristobūlus, -ī, m., *Aristobulus*, a king of Judea.

Aristotelēs, -is, m., *Aristotle*, a famous Greek philosopher.

arma, -ōrum, n. pl., *arms*.

armātus, -a, -um, past part. of **armō**.

Armenia, -ae, f., *Armenia*, a country of Asia.

armilla, -ae, f., *bracelet*.

armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to arm, to equip*.

Arria, -ae, f., *Arria*, the wife of Caecina Paetus.

arripiō, -ere, -ripiū, -reptus, *to snatch, to seize*.

ars, *artis*, f., *art*.

ārsī, perf. of **ārdeō**.

articulus, -ī, m., *joint, point*.

arx, *arcis*, f., *citadel, fortress*.

Ascanius, -nī, m., *Ascanius*, the son of Aeneas.

ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, *to mount, to take (a boat)*.

Āsia, -ae, f., *Asia*.

Āsiāticus, -ī, m., *Asiaticus*, the special name of L. Cornelius Scipio.

asinus, -ī, m., *donkey*.

asper, -era, -erum, adj., *harsh*;
aspera, -ōrum, n. pl., *hardships*.

aspis, -idis, f., *asp, viper*.

assiduē, adv., *continually*.

astrum, -ī, n., *star*.

at, conj., *but*.

Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., *Athens*,
 chief city of Greece.

Atīlius, -lī, m., *M. Atilius*
Regulus, captured and tor-
 tured by the Carthaginians.

atque, conj., *and, as well as*.

attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tactus, *to*
touch, to attain, to get.

attonitus, -a, -um, adj., *as-*
tounded.

audācia, -ae, f., *boldness*.

audacter, adv., *boldly*.

audāx, gen. -ācis, adj., *bold*,
daring.

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *to dare*.

audiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *to hear*,
to listen to.

aufugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, *to flee*
away, to escape.

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *to*
increase, to enlarge.

Augusta, -ae, f., *Augusta*.

Augustus, -ī, m., *Augustus*, the
 special name of Octavianus
 Caesar.

Aurēlius, -lī, m., *M. Aurelius*
Cotta, defeated at Chalcedon.

aureus, -a, -um, adj., *golden*.

aurīga, -ae, m., *charioteer*,
driver.

auris, -is, f., *ear*.

aurum, -ī, n., *gold*.

aut, conj., *or*; **aut . . . aut**,
either . . . or.

autem, conj., *but, on the other*
hand, moreover. (Never begins
 a clause.)

auxilium, -lī, n., *help, aid*.

avārus, -a, -um, adj., *grasping*,
avaricious.

avē (imper. of *aveō*), *hail!*

Aventinus, -ī, m., the *Aventine*,
 one of the hills of Rome.

āvertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *to turn*
away.

aviditās, -ātis, f., *eagerness*,
greediness.

avidus, -a, -um, adj., *eager*,
greedy.

avis, -is, f., *bird*.

āvolō, -āre, -āvī, —, *to fly*
away.

avunculus, -ī, m., (*maternal*)
uncle.

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather*; pl.,
grandparents.

B

barba, -ae, f., *beard*.

barbarus, -ī, m., *barbarian*.

beātus, -a, -um, adj., *happy*.

Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., the *Bel-*
gians.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj., *war-*
like.

bellum, -ī, n., *war*.

bēlua, -ae, f., *wild beast*.

bene, adv., *well*.

beneficium, -cī, n., *favor, kind-*
ness.

bēstia, -ae, f., *beast*.

Bēstia, -ae, m., *Bestia*, the sur-
 name of L. Calpurnius, ac-
 cused of bribery.

bibō, -ere, bibī, bibitus, *to drink*.
Bibulus, -ī, m., L. Bibulus,
 consul with Caesar.

bis, *adv., twice*.

Bithŷnia, -ae, f., Bithynia, a
 country of Asia Minor.

bitūmen, -inis, n., mineral
pitch, asphalt.

blandus, -a, -um, adj., flattering.

bonum, -ī, n., good, weal, prop-
erty; bona, -ōrum, n. pl.,
property, estate.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., good.

bōs, bovis, m., ox.

brevī, adv., soon, in a little
while.

brevis, -e, adj., short.

Britanni, -ōrum, m. pl., the
Britons.

Britannicus, -a, -um, adj.,
British; Ōceanus Britanni-
cus, the North Sea and the
English Channel.

Bruttii, -ōrum, m. pl., the
Bruttii, a people of south-
eastern Italy.

Brūtus, -ī, m., L. Junius Bru-
tus, leader of the rebellion
against Tarquin; M. Junius
Brutus, the leader with Cas-
sius in the assassination of
Caesar.

Byzantium, -tī, n., Byzantium,
now Constantinople.

C

C.: abbreviation for **Gāius**,
 (English) *Caius*.

Cabīra, indecl., Cabira, a town
 in Pontus (Asia Minor).

cadō, -ere, cecidī, —, to fall.

Caecilius, -lī, m., Q. Caecilius
Metellus Macedonicus, con-
queror of Andrisus; Q. Cae-
cilius Metellus Numidicus,
conqueror of Jugurtha.

Caecīna, -ae, m., Caecina Pae-
tus, the husband of Arria.

caedēs, -is, f., murder.

caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesus, to
cut, to beat, to slay.

Caelius, -ī, m., the Caelian, one
 of the hills of Rome.

caelum, -ī, n., sky, heaven.

Caepio, -ōnis, m., Cn. Ser-
vilius Caepio, consul.

Caesar, -aris, m., Caesar, the
 conqueror of Gaul; title of
 the Roman Emperors.

calamitās, -ātis, f., calamity,
disaster, defeat.

calamus, -ī, m., (reed) pen.

calcar, -āris, n., spur.

Calpurnius, -ī, m., L. Cal-
purnius Bestia, accused of
bribery.

Camilla, -ae, f., Camilla, the
 sister of the Horatii.

Camillus, -ī, m., Furius Camil-
lus, a Roman dictator.

Campānia, -ae, f., Campania, a
 region in central Italy.

campus, -ī, m., plain; Campus
Mārtius, the Plain of Mars,
 outside of the walls of
 Rome.

canis, -is, m., dog.

Cannae, -ārum, f. pl., Cannae,
 a village in Apulia, famous
 for the defeat of the Romans
 by Hannibal.

Cannēnsis, -e, adj., of *Cannae*.
cantō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to sing
 (of).

capella, -ae, f., goat.

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, to
 take (up), to catch, to seize, to
 capture.

Capitōlium, -lī, n., the *Capitol*
 (the shrine of Jupiter); the
Capitoline Hill.

capra, -ae, f., goat.

captivus, -ī, m., captive.

captus, past part. of **capiō**.

Capua, -ae, f., *Capua*, chief
 city of Campania.

caput, -itis, n., head.

cāra, f. of **cārus**.

carcer, -eris, m., jail, prison.

Caria, -ae, f., *Caria*, a country
 in Asia Minor.

cārior, -ius, compar. of **cārus**.

carmen, -inis, n., song, poem.

carnem, see **carō**.

carō, carnis, f., flesh.

carpentum, -ī, n., chariot, car-
 riage.

carpō, -ere, -psī, -ptus, to
 pluck.

carrus, -ī, m., wagon.

Carthāginiēnsēs, -ium, m. pl.,
 the *Carthaginians*.

Carthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage*, a
 city in Africa, the great rival
 of Rome; **Carthāgō Nova**,
New Carthage (now *Carta-
 gena*), a city in Spain founded
 by Hasdrubal, brother-in-law
 of Hannibal.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear.

casa, -ae, f., cottage.

cāseus, -ī, m., cheese.

Cassius, -sī, m., *Cassius*; *C.*
Cassius Longinus, a leader in
 the murder of Caesar.

castellum, -ī, n., fortress.

castigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to
 chastise, to punish.

castra, -ōrum, n. pl., camp.

cāsus, -ūs, m., occasion.

Catilīna, -ae, m., *Catiline*, a
 conspirator against the Ro-
 man government.

Catō, -ōnis, m., *M. Porcius*
Cato, opponent of Caesar.

Catulus, -ī, m., *Q. Lutatius*
Catulus, leader with Marius
 against the Cimbri.

Caudīnus, -a, -um, adj., *Cau-
 dine*; of *Caudium*, a town of
 Italy; **Furculae Caudīnae**,
 the *Caudine Forks*, a narrow
 pass, famous for the defeat
 of the Romans by the Sam-
 nites.

causa, -ae, f., cause; (dat.),
 causam dare, to start.

cautus, -a, -um, adj., wary,
 cautious.

Cēa, -ae, f., *Ceos* (island).

cecidī, perf. of **cadō**.

cecidī, perf. of **caedō**.

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, to
 yield, to withdraw.

celeber, **celebris**, **celebre**, adj.,
 crowded, celebrated, famous.

celer, **celeris**, **celere**, adj., swift,
 quick.

celeritās, -ātis, f., swift-
 ness, quickness.

celeriter, adv., quickly.

celerrimē, superl. of **celeriter**.

Celtae, -ārum, m. pl., the *Celts*.

cēseō, -ēre, **cēsuī**, **cēsus**,
to take the census of, to register.

cēnsor, -ōris, m., *censor* (a Roman magistrate).

Cēnsōrinus, -ī, m., *Censorinus*,
surname of L. Marcius, consul.

cēnsus, -ūs, m., *registering, census*.

centum, indecl. num. adj., *one hundred*.

centuriō, -ōnis, m., *centurion*
(commander of a company).

cēpī, perf. of **capiō**.

cerebrum, -ī, n., *brain*.

certāmen, -inis, n., *combat*.

certē, adv., *certainly*.

certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to fight*.

certus, -a, -um, adj., *certain*.

cervus, -ī, m., *stag, deer*.

cēterī, -ae, -a, adj., *the other*.

ceu, adv., *as, just as*.

Chalcēdōn, -ōnis, f., *Chalcedon*,
a city of Bithynia.

chorus, -ī, m., *dance, chorus*.

Christus, -ī, m., *Christ*.

cibārius, -a, -um, adj., *coarse*.

cibus, -ī, m., *food*.

cicāda, -ae, f., *tree cricket*.

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero*, the
great Roman orator.

cicōnia, -ae, f., *stork*.

Cimbri, -ōrum, m. pl., the
Cimbri, a tribe occupying
what is now Denmark.

Cīneās, -ae, m., *Cineas*, friend
and favorite minister of Pyrrhus.

Cincinnātus, -ī, m., *Cincinnatus*,
twice dictator, type of

old Roman simplicity and
patriotism.

Cinna, -ae, m., *Cinna*, surname
of L. Cornelius, confederate
of Marius.

circiter, adv., *about*.

circum, prep. (with acc.),
around.

circumdedī, perf. of **circumdō**.

circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datus,
to place around, to surround.

circumsedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -ses-
sus, *to surround, to besiege*.

circumsessus, past part. of
circumsedeō.

circumspiciō, -ere, -spexī,
-spectus, *to observe, to survey*.

circumstō, -āre, -stetī, —, *to
stand around, to surround, to
threaten*.

circumvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
to fly around.

Circus, -ī, m., the *Circus Maxi-
mus*, where chariot races
were held.

citō, adv., *quickly*.

citrā, prep. (with acc.), *on this
side of* (from the Roman
standpoint).

cīvilis, -e, adj., *civil*.

cīvis, -is, m., *citizen*.

cīvitās, -ātis, f., *state*.

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to cry
out, to shout*.

clāmor, -ōris, f., *cry, shout*.

Claudius, -dī, m., *Claudius*,
name of a famous Roman
clan.

Cleopatra, -ae, f., *Cleopatra*,
queen of Egypt.

clipeus, -ī, m., *shield* (round, of metal).

cloāca, -ae, f., *sewer, drain*.

Cloelia, -ae, f., *Cloelia*, a Roman heroine.

Cluentius, -tī, m., *Cluentius*, leader of rebellious Italian tribes.

Cn., abbreviation for **Gnaeus**.

Cocles, -itis, m., *Cocles* (one-eyed), special name of Horatius.

coēgī, perf. of **cōgō**.

coepī, **coeptus** (defective, found only in perfect tenses), *begin*.

cognōmen, -inis, n., *surname*.

cognōsco, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus, *to become acquainted with, to recognize*.

cognōvit, perf. of **cognōscō**.

cōgō, -ere, **coēgī**, **coāctus**, *to drive, to compel*; in **dēditiōnem cōgere**, *to force to surrender*.

Collātinus, -ī, m., *Collatinus*, surname of Tarquin, husband of Lucretia.

collēgī, perf. of **colligō**.

colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *to gather*.

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to place (together), to erect*.

collum, -ī, n., *neck*.

colō, -ere, -uī, -cultus, *to till, to cultivate, to practice, to revere*.

colōnia, -ae, f., *colony*.

columba, -ae, f., *dove*.

columna, -ae, f., *column*.

comes, -itis, m., *companion*.

comminus, adv., *hand to hand, at close quarters*.

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *to begin, to start, to intrust*.

commōtus, past part. of **commoveō**.

commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *to alarm, to disturb, to start*.

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to bring together*.

compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *to assemble, to compel*; in **dēditiōnem compellere**, *to force to surrender*; **ad fugam compellere**, *to force to flee*.

complōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *lamentation*.

complūrēs, -a; gen. -ium, adj., *several, many*.

compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *to compose*.

compulī, perf. of **compellō**.

concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *to go away, to withdraw*.

concessī, perf. of **concēdō**.

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to excite, to rouse*.

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to cry out together, to shout*.

concordia, -ae, f., *concord*.

condiciō, -ōnis, f., *condition, terms*.

conditus, past part. of **condō**.

condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *to found*.

condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to pardon, to forgive*.

cōnfēcī, perf. of **cōnficiō**.

cōnfertus, -a, -um, adj., *thick*.

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *to make, to end*.

cōnfidō, -ere, —, -fīsus, *to confide, to trust*.

cōfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to establish; **amicitiā** **cōfirmāre**, to make a treaty of alliance.

cōnfisus, -a, -um (past part. of **cōnfidō**), having trusted, relying.

cōnfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus, to pierce, to wound.

cōnfossus, past part. of **cōnfodiō**.

coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, to throw, to put.

coniectus, past part. of **coniciō**.

coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tus, to join, to ally.

coniūnx, -ugis, m., and f., husband, wife; pl., married couple.

coniūrātī, -ōrum, m. pl., conspirators.

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., conspiracy, plot.

coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to conspire; **coniūrāre in** or **contrā** (with acc.), to conspire against.

cōnsēdī, perf. of **cōnsidō**.

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m., agreement; **omnium cōnsēnsū**, unanimously.

cōnservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to preserve, to keep (intact).

cōnsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to consider.

cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus, to sit down, to alight.

cōnsilium, -lī, n., advice.

cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus, to stand.

cōnspectus, -ūs, m., sight, view, presence.

Constantīnopolis, -is, f., Constantinople.

cōnstiti, perf. of **cōnsistō** and **cōnstō**.

cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, to set, to decide, to establish; **tempore cōnstitutō**, at the appointed time.

cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, —, to stand, to be established.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f., habit, custom; **ex cōnsuētūdine suā**, in accordance with their custom.

cōnsul, -ulis, m., consul.

cōnsulāris, -is, m., or **cōnsulāris vir**, -ī, m., former consul.

cōnsulātus, -ūs, m., consulship.

cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, to use up, to destroy.

contemnō, -ere, -temptī, -temptus, to disdain, to scorn.

contemptiō, -ōnis, f., disdain, scorn.

contendō, -ere, -dī, -tus, to try, to fight, to hasten.

contentus, -a, -um, adj., satisfied.

contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, to hem in, to bound.

contrā, prep. (with acc.), against.

contrādicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictus, to speak against, to oppose.

contrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, to gather.

contrāxī, perf. of **contrahō**.

convalescō, -ere, -lui, —, to recover.

conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, to come together, to gather.

- convertō**, -ere, -tī, -sus, *to attract, to draw, to convert.*
- convīva**, -ae, *m., guest.*
- convocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call together, to summon.*
- cōpia**, -ae, *f., abundance, plenty; pl., troops.*
- cōram**, *prep. (with abl.), in the presence of.*
- Corinthīi**, -ōrum, *m. pl., the Corinthians.*
- Corinthus**, -ī, *f., Corinth, a city of Greece.*
- Coriolānus**, -ī, *m., Coriolanus, a famous Roman unjustly exiled.*
- Cornēlia**, -ae, *f., Cornelia, mother of the Gracchi; gēns Cornēlia, the Cornelian clan, one of the most famous in Rome.*
- Cornēlius**, -lī, *m., Cornelius, name borne by the men of the famous Cornelian clan, to which the Scipios belonged.*
- cornū**, -ūs, *n., horn, wing (of an army).*
- corpus**, -oris, *n., body.*
- corrēxi**, *perf. of corrigō.*
- corrigo**, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctus, *to straighten, to correct.*
- corrumpō**, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *to break down, to bribe.*
- corruptus**, *past part. of corrumpō.*
- Corvinus**, -ī, *m., Corvinus, surname of M. Valerius.*
- corvus**, -ī, *m., raven.*
- cotidiānus**, -a, -um, *adj., daily.*
- Cotta**, -ae, *m., Cotta, surname of M. Aurelius, defeated at Chalcedon.*
- crās**, *adv., tomorrow.*
- Crassus**, -ī, *m., M. Licinius Crassus, victor in the war of the gladiators; P. Crassus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
- crēber**, -bra, -brum, *adj., frequent.*
- Cremera**, -ae, *f., Cremera, a river in Etruria.*
- creō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to create, to elect.*
- crēscō**, -ere, **crēvī**, **crētus**, *to grow, to increase.*
- crēvit**, *perf. of crēscō.*
- crīnis**, -is, *f., hair.*
- Crixus**, -ī, *m., Crixus, a leader in the war of the gladiators.*
- crūdēlis**, -e, *adj., cruel.*
- crūdēliter**, *adv., cruelly, in a cruel manner.*
- cruentus**, -a, -um, *adj., bloody, stained.*
- cruor**, -ōris, *m., blood.*
- cubiculum**, -ī, *n., bedchamber.*
- cubīle**, -lis, *n., bed, couch.*
- cui**, *dat. of quī and quis.*
- cuique**, *dat. of quisque.*
- cuius**, *gen. of quī and quis.*
- culpō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to blame.*
- cultellus**, -ī, *m., small knife.*
- culter**, -trī, *m., knife, butcher's knife.*
- cum**, *prep. (with abl.), with.*
- cum**, *conj., when.*
- cūncta**, -ōrum, *n. pl., all the things.*
- cūnctātor**, -ōris, *m., delayer.*
- cūnctus**, -a, -um, *adj., all.*
- cupiditās**, -ātis, *f., ardent desire, eagerness.*

cūr, adv., *why?*

cūria, -ae, f., *curia* (one of the 30 divisions of the plebs), *senate-house*.

Curiatīi, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Curiatii*.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to care for*; **mē cūrō**, *I take care of myself*.

currō, -ere, **cucurrī**, **cursus**, *to run*.

currus, -ūs, m., *chariot*.

cursus, -ūs, m., *course*.

cūstōdiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *to watch, to guard*.

cūstōs, -ōdis, m., *watch, keeper*.

Cyprius, -a, -um, adj., of *Cyprus*, an island off the coast of Asia Minor.

Cyzicus, -ī, f., *Cyzicus*, a city of Asia Minor.

D

damnātus, past part. of **damnō**.
damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to condemn*.

datus, past part. of **dō**.

dē, prep. (with abl.), *out of, about, from*.

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus, *to owe, ought*.

dēbilitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to weaken*.

dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *to withdraw, to die*.

decem, indecl. num. adj., *ten*.

December, -bris, m., *December*.

decemvirī, -ōrum, m. pl., *decemvirs* (college of ten magistrates).

dēceptus, past part. of **dēcipiō**.

dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, *to decree, to intrust, to assign by vote*.

dēcēssī, perf. of **dēcēdō**.

dēcidō, -ere, -cidī, —, *to fall, to drop*.

decimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *tenth*; **quārtus decimus**, *fourteenth*; **sextus decimus**, *sixteenth*.

dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *to deceive, to disappoint*.

dēcērētus, past part. of **dēcērnō**.

dēdecus, -oris, n., *disgrace, dishonor*.

dedī, perf. of **dō**.

dēdidī, perf. of **dēdō**.

dēditiō, -ōnis, f., *surrender*; **accipere** or **recipere in dēditiōnem**, *to accept the surrender of*; **compellere in dēditiōnem**, *to force to surrender*.

dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *to give up*; **sē dēdere**, *to surrender*.

dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *to lead away, to escort*.

dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *to defend*.

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m., *defender*.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *to announce, to expose*.

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *to become weak, to be weakened*.

dēfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixus, *to fasten, to astound*.

dēfixī, perf. of **dēfigō**.

dēfōrmitās, -ātis, f., *ugliness*.

dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to let fall*.

dēinde, adv., *then, afterwards.*

Dēiotarus, -ī, m., *Deiotarus*, a king of Galatia in central Asia Minor.

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to delight, to please.*

dēlēgī, perf. of **dēligō**.

dēleō, -ēre, -lēvī, -lētus, *to destroy.*

dēlictum, -ī, n., *offense.*

dēligātus, past part. of **dēligō**, -āre.

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *to choose, to elect.*

dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to bind, to tie.*

Delphicus, -a, -um, adj., *Delphic; of Delphi*, the seat of the famous Greek oracle.

Dēmētrius, -trī, m., *Demetrius*, the son of Philip V of Macedon.

Dēmostenēs, -is, m., *Demos-thenes*, a great Greek orator.

dēnique, adv., *at last.*

dēns, *dentis*, m., *tooth.*

dēprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, *to seize.*

dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, *to descend, to come down.*

dēsērō, -ere, -seruī, -sertus, *to forsake, to desert.*

dēsertus, past part. of **dēsērō**.

dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to long for, to desire.*

dēsiliō, -ire, -siluī, -sultus, *to leap (down), to jump.*

dēsiluī, perf. of **dēsiliō**.

dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus, *to cease, to stop.*

dēspōnsa, -ae, f., *betrothed.*

dēstitī, perf. of **dēsistō**.

dēsuper, adv., *from above.*

dētrāctus, past part. of **dētrahō**.

dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *to drag, to bring away, to take from.*

dētrāxī, perf. of **dētrahō**.

dētulī, perf. of **dēferō**.

deus, -ī, m., *god.*

dēvorāns, -antis, pres. part. of **dēvorō**.

dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to devour.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *right.*

diadēma, -ātis, n., *diadem.*

dic, imper. of **dicō**.

dicō, -ere, **dixī**, **dictus**, *to say, to tell, to call.*

dictātor, -ōris, m., *dictator* (chief magistrate with unlimited power).

dictātūra, -ae, f., *dictatorship.*

dictus, past part. of **dicō**.

diēs, **diēī**, m., or f., *day.*

difficilis, -e, adj., *difficult.*

difficultās, -ātis, f., *difficulty.*

dignitās, -ātis, f., *dignity.*

diligēns, gen. -entis, adj., *industrious, diligent.*

diligenter, adv., *diligently.*

diligentia, -ae, f., *diligence, industry, care.*

diluvium, -vī, n., *deluge.*

dīmīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to fight.*

dīmīttō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *to let go, to dismiss.*

dīmīsī, perf. of **dīmīttō**.

Diogenēs, -is, m., *Diogenes*, a Stoic philosopher.

direptus, past part. of **diripiō**.

diripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus, to
tear away, to plunder.

diripuī, perf. of diripiō.

diruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus, to
destroy.

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, to
depart.

disciplīna, -ae, f., discipline.

discipula, -ae, f., pupil.

discipulus, -ī, m., pupil, fol-
lower.

discō, -ere, didicī, —, to learn.

discordia, -ae, f., discord.

dissēdī, perf. of dissideō.

dissideō, -ēre, -sēdī, —, to
disagree.

dissimilis, -e, adj., different.

distribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, to
distribute, to divide.

diū, adv., a long time, for a long
time.

diūtius, compar. of diū.

dividō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, to
divide, to separate.

divīnus, -a, -um, adj., divine.

divīsus, past part. of dividō.

divitiae, -ārum, f. pl., riches,
wealth.

dixī, perf. of dicō.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, to give,
to grant; finem dare, to put
an end to; sē gaudiō dare, to
give one's self up to joy.

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus, to
teach.

doctus, -a, -um, adj., learned.

doleō, -ēre, -uī, —, to lament, to
be sorry for.

dolor, -ōris, m., pain.

domina, -ae, f., mistress, lady
of the house.

dominus, -ī, m., master, lord.

domō, -āre, -uī, -itus, to con-
quer.

domus, -ūs, or -ī, f., house.

dōnec, conj., as long as.

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to give,
to present, to reward.

dōnum, -ī, n., gift.

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -itus, to
sleep.

dorsum, -ī, n., back.

dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful.

dūc, imper. of dūcō.

ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj.,
two hundred.

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, to lead,
to take, to accompany, to
attend; (fossās), to dig.

Duilius, -lī, m., Caius Duilius,
the first Roman commander
to defeat the Carthaginians
on the sea.

dum, conj., while.

duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., two.

duodecim, indecl. num. adj.,
twelve.

duodēvigintī, indecl. num. adj.,
eighteen.

uplicō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, to
double.

dūrē, adv., severely.

dūrissimus, -a, -um, superl. of
dūrus, -a, -um.

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard.

dux, ducis, m., ruler, leader,
chief.

E

ē or ex, prep. (with abl.), out
of, from, in accordance with.

ea, eā, eam, eās, see is.

ecce, adv., *behold*.

edō, -ere, **ēdī**, **ēsus**, to eat.

ēdūcō, -ere, -**dūxī**, -ductus, to lead forth.

efferrō, -ferre, **extulī**, **ēlātus**, to bring out, to save.

effūdī, perf. of **effundō**.

effundō, -ere, -**fūdī**, -fusus, to pour out; **sē effundēre**, to overflow.

Ēgeria, -ae, f., *Egeria*, a nymph, wife and adviser of King Numa.

ēgī, perf. of **agō**.

ego, pers. pron., *I*.

eī, **eīs**, see **is**.

eius, see **is**; **eiusdem**, see **īdem**.

ēlēgī, perf. of **ēligō**.

elephantus, -ī, m., *elephant*.

ēliciō, -ere, -**licuī**, -licitus, to entice, to lure.

ēligō, -ere, -**lēgī**, -lēctus, to choose, to pick out.

ēloquēns, gen. -entis, adj., *eloquent*.

ēmineō, -ēre, -**uī**, —, to stick out.

ēn, interj., *behold*.

enim, conj., *for, indeed*. (It is never the first word of a clause.)

Ennius, -nī, m., *Ennius*, an early Roman poet.

eō, see **is**, **ea**, **id**.

eō, **īre**, **īvī** or **īī**, —, to go, to walk.

eōdem, see **īdem**.

eōrum, **eōs**, see **is**.

eōsque = **et eōs**,

Epaminōndās, -ae, m., *Epaminondas*, a famous Theban general.

Ēpirus, -ī, f., *Epirus*, a country in the northwest of Greece.

eques, -itis, m., *cavalryman*.

equester, **equestris**, **equestre**, adj., *equestrian*.

equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry*.

equus, -ī, m., *horse*.

ergā, prep. (with acc.), *towards, for*.

ergō, adv., *therefore, then*.

ēripiō, -ere, -**uī**, -eptus, to snatch away, to take away.

errō, -āre, -**āvī**, -ātus, to wander, to prowl.

ērumpō, -ere, -**rūpī**, -ruptus, to burst forth.

es, pres. ind. and imper. of **esse**.

Ēsquīlinus, -ī, m., the *Esquiline*, one of the hills of Rome.

esse, to be.

est, **estis**, see **sum**.

estō, fut. imper. of **sum**.

ēsuriēns, -entis, pres. part. of **ēsuriō**.

ēsuriō, -īre, —, to be hungry.

et, conj., *and*.

etiam, adv., *even, also; sed etiam, but also*.

etiāmsī, conj., *even if*.

Etrūscī, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Etruscans*.

Eudēmus, -ī, m., *Eudemus*, a friend of Aristotle.

eum, see **is**.

Euripidēs, -is, m., *Euripides*, a great Athenian tragic writer.

Eurōpa, -ae, f., *Europe*.

ēvādō, -ere, -**vāsī**, -vāsus, to get away, to escape, to prove to be.

- ēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, to come out.
 ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to call forth.
 ēvolāns, -antis, pres. part. of ēvolāre.
 ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to fly away.
 ex or ē, prep. (with abl.), out of, from.
 exaedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to finish building, to complete.
 exāctor, -ōris, m., supervisor.
 excēpī, perf. of excipīō.
 excidium, -dī, n., destruction.
 excipīō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, to receive, to overhear, to meet.
 excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to rouse, to spur on, to start.
 exclāmāns, -antis, pres. part. of exclāmō.
 exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to exclaim, to cry out.
 excludō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, to exclude, to shut out.
 exemplum, -ī, n., example.
 exeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, to go out, to come out.
 exercitus, -ūs, m., army.
 exhauriō, -īre, -hausī, -haustus, to drain out, to exhaust.
 exhaustus, past part. of exhaurio.
 exhibēns, -entis, pres. part. of exhibeō.
 exhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, to show.
 exibat, past of exeō.
 exiī, perf. of exeō.
 eximius, -a, -um, adj., uncommon, extraordinary.
- existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to think, to consider.
 exitus, -ūs, m., departure.
 exōrātus, past part. of exōrō.
 exōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to obtain by entreaty, to move.
 expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, to drive out, to banish.
 experientia, -ae, f., experience.
 explicāns, -antis, pres. part. of explicō.
 explicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to spread out, to display.
 expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to take by storm.
 expulī, perf. of expellō.
 expulsus, past part. of expellō.
 exsequiae, -ārum, f. pl., funeral procession.
 exsilium, -lī, n., exile.
 exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to wait for, to await.
 expirāns, -antis, pres. part. of expirō.
 expirō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to breathe one's last, to expire.
 extinctus, past part. of extinguō.
 extinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus, to extinguish, to kill.
 exstruō, -ere, -ūxī, -ūctus, to build up.
 extēsus, -a, -um, adj., extended.
 extrahō, -ere, -āxī, -āctus, to pull out, to withdraw.
 extrāxī, perf. of extrahō.
 extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., last.
 extulit, perf. of efferō.

F

faber, -brī, m., *smith*.

Fabii, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Fabians*.

Fabius, -a, -um, adj., *Fabian*, a famous Roman clan.

Fabricius, -cī, m., *Fabricius*, a Roman distinguished for his integrity.

fābula, -ae, f., *story*.

fac, imper. of **faciō**.

facētus, -a, -um, adj., *witty*.

faciēs, -ēī, f., *face, appearance*.

facile, adv., *easily*.

facilis, -e, adj., *easy*.

facinus, -oris, n., *crime*.

faciō, -ere, **fēcī**, **factus**, to do, to make; **iter facere**, to march.

factum, -ī, n., *fact, deed*.

Falērii, -ōrum, m. pl., *Falerii*, an Etruscan town.

fāma, -ae, f., *fame, reputation*.

famēlicus, -a, -um, adj., *famished, starved*.

famēs, -is, f., *hunger*.

familia, -ae, f., *household, family*.

familiāris, -is, m., *friend, companion*.

fās, n., indecl., *divine law*.

faucēs, -ium, f. pl., *throat*.

Faustulus, -ī, m., *Faustulus*, the shepherd who brought up Romulus and Remus.

fēcērunt, **fēcī**, perf. of **faciō**.

fēcundus, -a, -um, adj., *fertile, fecund*.

fēlicitās, -ātis, f., *good fortune, success*.

fēliciter, adv., *with good fortune, luckily, happily*.

fēlix, gen. -īcis, adj., *lucky, happy*.

fēmina, -ae, f., *woman*.

fera, -ae, f., *wild beast*.

ferē, adv., *nearly, almost*.

feriō, -īre, —, —, to strike, to kill.

ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, to bear, to yield, to produce, to get; **arātrum ferre**, to draw a plow.

ferōx, gen. -ōcis, adj., *fierce, cruel, bold, warlike*.

ferrum, -ī, n., *iron*.

fertis, pres. ind. of **ferō**.

fessus, -a, -um, adj., *tired, enfeebled*.

fēstum, -ī, n., *feast*.

fidēs, -eī, f., *trust, faith, word*; **in fidem accipere**, to take under one's protection.

fidus, -a, -um, adj., *faithful*.

figūra, -ae, f., *figure*.

filia, -ae, f., *daughter*.

filius, -lī, m., *son*.

finiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, to finish, to end.

finis, -is, f., *end*; pl., *territory*.

finitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring*.

finitus, past part. of **finiō**.

firmus, -a, -um, adj., *firm*.

Flāmininus, -ī, m., *Flaminius*, victor over Philip, king of Macedonia.

Flāminius, -nī, m., *Flaminius*, Roman general defeated by Hannibal.

flamma, -ae, f., *flame*.

flectō, -ere, -exī, -exus, to change, to sway.

fleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *to weep*.
flexī, perf. of **flectō**.

flūmen, -inis, n., *river*.

foculus, -ī, m., *brazier*.

foedus, -eris, n., *league*.

fōrma, -ae, f., *form, shape, beauty*.

formīca, -ae, f., *ant*.

fortasse, adv., *perhaps*.

forte, adv., *by chance*.

fortis, -e, adj., *brave*.

fortiter, adv., *bravely*.

fortitūdō, -inis, f., *bravery*.

fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune, fate*.

forum, -ī, n., *market-place, forum*.

fossa, -ae, f., *ditch, trench, moat*.

foveō, -ēre, fōvī, fōtus, *to warm*.

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, *to overcome, to wreck*.

frāter, -tris, m., *brother*.

frēgī, perf. of **frangō**.

frēnī, -ōrum, m. pl., *bit*.

frīgus, -oris, n., *cold*.

frūctus, -ūs, m., *fruit, reward*.

frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain*.

frūstrā, adv., *in vain*.

fūdī, perf. of **fundō**.

Fufētius, -tī, m., *Fufetius*, a king of Alba Longa.

fuga, -ae, f., *flight*.

fugiēns, -entis, pres. part. of **fugiō**.

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, —, *to flee*.

fugitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to avoid*.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to put to flight*.

fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, —, *to glitter*.

fulmen, -inis, n., *thunderbolt*.

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, *to pour, to shed (tears), to rout*.

fūnestus, -a, -um, adj., *deadly, fatal, destructive*.

fūnus, -eris, n., *burial, funeral*.

furcula, -ae, f., *little fork*;

Furculae Caudinae, the *Caudine Forks*, a mountain pass where the Samnites defeated the Romans.

Fūrius, -rī, m., *Furius Camillus*, a Roman dictator.

furor, -ōris, m., *fury*.

fūsus, past part. of **fundō**.

futūrus, a, um, adj., *future*.

G

Gāius, -ī (abbreviation **C.**), m., *Gaius*, a Roman first name, often written *Caius* in English.

Galatia, -ae, f., *Galatia*, a country of central Asia Minor.

Galba, -ae, m., *Galba*, a Roman name.

galea, -ae, f., *helmet*.

Gallī, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Gauls*.

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*; pl., *Cisalpine Gaul* (Northern Italy) and *Transalpine Gaul* (Modern France).

Gallus, -ī, m., a *Gaul*.

garrulus, -a, -um, adj., *talkative*.

gaudeō, -ēre, —, gāvīsus, *to rejoice*.

gaudium, -dī, n., *joy*.

gener, -erī, m., *son-in-law*.

gēns, gentis, f., *clan, tribe*.

genus, -eris, n., sort, kind, birth, family.
 gerēns, -entis, pres. part. of gerō.
 Germānī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Germans.
 Germānia, -ae, f., Germany.
 gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, to bear, to carry, to rule, to perform, to do, to wage (war).
 gesta, past part. of gerō.
 gesta, -ōrum, n. pl., deeds.
 gladiātor, -ōris, m., gladiator.
 gladiātōrius, -a, -um, adj., gladiatorial; lūdus gladiātōrius, a school for gladiators.
 gladius, -dī, m., sword.
 glōria, -ae, f., glory.
 glōriōsē, adv., gloriously.
 glōriōsus, -a, -um, adj., glorious.
 Gorgiās, -ae, m., Gorgias, a Greek rhetorician.
 Gracchī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Gracchī.
 Graecia, -ae, f., Greece.
 Graeci, -ōrum, m. pl., the Greeks.
 Graecus, -a, -um, adj., Greek.
 grānum, -ī, n., grain.
 grātē, adv., willingly, with pleasure.
 grātia, -ae, f., favor, thanks; (dat.) grātiās agere, to thank; exemplī grātiā, for instance.
 grātior, -ius, compar. of grātus.
 grātissimē, superl. of grātē.
 grātus, -a, -um, adj., pleasant, grateful.
 gravis, -e, adj., heavy, grave, serious, stern.

gravitās, -ātis, f., heaviness, weight.
 graviter, adv., heavily, severely, harshly, seriously.
 gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to weigh down, to burden.
 grūs, gruis, f., crane.

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, to have, to hold.
 habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to dwell, to live.
 hāc, hae, haec, see hic.
 haereō, -ēre, haesī, —, to stick fast.
 Hamilcar, -aris, m., Hamilcar, a Carthaginian general, and father of Hannibal.
 Hannibal, -alis, m., Hannibal, the most famous Carthaginian general.
 Hannō, -ōnis, m., Hanno, a Carthaginian general.
 hārum, see hic.
 Hasdrubal, -alis, m., Hasdrubal, the name of several Carthaginian generals.
 hasta, -ae, f., spear, javelin.
 hei, interj. (grief or fear), alas! oh dear!
 Helvētia, -ae, f., Helvetia (modern Switzerland).
 Helvētiī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Helvetians.
 Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., Helvetian.
 herba, -ae, f., grass.
 herbōsus, -a, -um, adj., abounding in grass, grassy.

hērēs, -ēdis, m., *heir*.
herī, adv., *yesterday*.
heu, interj., *alas*.
hic, **haec**, **hoc**, dem., *this, this one*.
hiems, **hiemis**, f., *winter*.
Hierō, -ōnis, m., *Hiero*, a tyrant of Syracuse.
Hierosolyma, -ae, f., *Jerusalem*.
hinc, adv., *from this place*.
Hirtius, -tī, m., *Hirtius*, a consul.
Hispanī, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Spaniards*.
Hispania, -ae, f., *Spain*; pl., **Hispania Citerior**, *Hither Spain* (from the Roman standpoint) and **Hispania Ulterior**, *Farther Spain*, separated by the river Iberus (Ebro).
historia, -ae, f., *history*.
hoc, **hōc**, see **hic**.
hodiē, adv., *today*.
Homērus, -ī, m., *Homer*, the great Greek epic poet.
homō, -inis, m., *man*.
honestās, -ātis, f., *honesty, integrity*.
honor, -ōris, m., *honor, praise*.
honōrificē, adv., *honorably, with honor*.
hōra, -ae, f., *hour*.
Horātius, -tī, m., *Horatius*, a Roman hero; *Horace*, great Roman poet and satirist.
Horātiī, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Horatii*, the three champions of Rome against the Curiatii.

horribilis, -e, adj., *horrible*.
horror, -ōris, m., *horror, dread*.
hortus, -ī, m., *garden*.
hōrum, see **hic**.
Hostīlius, -lī, m., *Tullus Hostilius*, the third king of Rome.
hostis, -is, m., *enemy, foe*.
hūc, adv., *to this place, hither*.
huic, **huius**, see **hic**.
hūmānus, -a, -um, adj., *human*.
humilis, -e, adj., *low, humble, obscure*.
humilis, -is, m., *humble person*.

I

I. C. = **Iēsus Chrīstus**; ante **I. C.** = ante **Iēsum Chrīstum**.
iaceō, -ēre, **iacuī**, —, *to lie prostrate, to be situated*.
iaciō, -ere, **iēcī**, **iactus**, *to throw*.
iam, adv., *already, then*; **nōn iam**, *no more, never more*.
ibat, past of **eō**.
Iāniculum, -ī, m., *Janiculum*, a hill on the other side of the Tiber from Rome.
Iānuārius, -rī, m., *January*.
ibi, adv., *there*.
icō, -ere, **icī**, **ictus**, *to strike*.
ictus, past part. of **icō**.
ictus, -ūs, m., *stroke, stab, thrust*.
īdem, **eadem**, **idem**, adj., *the same*.
Īdūs, -uum, f. pl., *Ides* (middle of the month).
iēcī, perf. of **iaciō**.
iērunt, perf. of **eō**.
Iēsus, m., *Jesus*.

igitur , conj., <i>accordingly, therefore.</i>	improbō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to disapprove, to reject.</i>
ignāvus , -a, -um, adj., <i>cowardly.</i>	improbus , -a, -um, adj., <i>wicked.</i>
ignis , -is, m., <i>fire.</i>	in , prep. (with abl.), <i>in, on, for; (with acc.), into, against.</i>
ille , <i>illa</i> , illud , dem., <i>that, that one.</i>	incēdō , -ere, -cessī, -cessus, <i>to march.</i>
illūstris , -e, adj., <i>illustrious, great.</i>	incendō , -ere, -cendī, -cēsus, <i>to set fire to, to burn.</i>
illūstrō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to illustrate, to make famous.</i>	incēnsus , -a, -um, adj., <i>inflamed, very angry.</i>
imāgō , -inis, f., <i>image, wax mask.</i>	incertus , -a, -um, adj., <i>uncertain.</i>
imitātiō , -ōnis, f., <i>imitation; ad imitātiōnem, in imitation.</i>	incessī , perf. of incēdō .
immātūrus , -a, -um, adj., <i>immature, untimely.</i>	inchoō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to begin.</i>
imminēns , gen. -entis, adj., <i>imminent, at hand.</i>	incidō , -ere, -cidī, —, <i>to fall.</i>
immōtus , -a, -um, adj., <i>unmoved, motionless.</i>	incitō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to excite, to spur on.</i>
impedimentum , -ī, n., <i>hindrance, baggage.</i>	incognitus , -a, -um, adj., <i>unknown.</i>
impediō , -īre, -īvī, -ītus, <i>to hinder, to prevent.</i>	incola , -ae, m., <i>inhabitant.</i>
imperātor , -ōris, m., <i>general, emperor.</i>	incolō , -ere, -luī, —, <i>to dwell in.</i>
imperium , -rī, n., <i>empire, dominion, supreme power, reign.</i>	incrēdibilis , -e, adj., <i>incredible, extraordinary.</i>
imperō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to order, to rule.</i>	increpāns , -antis, pres. part. of increpō .
impetus , -ūs, m., <i>attack, onset.</i>	increpō , -āre, -uī, -ītus, <i>to upbraid, to scold.</i>
impiger , -gra, -grum, adj., <i>diligent.</i>	incursiō , -ōnis, f., <i>incursion, raid.</i>
impius , -a, -um, adj., <i>wicked, unpatriotic.</i>	inde , adv., <i>from there, from that time.</i>
implōrō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to implore, to beg earnestly.</i>	indicō , -ere, -dixī, -dictus, <i>to declare.</i>
impōnō , -ere, -posuī, -positus, <i>to place upon, to put; finem impōnere, to put an end.</i>	indixī , perf. of indicō .
	inducō , -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, <i>to lead in; (aqueduct) to build.</i>
	induō , -ere, -uī, -ūtus, <i>to dress in.</i>

industria, -ae, f., *industry, diligence.*

indūtus (past part. of **indūo**), *dressed in, wearing.*

indūxī, perf. of **indūcō**.

inermis, -e, adj., *unarmed, defenseless.*

infāmis, -e, adj., *infamous, disgraceful.*

inferō, -ferre, **intulī**, **illātus**, to *bring upon, to make (war).*

infestō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to *infest.*

infinitus, -a, -um, adj., *without end, infinite.*

inflātus, -a, -um, adj., *puffed up.*

infligō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus, to *inflict.*

infrendēns, -entis, pres. part., *gnashing.*

infringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus, to *break off.*

ingenium, -nī, n., *character, nature.*

ingēns, gen. -entis, adj., *huge, enormous, very great.*

ingrātus, -a, -um, adj., *not pleasing, ungrateful.*

iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, to *put in.*

iniēcī, perf. of **iniciō**.

inimīcus, -a, -um, adj., *unfriendly, hostile.*

initium, -tī, n., *beginning.*

iniūria, -ae, f., *injustice, wrong; iniūriā afficere, to maltreat.*

iniūstē, adv., *unjustly.*

innocēns, gen. -entis, adj., *not harmful, innocent.*

inopia, -ae, f., *lack.*

inquit, *he or she says, he or she said.*

insidiae, -ārum, f. pl., *ambush.*

insidēns, -entis, pres. part. of **insidō**.

insidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus, to *sit on, to ride.*

insigne, -is, n., *badge, standard.*

insignis, -e, adj., *noteworthy.*

insiliō, -īre, -uī, —, to *leap, to jump.*

insiluī, perf. of **insiliō**.

insinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to *thrust in; sēsē insinuāre, to slip in.*

insolenter, adv., *arrogantly, haughtily.*

instituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtus, to *establish, to found.*

instruō, -ere, -ūxī, -ūctus, to *draw up, to build up.*

insula, -ae, f., *island.*

intāctus, -a, -um, adj., *intact, unharmed, fresh.*

integer, -gra, -grum, adj., *unhurt, sound, fresh.*

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, to *understand.*

inter, prep. (with acc.), *between, among, amidst, during.*

interdiū, adv., *in the daytime.*

intereā, adv., *in the meantime.*

interēmī, perf. of **interimō**.

interfector, -ōris, m., *murderer.*

interfectus, past part. of **interficiō**.

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, to *kill.*

interfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus, to *pierce.*

interim, adv., *in the meantime.*

- interimō**, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmtus, *to kill*.
interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to ask, to question*.
intrā, prep. (with acc.), *inside of, within*.
intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to enter, to come in, to go in*.
intrōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *to lead in, to introduce*.
intulī, perf. of **inferō**.
inūsītātus, -a, -um, adj., *unusual, extraordinary*.
invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus, *to invade, to seize*.
invāsī, perf. of **invādō**.
inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *to come upon, to find out, to invent*.
inventor, -ōris, m., *inventor, discoverer*.
invictus, -a, -um, adj., *unconquered*.
invidia, -ae, f., *envy*.
invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to invite*.
iocus, -ī, m., *joke*.
Iove, **Iovis**, see **Iuppiter**.
ipse, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, dem., *self, himself, herself, itself, themselves; ego ipse, I myself*.
īra, -ae, f., *anger*.
irātus, -a, -um, adj., *angry*.
irridēns, -entis, pres. part. of **irrideō**.
irrideō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsus, *to laugh (at), to make fun (of)*.
is, **ea**, **id**, dem., *this, that; he, she, it*.
ita, adv., *thus*.
Itali, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Italians*.
Itālia, -ae, f., *Italy*.
itaque, conj., *and so, thus, that is why, for that reason*.
īte, imper. of **eō**.
iter, **itineris**, n., *way, road, journey, march, distance*.
iterum, adv., *again, a second time*.
iubeō, -ēre, **iussī**, **iussus**, *to order*.
iūcunda, -orum, n. pl., *pleasant things*.
iūcundus, -a, -um, adj., *pleasant, agreeable*.
Iūdaea, -ae, f., *Judea*.
Iūdaeī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Jews*.
iūdex, -icis, m., *judge*.
iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to judge, to declare*.
iūgerum, -ī, n., *a plot of land containing 28,000 square feet*.
iugum, -ī, n., *yoke*.
Iugurtha, -ae, m., *Jugurtha, a king of Numidia*.
Iūlia, -ae, f., *Julia*.
Iūlius, -lī, m., *Julius, the name of a Roman clan*.
iūctus, past part. of **iungō**.
iungō, -ere, **iūnxī**, **iūctus**, *to join, to unite*.
iūnior, -ius, compar. of **iuvenis**, *younger*.
Iūnius, -nī, m., *June*.
Iūnius, -nī, m., *Junius, the name of a Roman clan*.
Iuppiter, **Iovis**, m., *Jupiter*.
Iūra, -ae, m., *Jura, the name of a range of mountains in France*.
iūre, see **iūs**.

iūrō, -āre, -avī, -ātus, *to swear, to take an oath.*

iūs, iūris, *n.*, *right*; iūs civitātis, *citizenship.*

iussus, past part. of iubeō.

iussus, -ūs, *m.*, *order.*

iūstē, *justly, deservedly.*

iustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *just.*

iuvenis, -is, *m.*, *youth, young man.*

Iuventius, -tī, *m.*, *Juventius*, a Roman general defeated by Andrisclus.

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *to aid, to help.*

K

Kalendae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, the *Calends* (first day of the month).

L

L. = **Lūcius**.

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, *Labienus*, the most prominent of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war.

labor, -ōris, *m.*, *labor, toil.*

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to work, to labor.*

Lacedaemonius, -nī, *m.*, a *Lacedaemonian*, a *Spartan*.

Lacō, -ōnis, *m.*, a *Laconian*, a *Spartan*.

lacōnicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *laconic.*

lacrima, -ae, *f.*, *tear.*

lacus, -ūs, *m.*, *lake.*

laetitia, -ae, *f.*, *joy.*

laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *joyful, happy.*

Laevinus, -ī, *m.*, *P. Valerius Laevinus*, defeated by Pyrrhus.

lanius, -nī, *m.*, *butcher.*

lapideus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *of stone.*

lapis, -idis, *m.*, *stone, mile-stone* (at intervals of 1000 Roman paces).

lapsus, -ūs, *m.*, *slip.*

lātē, *adv.*, *widely*; **longē** **lātēque**, *far and wide, everywhere.*

Latīnē, *adv.*, *in Latin.*

Latinus, -ī, *m.*, *Latinus*, an early Italian king.

Latīnī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the *Latins*.

latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, *robber.*

latus, -eris, *n.*, *side.*

lātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *wide.*

laudāns, -antis, *pres. part.* of **laudō**.

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to praise*; **sē laudāre**, *to praise one's self.*

laus, **laudis**, *f.*, *praise.*

Lāvinium, -nī, *n.*, *Lavinium*, a city in Italy built by Aeneas.

lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, *ambassador, lieutenant.*

legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, *legion* (divided into ten cohorts of 360 to 600 men each).

legō, -ere, **lēgī**, **lēctus**, *to choose, to gather, to read.*

Lemannus, -ī, *m.*, *Leman*, the name of a lake in Switzerland, more often called the *Lake of Geneva*.

lēnis, -e, *adj.*, *mild, gentle.*

lentē, *adv.*, *slowly.*

Lentulus, -ī, *m.*, *Lentulus*, Cicero's son-in-law.

lentus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *slow.*

- leō, -ōnis, m., *lion*.
 Leōnidās, -ae, m., *Leonidas*, a Spartan king who fell at Thermopylae.
 Leontinus, -a, -um, adj., of *Leontini*, a Sicilian town.
 Lepidus, -ī, m., *Lepidus*, one of the triumvirs with Octavianus and Antony.
 lepus, -oris, m., *hare*.
 lētālis, -e, adj., *deadly*.
 levis, -e, adj., *light*.
 levitās, -ātis, f., *lightness, mobility*.
 lēx, lēgis, f., *law*.
 libenter, adv., *with pleasure, with good appetite*.
 liber, -era, -erum, adj., *free*.
 liber, -brī, m., *book*.
 liberī, -ōrum, m. pl., *children*.
 liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to *free*.
 libertās, -ātis, f., *liberty, freedom*.
 libitum, past part. of *libet*, impers., *it pleases*.
 Libyssa, -ae, f., *Libyssa*, a town in Bithynia.
 licet, -ēre, licuit, licitum est, impers., *it is allowed*.
 Licinius, -nī, m.; see *Lūcullus*.
 lictor, -ōris, m., *lictor* (official attendant upon a magistrate).
 ligneus, -a, -um, adj., *wooden*.
 Ligurēs, -um, m. pl., the *Ligurians* (northwestern Italy).
 Lilybaeum, -ī, n., *Lilybaeum*, a promontory on the western coast of Italy.
 lima, -ae, f., *file*.
 linea, -ae, f., *line*.
 lingua, -ae, f., *tongue, language*.
 liniō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, to *calk, to besmear*.
 linter, -tris, f., *boat*.
 litigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to *quarrel*.
 littera, -ae, f., *letter* (of the alphabet); pl., *letter, epistle*.
 litterārius, -a, -um, adj., of *reading and writing*; lūdus litterārius, *elementary school*.
 litus, -oris, n., *beach, seashore*.
 locō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to *place, to situate*.
 locus, -ī, m., *place, location, origin*.
 longē, adv., *far, a long way off*; longē lātēque, *far and wide, everywhere*.
 longitūdo, -inis, f., *length*.
 longus, -a, -um, adj., *long*.
 lōrica, -ae, f., *cuirass*.
 lūcerna, -ae, f., *lamp*.
 Lūcius, -cī, m., *Lucius*, a Roman first name.
 Lūcrētia, -ae, f., *Lucretia*, a Roman matron, the wife of Collatinus.
 Lūcullus, -ī, m., *L. Licinius Lucullus*, a Roman general in the Mithridatic war, noted later for wealth and luxury.
 lūdus, -ī, m., *play, game, school*.
 lūgeō, -ēre, lūxi, lūctus, to *mourn*.
 lupa, -ae, f., *she-wolf*.
 lupus, -ī, m., *wolf*.
 Lūsitānia, -ae, f., *Lusitania*, a part of Hispania, now Portugal.
 lūx, lūcis, f., *light*.

M

M. = **Mārcus.**

Macedonia, -ae, f., *Macedonia*, a country north of Greece.

Macedonicus, -a, -um, adj., *Macedonian, of Macedonia.*

macer, -cra, -crum, adj., *thin, meager.*

macte, see **mactus**.

mactus, -a, -um, adj., (of the gods), *worshiped, honored*; **macte virtute estō** (lit., *be increased in your merit!*), *good luck! well done!*

magis, adv., *more.*

magister, -trī, m., *teacher.*

Magnēsia, -ae, f., *Magnesia*, a town of Ionia (western coast of Asia Minor).

magnificentissimē, superl. of **magnificē**, *most splendidly, most pompously.*

magnificus, -a, -um, adj., *magnificent, splendid.*

magnitūdō, -inis, f., *bigness, size.*

magnus, -a, -um, adj., *large, great.*

maior, -ius, compar. of **magnus**, *greater, larger.*

maiōrēs, -um, m. pl., *ancestors.*

male, adv., *badly.*

maleficium, -cī, n., *bad deed, mischief.*

malitia, -ae, f., *ill will, wickedness.*

malum, -ī, n., *evil, misfortune, disaster.*

malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad.*

Mancinus, -ī, m., *Mancinus*, a Roman general who made a

disgraceful peace with the Numidians.

māne, adv., *early in the morning.*

maneō, -ēre, **mānsī**, **mānsus**, *to remain.*

manifestus, -ā, -um, adj., *plain, evident.*

Mānius, -nī, m., *Manius*, a Roman first name.

Mānlius, -lī, m., *Manlius*, a member of the Manlian gens.

Mantua, -ae, f., *Mantua*, a city of northern Italy.

manus, -ūs, f., *hand.*

Mārcellus, -ī, m., *M. Claudius Marcellus*, who captured Syracuse.

Mārcius, -cī, or **Mārtius**, -tī, m., a Roman name; see **Ancus**, **Cēnsorinus**, and **Coriōlanus**.

Mārcus, -ī, m., *Marcus*, a Roman first name.

mare, -ris, n., *sea.*

marītus, -ī, m., *husband.*

Marsī, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Marsi*, a people of central Italy.

Mārtius, see **Mārcius**.

Mārtius, -tī, m., *March*; **Campus Mārtius**, the *Field of Mars*, a plain outside the walls of Rome.

māter, -tris, f., *mother.*

mātertera, -ae, f., *aunt* (mother's sister).

mātrīmōnium, -nī, n., *matrimony, marriage*; **in mātrīmōnium dūcere**, *to marry.*

maximē, adv., *most, very.*

maximus, -a, -um, superl. of **magnus**, *greatest, very great.*

- Maximus**, -ī, m., *Maximus*, a Roman cognomen or surname.
mē, see *ego*.
mea, f. of *meus*.
mēcum, with *me*.
medicus, -ī, m., *physician*.
mediocritās, -ātis, f., *mean*.
medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle*, the middle of, the midst of; **mediā hieme**, in the middle of winter; **mediō mari**, on the open sea.
mellificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to make honey.
membrum, -ī, n., *member*, limb.
memoria, -ae, f., *memory*; (in) **memoriā tenēre**, to remember.
Menēnius, -nī, m., *Menenius Lanatus Agrippa*, envoy to the seceding plebs.
mēns, *mentis*, f., *mind*, feeling, thought.
mēnsa, -ae, f., *table*.
mēnsis, -is, m., *month*.
mentiō, -ōnis, f., *mention*.
mercēs, -ēdis, f., *pay*, reward, price.
mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, to earn, to deserve.
mergō, -ere, *mersī*, *mersus*, to sink.
meridiēs, -ēī, m., *midday*, noon.
meritō, adv., *deservedly*, justly.
mersī, perf. of *mergō*.
mersus, past part. of *mergō*.
Metellus, -ī, m., see *Caecilius*.
metus, -ūs, m., *fear*, dread.
meus, -a, -um, poss. adj., and pron., *my*, *mine*.
mī, voc. of *meus*.
Micipsa, -ae, m., *Micipsa*, a king of Numidia.
mihi, see *ego*.
miles, -itis, m., *soldier*.
mīlia, -ium, n. pl., *thousands*.
militāris, -e, adj., *military*; **res militāris**, *military affairs*, warfare.
militia, -ae, f., *military service*.
militō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, to serve in war.
mille, indecl. num. adj., *thousand*.
minimus, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of *parvus*), *very small*.
ministerium, -rī, n., *service*, work, labor.
minor, *minus* (compar. of *parvus*), *smaller*, *younger*, *lower*, *lesser*.
minus, adv., *less*.
Minucius, -cī, m., *Minucius*, a Roman consul.
miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched*, *miserable*; **miserī**, -ōrum, m. pl., the wretched ones.
miseria, -ae, f., *misery*.
misericordia, -ae, f., *pity*.
mīsī, perf. of *mittō*.
missus, past part. of *mittō*.
Mithridātēs, -is, m., *Mithridates*, a famous king of Pontus in Asia Minor.
Mithridāticus, -a, -um, adj., *Mithridatic*.
mittō, -ere, *mīsī*, *missus*, to send.
modestia, -ae, f., *modesty*.
modius, -dī, m., a dry measure containing about a peck.

modo, adv., *only*; **nōn modo**, *not only*.

modō, abl. of **modus**.

modus, -ī, m., *way, manner*;
quō modō? *how?* in **modum**
(gen.), *like a . . .*

moenia, -ium, n. pl., *ramparts*.

momordit, perf. of **mordeō**.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to warn*.

mōns, **montis**, m., *mountain*.

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to show, to point out*.

montānī, -ōrum, m. pl., *mountaineers*.

mora, -ae, f., *delay*.

morbus, -ī, m., *sickness, disease*.

mordeō, -ēre, **momordī**, **morsus**, *to bite into*.

mōrēs, pl. of **mōs**.

mors, **mortis**, f., *death*.

mortālis, -e, adj., *mortal*.

mortuus, -a, -um, adj., *dead*.

mōs, **mōris**, m., *habit, custom*;
pl., *manners, rules of conduct, character*.

mōtus, past part. of **moveō**.

mōtus, -ūs, m., *movement, motion*.

moveō, -ēre, **mōvī**, **mōtus**, *to move, to stir*; **arma** or **bellum**
movēre, *to start a war*; **castra**
movēre, *to break camp*.

mox, adv., *soon*.

Mūcius, -cī, m., *Mucius Scaevola*, a heroic young Roman.

muliebris, -e, adj., *womanly*.

mulier, -eris, f., *woman*.

multa, -ae, f., *fine*.

multa, -ōrum, n. pl., *many things*.

multitūdō, -inis, f., *great number, multitude*.

multus, -a, -um, adj., *much*;
pl., *many, numerous*.

Mummius, -mī, m., *Mummius*, a Roman general who captured Corinth.

Munda, -ae, f., *Munda*, a city in southern Spain.

mundus, -ī, m., *world*.

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *to fortify*.

mūrus, -ī, m., *wall, rampart*.

musca, -ae, f., *fly*.

mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to change, to reform*.

Myndus, -ī, f., *Myndus*, a city in Caria (southeastern part of Asia Minor).

N

Nabis, -idis, m., *Nabis*, a tyrant of Sparta.

nam, conj., *for*.

nārrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to tell, to relate*.

Nāsica, -ae, m., *Nasica*, surname of P. Cornelius Scipio.

natāns, -antis, pres. part. of **natō**.

nātiō, -ōnis, f., *nation*.

natō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to swim*.

nātūra, -ae, f., *nature*.

nātus, -a, -um, adj., *born*.

naufragium, -gī, n., *shipwreck*.

naufragus, -ī, m., *shipwrecked person*.

nauta, -ae, m., *sailor*.

nāvālis, -e, adj., *naval, sea*.

nāvicula, -ae, f., *small boat*.

- nāvigātiō**, -ōnis, f., *navigation, sailing.*
nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to sail.*
nāvis, -is, f., *ship.*
-ne, particle (enclitic), used to indicate a question.
nec, conj., *and not, nor; nec . . . nec, neither . . . nor.*
necem, see **nex**.
necessārius, -a, -um, adj., *necessary.*
necessitās, -ātis, f., *necessity.*
necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to kill.*
negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to deny, to refuse.*
nēmō (dat.: **nēmīnī**), m., *no-body, no one.*
nepōs, -ōtis, m., *grandson, grandnephew.*
Neptūnus, -ī, m., *Neptune, god of the sea.*
neque, see **nec**.
neuter, -tra, -trum, adj., *neither.*
nex, **necis**, f., *violent death, slaughter.*
Nicomēdēs, -is, m., *Nicomedes, a king of Bithynia.*
nīdificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to build a nest.*
niger, -gra, -grum, adj., *black, dark.*
nihil, indecl., *nothing.*
Nīlus, -ī, m., *the Nile, a large river in Africa.*
nimis, adv., *too much.*
nisi, conj., *if not, unless.*
nitor, -ōris, m., *brightness, sheen.*
Nōa, -ae, m., *Noah.*
nōbilis, -e, adj., *well known, noble.*
nōbilissimus, -a, -um, superl. of **nōbilis**, -e.
nōbilitās, -ātis, f., *nobleness, nobility.*
nōbis, see **nōs**; **nōbiscum**, *with us.*
nocte, see **nox**.
nocturnus, -a, -um, adj., *by night, night.*
nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, —, *to be unwilling, not to wish.*
nōluērunt, perfect of **nōlō**.
nōmen, -inis, n., *name.*
nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call, to name.*
nōn, adv., *not.*
Nōnae, -ārum, f. pl., *the Nones (ninth day before the Ides).*
nōnāgēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *ninetieth.*
nōndum, adv., *not yet.*
nōs, pers. pron., *we; us.*
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. and pron., *our, ours.*
nōtissimus, -a, -um, superl. of **nōtus**, -a, -um.
nōtus, -a, -um, adj., *famous, well known.*
novem, indecl. num. adj., *nine.*
November, -bris, m., *November.*
novus, -a, -um, adj., *new.*
nox, **noctis**, f., *night.*
nūbilus, -a, -um, adj., *cloudy, dark.*
nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *bare.*
nūllus, -a, -um, adj., *not any, no, none.*
Numa, -ae, m., *Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.*

Numantia, -ae, f., *Numantia*, a city of Spain.

Numantini, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Numantines*.

numerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to number, to have.

numerus, -ī, m., number.

Numidae, -ārum, m. pl., the *Numidians*.

Numidia, -ae, f., *Numidia*, now *Algeria* (northern Africa).

Numitor, -ōris, m., *Numitor*, grandfather of Romulus and Remus.

numquam, adv., never.

nunc, adv., now.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to announce.

nūntius, -tī, m., messenger.

nympha, -ae, f., *nymph*.

O

ō, interj., o! oh!

obeō, -īre, obīi, obitus, to die.

ōbēsus, -a, -um, adj., fat.

obiī, perf. of obeō.

obiūrgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to scold, to rebuke.

oblītus, -a, -um, adj., forgetful.

obscurō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to darken.

obscurus, -a, -um, adj., obscure, dark.

obsēdī, perf. of obsideō.

obses, **obsidis**, m., *hostage*.

obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, to besiege.

obstupefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, to amaze.

obteneō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus, to obtain, to get.

obtuli, perf. of offerō.

occidō, -ere, -cidi, -cīsus, to kill.

occīsus, past part. of occidō.

occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to occupy, to seize.

ōceanus, -ī, m., *ocean*.

Octaviānus, -ī, m., *Octavianus*, grandnephew and adopted son of Julius Caesar, and first Roman emperor.

octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj., eighth.

octingenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., eight hundred.

Octōber, -bris, m., *October*.

octōgēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj., eightieth.

octōgintā, indecl., num. adj., eighty.

oculus, -ī, m., *eye*.

odium, -dī, n., *hatred*.

Oenomaus, -ī, m., *Oenomaus*, a leader in the war of the gladiators.

offendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, to offend.

offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātus, to offer.

officina, -ae, f., *workshop*, *studio*.

officium, -cī, n., *office*, *duty*.

olera (also *holera*), -erum, n. pl., *vegetables*, *greens*.

ōlim, adv., formerly, once.

ōmen, -inis, n., *omen*, *sign*.

omnis, -e, adj., all, every; **omnia**, -ium, pl., all, every-thing; **haec omnia**, all these things.

onus, -eris, n., *load*, *burden*.

opēs, opum, f. pl., *property, riches, things.*

opiniō, -ōnis, f., *opinion.*

oppidum, -dī, n., *town.*

oppressī, perf. of opprimō.

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, pressus, *to crush, to overpower, to defeat.*

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to attack, to besiege.*

opulentus, -a, -um, adj., *wealthy.*

opus, -eris, n., *work.*

ōra, -ae, f., *sea-coast.*

ōrātor, -ōris, m., *orator.*

orbis, -is, m., *circle; orbis terrarum, earth, world.*

ōrdō, -inis, m., *order, row, bank (of oars).*

ōre, see ōs, ōris.

oriēns, -entis, m., *orient, east.*

origō, -inis, f., *origin.*

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., *ornament, jewelry, trappings.*

ōrnātus, -ūs, m., *fine attire.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to pray, to beseech.*

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth.*

os, ossis, n., *bone.*

ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *to show, to display.*

Ōstia, -ae, f., *Ostia, a town at the mouth of the Tiber.*

ōstium, -tī, n., *mouth (of a river).*

ōtiōsus, -a, -um, adj., *idle.*

ōtium, -tī, n., *leisure, ease.*

ovis, -is, f., *sheep.*

pācem, see pāx.

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to calm, to pacify, to subdue.*

paedagōgus, -ī, m., *guardian (a slave to guide and attend children).*

paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*

Paetus, -ī, m., *Paetus, the husband of Arria.*

Palātinus, -ī, m., *the Palatine, one of the hills of Rome.*

palma, -ae, f., *palm of the hand.*

palūdāmentum, -ī, n., *military cloak.*

pālus, -ī, m., *stake.*

palūs, -ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp.*

pānis, -is, m., *bread.*

Pānsa, -ae, m., *Pansa, a consul.*

Papīrius, -rī, m., *L. Papirius, victor of the Samnites.*

pār, paris, adj., *equal.*

pār, paris, n., *pair, couple.*

parēns, -entis, m. and f., *parent.*

pariter, adv., *in like manner, as well.*

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to prepare, to make (ready).*

pars, partis, f., *part.*

parsimōnia, -ae, f., *thrift.*

partēs, pl. of pars.

parvus, -a, -um, adj., *small, little.*

passus, -ūs, m., *step, pace.*

pāstor, -ōris, m., *shepherd.*

pater, -tris, m., *father.*

paternus, -a, -um, adj., *paternal.*

patientia, -ae, f., *patience.*

patria, -ae, f., *fatherland, native land.*

P

P. = Pūblius.

pābulum, -ī, n., *fodder, grass.*

- patriciī, -ōrum, m. pl.,** *patri-*
cians, nobility.
patricius, -a, -um, adj., *patri-*
cian, noble.
patruēlis, -is, m., *cousin* (on
the father's side).
patruus, -ī, m., *uncle* (father's
brother).
paucī, -ae, -a, adj., *few, a few.*
paulō, adv., *somewhat; paulō*
post, a little later.
Paulus, -ī, m., *Paulus, the*
name of one of the families
belonging to the Aemilian
clan.
pauper, -eris, adj., *poor.*
pāvō, -ōnis, m., *peacock.*
pāx, pācis, f., *peace; pācem et*
amicitiā cōfirmāre, to
make a treaty of alliance.
peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to make
a mistake.
pectus, -oris, n., *breast.*
pecūnia, -ae, f., *money.*
pecūniōsus, -a, -um, adj., *rich.*
pedes, -itis, m., *foot-soldier, in-*
fantryman.
pedēs, pl. of pēs, pedis.
Pelignī, -ōrum, m. pl., the
Peligni, a people of central
Italy.
pelle, see pellis.
pellexī, perf. of pelliciō.
pelliciō, -ere, -lexī, -lectus, to
entice, to lure.
pellis, -is, f., *skin.*
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, to
drive, to put to flight, to de-
feat.
pēninsula, -ae, f., *peninsula.*
penna, -ae, f., *feather.*
per, prep. (with acc.), *through,*
across, by, during.
peragrāns, -antis, pres. part. of
peragrō.
peragrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to
wander through.
percutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus,
to strike hard, to beat.
perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, to
lose, to destroy.
perducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus,
to lead.
pereō, -īre, -iī, —, to perish.
pereunt, pres. ind. of pereō.
pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctus,
to go on, to go forward, to pro-
ceed.
peribit, fut. of pereō.
periculum, -li, n., *danger.*
periērent, periit, perf. of pereō.
peritissimus, -a, -um, superl.
of peritus, -a, -um.
peritus, -a, -um, adj., *skillful.*
permittō, -ere, -misi, -missus,
to allow, to give up, to hand
over.
permōtus, past part. of per-
moveō.
permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus,
to move deeply, to influence.
permūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to
interchange, to exchange.
perniciōsus, -a, -um, adj., *per-*
nicious, hurtful.
perpaucī, -ae, -a, adj., *very*
few.
perrēxī, perf. of pergō.
Persae, -ārum, m. pl., the
Persians.
Perseus, -ī, m., *Perseus, a king*
of Macedonia.

- persōna**, -ae, f., *mask, person*.
perspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spec-
tus, *to see through, to perceive*.
perstringō, -ere, -īnxī, -ictus,
to affect deeply.
persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suā-
sus, *to persuade*.
perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to*
terrify.
pertineō, -ēre, -uī, —, *to ex-*
tend.
perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to*
disturb.
perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus,
to arrive at, to reach, to enter;
in (acc.) **per vim pervenire**,
to force one's way into.
pēs, pedis, m., *foot*.
pessimus, -a, -um (superl. of
malus), *worst, very bad*.
petō, -ere, -ivī or ii, -ītus, *to*
seek, to sue for, to try to get, to
repair to.
phalanx, -angis, f., *phalanx*
(compact order of battle;
formed by the soldiers in the
front rank overlapping their
shields above their heads).
Pharnaces, -is, m., *Pharnaces*,
a son of Mithridates, king of
Pontus.
Pharsālus, -ī, f., *Pharsalus*, a
city of Thessaly (northern
Greece), scene of Pompey's
defeat by Caesar.
Philippī, -ōrum, m. pl., *Phi-*
lippi, a city in Macedonia
(northern Greece).
Philippus, -ī, m., *Philip*, a king
of Macedonia (northern
Greece).
Picentēs, -ium, m. pl., the
Picentes, the inhabitants of
Picenum.
Picēnum, -ī, n., *Picenum*, a
region on the western coast of
Italy.
pictus, past part. of **pingō**;
picta pictūra, *painting*.
pictūra, -ae, f., *picture*.
piger, -gra, -grum, adj., *lazy*.
pīlum, -ī, n., *heavy javelin*.
pingō, -ere, **pīnxī**, **pictus**, *to*
paint.
pinguis, -e, adj., *fat, plump*.
pirāta, -ae, m., *pirate*.
piscis, -is, m., *fish*.
placeō, -ēre, -cuī, -citus, *to*
please.
Plautus, -ī, m., *Plautus*, a Ro-
man name.
plēbēius, -a, -um, adj., *plebe-*
ian.
plēbs, plēbis, f., *plebeians, com-*
mon people.
plēnus, -a, -um, adj., *full*.
pluō, -ere, **pluī** or **plūvī**, —,
(usually *impers.*), *to rain*.
plūrēs, plūra, adj., *more, several*.
plūrimī, -ae, -a, adj., *very*
many; **plūrima**, -ōrum, n.
pl., *very many things*.
plūs, adv., *more*.
poena, -ae, f., *punishment*;
poenam dare, *to pay the*
penalty, to be punished.
Poenī, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Car-*
thaginians.
poēta, -ae, m., *poet*.
pol, interj. (*Pollux*), *by Pollux!*
indeed! truly!
pompa, -ae, f., *pomp, ceremony*.

- Pompēius**, -pēi, m., *Pompey*, the rival of Caesar.
- Pompilius**, -li, m., *Numa Pompilius*, the second king of Rome.
- pōmum**, -ī, n., *fruit*.
- pōnō**, -ere, posuī, positus, to put, to place, to set; castra pōnere, to pitch camp.
- pōns**, pontis, m., *bridge*.
- Pontius**, -tī, m., *Pontius*, see *Telesīnus*.
- Pontus**, -ī, m., *Pontus*, a country in Asia Minor south of the Black Sea.
- poposcī**, perf. of poscō.
- populus**, -ī, m., *people*.
- Porsenna**, -ae, m., *Porsenna*, a king of Etruria.
- porta**, -ae, f., *gate*.
- portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to carry.
- portus**, -ūs, m., *port, harbor*.
- poscō**, -ere, popōscī, —, to demand.
- positus**, past part. of pōnō.
- possum**, posse, potuī, —, to be able, can.
- possunt**, third pers. pl. pres. ind. of possum.
- post**, prep. (with acc.), *after*.
- post**, adv., *after, later*; nōn multō post tempore, a short time later; quattuor post annis, four years after; paulō post, a little later.
- posteā**, adv., *afterwards*.
- posterī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *descendants, posterity*.
- (*posterus*), -a, -um, adj., *next*.
- postquam**, conj., *as soon as, when, after*.
- postrēmō**, adv., *at last, finally*.
- postulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to ask for.
- Postumius**, -mī, m., *Postumius*, the name of a Roman gēns or clan.
- posuī**, perf. of pōnō.
- potēns**, gen. -entis, adj., *powerful*.
- potentia**, -ae, f., *power*.
- poterant**, past of possum.
- potestās**, -ātis, f., *power*; in potestātem redigere, to take prisoner; in potestātem venire, to fall into the hands of.
- prae**, prep. (with abl.), *before*.
- praebeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, to offer, to pay; sē praebere, to show one's self.
- praecessī**, perf. of praecēdō.
- praecēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, to go before, to precede, to excel.
- praeda**, -ae, f., *booty, prey*.
- praedō**, -ōnis, m., *booty, robber*.
- praefectus**, -ī, m., *commander*.
- praeferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, to bear before, to carry before.
- praelātus**, past part. of praefērō.
- praemium**, -mī, n., *reward*.
- praenōmen**, -inis, n., *first name*.
- praepōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus, to put before, to prefer.
- praesidium**, -dī, n., *garrison*.
- praestō**, -āre, -stitī, -stitus, to excel, to pay, to grant, to make.
- praeter**, prep. (with acc.), *except*.
- praetōrius**, -rī, m., *former praetor* (a Roman magistrate next in rank to the consul).

- prātum**, -ī, n., *meadow*.
prāvus, -a, -um, adj., *bad, vicious*.
precēs, -um, f. pl., *prayers*.
premō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, *to press, to pursue*.
pretiōsus, -a, -um, adj., *precious*.
pretium, -tī, n., *price, ransom*.
primō, adv., *at first*.
primum, adv., *at first, for the first time*.
primus, -a, -um, adj., *first*.
prīnceps, -cipis, adj., *first, foremost*.
prīnceps, -cipis, m., *chief, leader, most eminent citizen*.
prīscus, -a, -um, adj., *ancient*.
Prīscus, -ī, m., *Tarquinius Prīscus (the Elder), the fifth king of Rome*.
priusquam, conj., *before*.
privātus, -a, -um, adj., *private*.
prō, prep. (with abl.), *for, in front of, instead of, in return for*.
probitās, -ātis, f., *honor, honesty*.
probus, -a, -um, adj., *honorable, honest*.
Procās, -ae, m., *Silvius Procas, a king of Alba, father of Numitor and Amulius*.
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, —, *to go forward, to advance*.
prōcessī, perf. of **prōcēdō**.
prōcōsul, -is, m., *proconsul (an ex-consul appointed as governor of a province)*.
procul, adv., *far*.
prōcurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus, *to run forward, to charge*.
prōditiō, -ōnis, f., *treason*.
prōditor, -ōris, m., *traitor*.
proelium, -lī, n., *combat, battle*.
profugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, *to flee, to escape*.
prōfuī, perf. of **prōsum**.
prōgenitor, -ōris, m., *ancestor*.
prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to restrain, to keep away, to keep off*.
prohibitus, past part. of **prohibeō**.
prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *to promise*.
prōmptus, -a, -um, adj., *prompt, quick*.
prōmunturium, -rī, n., *promontory, headland*.
prope, prep. (with acc.), *near*.
properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to hasten*.
proprius, -a, -um, adj., *one's own*.
propter, prep. (with acc.), *because of, for*.
prōrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *to burst forth*.
prōscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus, *to publish, to proscribe, to exile*.
prōsperē, adv., *successfully*.
prōsperus, -a, -um, adj., *prosperous*.
prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfuī**, —, *to be useful, to do good*.
prōtinus, adv., *at once*.
prōvideō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsus, *to foresee*.
prōvincia, -ae, f., *province*.
prūdēns, gen. -entis, adj., *foreseeing, prudent*.

prūdentē, adv., *prudently*.

prūdentia, -ae, f., *foresight, prudence*.

Pseudophilippus, -ī, m., *Pseudophilippus*, the nickname of Andriscus.

Ptolemaeus, -ī, m., *Ptolemy*, an Egyptian king.

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., *public*.

Pūblius, -lī, m., *Publius*, a Roman first name.

puella, -ae, f., *girl*.

puer, **puerī**, m., *boy, child*.

puerilis, -e, adj., *childish, youthful*.

pueritia, -ae, f., *childhood*.

pugna, -ae, f., *battle, combat*.

pugnāns, -antis, pres. part. of **pugnō**.

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to *fight*.

pugnus, -ī, m., *fist*; **pugnīs certāre**, to *box*.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful, fine, handsome*.

pulchrē, adv., *beautifully, fine! good!*

pulsus, past part. of **pellō**.

Pūnicus, -a, -um, adj., *Punic, Carthaginian*.

pūniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, to *punish*.

purpureus, -a, -um, adj., *purple*.

pūrus, -a, -um, adj., *pure*.

putāns, -antis, pres. part. of **putō**.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to *think*.

Pydna, -ae, f., *Pydna*, a town of Macedonia.

Pyrēnaei montēs, m. pl., the *Pyrenees*.

Pyrrhus, -ī, m., *Pyrrhus*, a famous king of Epirus (western part of Greece).

Q

Q. = **Quīntus**.

quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *forty*.

quadrīngentēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj., *four hundredth*.

quae, see **quī** and **quis**.

quaecumque, see **quicumque**.

quaerēns, -entis, pres. part. of **quaerō**.

quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, to *seek, to inquire*.

quam, see **quī**, relat. pron.; and **quī**, interr. adj.

quam, adv., *how, how very! what a! than, as; tam . . . , quam . . . , as . . . as . . .*

quandō, adv., *when?*

quantus, -a, -um, adj., *how great?*

quārtus, -a, -um, num. adj., *fourth*.

quās, see **quī** and **quis**.

quasi, adv., *as if*.

quattuor, indecl. num. adj., *four*.

quattuordecim, indecl. num. adj., *fourteen*.

-que, enclitic particle, *and*.

quī, **quae**, **quod**, relat. pron., *who, he who, which, that, what*.

quī, **quae**, **quod**, interr. adj., *what? which?*

quia, conj., *because*.

quibus, see **quī** and **quis**; **quibuscum** = **cum quibus**.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, relat. pron. and adj., *whoever, whatever, any, every*.

quid, see **quis**.

quidam, quaedam, quiddam, indef. pron., *somebody, something*.

quidem, adv., *indeed*.

quiēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus, to be quiet, to rest.

quīn, conj., *why not*.

Quīntilis, -is, m., (the fifth month) *July*.

Quīntius, -tī, m., *Quinctius*; see *Cincinnātus*.

quīndecim, indecl. num. adj., *fifteen*.

quīngentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *five hundred*.

quīnquāgēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj., *fiftieth*.

quīnquāgīntā, indecl. num. adj., *fifty*.

quīnque, indecl. num. adj., *five*.

quīntus, -a, -um, num. adj., *fifth*.

Quīrinālis, -is, m., *Quirinal*, one of the hills of Rome.

quis, quid, interr. pron., *who? which one? what?*

quisque, quaeque, quodque, adj., *each*.

quisque, quidque, pron., *each one*.

quō? adv., *where?*

quod, see **quī**.

quod, conj., *because*.

quōmodo, adv., *how?*

quondam, adv., *once, formerly*.

quoque, adv., *also, too*.

quōs, see **quī** and **quis**.

quot, indecl., *how many? as many*.

quotiēns, adv., *as often as, whenever*.

R

rāna, -ae, f., *frog*.

rapiō, -ere, -puī, -ptus, to snatch, to steal, to carry off.

rebellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to revolt, to renew a war.

recēdō, -ere, -cessī, —, to go back, to withdraw.

recēns, gen. **-entis**, adj., *recent*.

recēpī, perf. of **recipiō**.

receptus, past part. of **recipiō**.

recessī, perf. of **recēdō**.

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, to receive, to welcome, to recover, to take back; **sē recipere**, to withdraw.

recognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, to recognize, to identify.

recreō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to make again, to revive.

rēctē, adv., *rightly, all right!*

rēctus, -a, -um, adj., *right, good*.

reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, to give back, to return, to pay, to pay back.

reddidī, perf. of **reddō**.

redēgī, perf. of **redigō**.

redeō, -īre, -īī, -itus, to go back, to return, to begin again.

rediēns, -entis, pres. part. of **redeō**.

redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -actus, to drive back, to force, to bring back; **in potestātem redigere**, to take prisoner.

redii, perf. of redeō.	renūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to give up.
redire, see redeō.	reparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to renew.
redūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, to lead back.	repente, adv., suddenly.
refluēns, -entis, pres. part. of refluō.	reperiō, -īre, repperi, repertus, to find.
refluō, -ere, —, —, to flow back, to recede.	repetitiō, -ōnis, f., repetition.
rēgina, -ae, f., queen.	repetō, -ere, -ivī, -ītus, to de- mand back, to claim.
regiō, -ōnis, f., region, district.	repleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, to fill.
rēgius, -a, -um, adj., kingly, regal, royal.	repōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, to put back, to restore, to give back.
rēgnāns, -antis, pres. part. of rēgnō.	reposui, perf. of repōnō.
rēgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to reign, to rule.	repperi, perf. of reperiō.
rēgnum, -ī, n., reign, throne, kingdom.	repudiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to repudiate.
Rēgulus, -ī, m., Regulus; see Atilius.	rēs, rei, f., thing, affair, war; rēs militāris, warfare; rēs pūblica, republic; rēs novae, revolution.
reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, to throw back, to throw aside.	resistō, -ere, -stiti, —, to stand against, to resist.
reiectus, past part. of reiciō.	respergō, -ere, -si, -sus, to stain.
religiō, -ōnis, f., religion.	respersus, past part. of re- spergō.
religiōsus, -a, -um, adj., reli- gious.	respondeō, -ēre, -spondi, -spōnsus, to answer.
relinquō, -ere, -liqui, -lictus, to leave.	respōnsum, -ī, n., answer.
reliquus, -a, -um, adj., remain- ing, other.	restituō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, to restore, to send back, to renew.
remaneō, -ēre, -mānsi, —, to remain.	retineō, -ēre, -tinuei, -tentus, to retain, to keep back.
remōtus, past part. of removeō.	revellō, -ere, -velli, -vulsus, to pull back, to wrest.
removeō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, to remove, to withdraw, to take away.	reverentia, -ae, f., respect.
rēmus, -ī, m., oar.	rēx, rēgis, m., king.
Remus, -ī, m., Remus, the brother of Romulus.	Rhea, -ae, f., Rhea, mother of Romulus and Remus.
renovō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to renew.	

Rhēnus, -ī, m., the *Rhine*.
Rhodanus, -ī, m., the *Rhone*.
rīdēns, -entis, pres. part. of **rīdeō**.
rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, to laugh.
rīpa, -ae, f., bank (of a river).
rīsī, perf. of **rīdeō**.
rōbur, -oris, n., strength; **rōbur militum**, the flower of the soldiers.
rōdō, -ere, rōsī, rōsus, to gnaw, to cut.
rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to ask, to beg for.
Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*.
Rōmānī, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Romans*.
Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., *Roman*.
Rōmulus, -ī, m., *Romulus*, the founder and first king of Rome.
rosa, -ae, f., *rose*.
rōstrum, -ī, n., *beak, bill*.
ruīna, -ae, f., *ruin*.
rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus, to break, to break down.
rūpēs, -is, f., *cliff, rock*.
ruptus, past part. of **rumpō**.
rūs, rūris, n., *country* (as distinguished from the city).
rūsticus, -a, -um, adj., *rural, country*.
rūsticus, -ī, m., *peasant*.

S

Sabinī, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Sabines*, an Italian people.
Sabinus, -a, -um, adj., *Sabine*.
sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., *sacred*.
sacerdōs, -ōtis, m., *priest*.
sacra, f. of **sacer**.
sacrificium, -cī, n., *sacrifice*.
saepe, adv., *often*.
sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow*.
Saguntinī, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Saguntines*, inhabitants of Saguntum.
Saguntum, -ī, n., *Saguntum*, a city of eastern Spain.
sāl, salis, m., *salt*.
saltō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to dance.
salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety*.
salūtāns, -antis, pres. part. of **salūtō**.
salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to salute, to greet.
salvē (imper. of **salveō**), *greetings! hail!*
salveō, -ēre, —, —, to be in good health.
salvus, -a, -um, adj., *safe, unharmed*.
Samnitēs, -ium, m. pl., the *Samnites*, a people of central Italy.
sanguis, -inis, m., *blood*.
sānus, -a, -um, adj., *sane, sound, healthy*.
Sardinia, -ae, f., *Sardinia*, an island in the Mediterranean.
satis, adv., *enough*.
Sāturnia, -ae, f., *Saturnia*, an Italian town, according to tradition, founded by Saturn.
Sāturnus, -ī, m., *Saturn*, father of Jupiter.
saxum, -ī, n., *rock, boulder*.
Scaevola, -ae, m., *Scaevola* (left-handed), a heroic young Roman.

scelerātus, -a, -um, adj., *accursed*.

scelestus, -a, -um, adj., *wicked*.

scelus, -eris, n., *wicked act, crime*.

schola, -ae, f., *school*.

scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge, science*.

sciō, -īre, -scīvī, scītus, *to know*.

Scīpiō, -ōnis, m., *Scipio*, the name of a famous Roman family belonging to the Cornelian clan.

scriba, -ae, m., *secretary, clerk*.

scribō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *to write*.

scrīptum, -ī, n., *written word*.

scrīptus, past part. of **scribō**.

sculptor, -ōris, m., *sculptor*.

scūtum, -ī, n., *shield*.

sē, refl. pron., *one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves*.

sēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *to go apart, to withdraw, to retire*.

sēcessī, perf. of **sēcēdō**.

secundus, -a, -um, adj., *second*.

secūris, -is, f., *ax*.

sēcūrus, -a, -um, adj., *secure*.

sed, conj., *but*; **sed etiam**, *but also*.

sēdecim, indecl. num. adj., *sixteen*.

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, —, *to sit*.

sēdēs, -is, f., *seat*.

sēditīō, -ōnis, f., *sedition, insurrection*.

semel, adv., *once*.

sēmibarbarus, -a, -um, adj., *half barbarian*.

semper, adv., *always*.

Sēna, -ae, f., *Sena*, a town of Picenum in Italy.

senātor, -ōris, m., *senator*.

senātus, -ūs, m., *senate*.

Seneca, -ae, m., *Seneca*, a Roman surname.

senectūs, -ūtis, f., *old age*.

senex, **senis**, m., *old man*.

seniōrēs, -um, m. pl., *elder men*.

sēnsus, -ūs, m., *opinion*.

sententia, -ae, f., *feeling, thought, opinion*.

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *to feel, to think*.

sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultus, *to bury*.

septem, indecl. num. adj., *seven*.

September, -bris, m., *September*.

septimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *seventh*.

septingentēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *seven hundredth*.

septuāgēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj., *seventieth*.

septuāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *seventy*.

sepulcrum, -ī, n., *grave, tomb*.

sepultus, past part. of **sepeliō**.

Sēquani, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Sequanians*, a Gallic people.

sermō, -ōnis, m., *conversation*.

serva, -ae, f., *female slave*.

Servius, -vī, m., *Servius Tullius*, the sixth king of Rome.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to save, to rescue, to keep*.

servus, -ī, m., *slave*.

sescentēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *six hundredth*.

sēsē, see **sē**.

- sevērus**, -a, -um, adj., *severe, stern.*
sex, indecl. num. adj., *six.*
sexāgēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj., *sixtieth.*
sexāgīntā, indecl. num. adj., *sixty.*
Sextilis, -is, m., (sixth month) *August.*
sextus, -a, -um, num. adj., *sixth; sextus decimus, sixteen.*
sī, conj., *if.*
sibi, see **sē**.
sīc, adv., *thus, so.*
siccum, -ī, n., *dry land.*
Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily, an island in the Mediterranean.*
signum, -ī, n., *sign.*
silentium, -tī, n., *silence.*
silva, -ae, f., *forest.*
Silvia, -ae, f., *Rhea Silvia, mother of Romulus and Remus.*
Silvius, -vī, m., *Silvius Procas, a king of Alba.*
similis, -e, adj., *similar, like.*
Simōnidēs, -is, m., *Simonides, a Greek lyric poet, born in the island of Ceos.*
simul, adv., *at the same time.*
simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to *feign, to pretend; morbum simulāre, to pretend to be sick.*
sine, prep. (with abl.), *without.*
singulāris, -e, adj., *single, remarkable, extraordinary.*
singulī, -ae, -a, adj., *single, one at a time.*
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left, left-hand.*
socia, -ae, f., *ally.*
societās, -ātis, f., *society.*
socius, -cī, m., *ally, partner, companion.*
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun.*
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, to *be accustomed.*
sōlus, -a, -um, adj., *alone, sole, single, only.*
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, to *loosen, to let down.*
somnium, -nī, n., *dream.*
sonitus, -ūs, m., *sound, noise.*
sonus, -ī, m., *sound, noise.*
soror, -ōris, f., *sister.*
Spartacus, -ī, m., *Spartacus, a leader in the war of the gladiators.*
spectāculum, -ī, n., *spectacle, show.*
spectātor, -ōris, m., *looker-on, spectator.*
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to *look at.*
speculātor, -ōris, m., *spy.*
spēlunca, -ae, f., *cave, den, lair.*
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to *hope.*
spēs, speī, f., *hope.*
spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to *breathe.*
spolium, -lī, n., *spoil, booty.*
spōnsus, -ī, m., *betrothed (man).*
Spurius, -rī, m., *Spurius, a Roman first name.*
stabulum, -ī, n., *stable.*
statim, adv., *at once, immediately.*
statiō, -ōnis, f., *post.*
statua, -ae, f., *statue.*
statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, to *put in place, to decide.*

statūra, -ae, f., *height*.
status, -ūs, m., *state*.
stella, -ae, f., *star*.
sternō, -ere, *strāvī*, *strātus*, to level, to construct.
stetī, perf. of *stō*.
stipendium, -dī, n., *pay*.
stō, -āre, *stetī*, *status*, to stand, to remain standing.
strangulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to strangle.
strāvī, perf. of *sternō*.
strēnuē, adv., *vigorously*, *bravely*.
strigōsus, -a, -um, adj., *lean*, *meager*.
studium, -dī, n., *zeal*, *study*.
stultitia, -ae, f., *foolishness*.
stultus, -a, -um, adj., *foolish*.
stupeō, -ēre, *stupuī*, —, to be stunned, to be aghast.
sua, f. of *suus*.
suādeō, -ēre, *suāsī*, *suāsus*, to advise, to urge.
suāsīt, perf. of *suādeō*.
sub, prep. (with abl. or acc.), *under*.
subducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, to lead away, to carry off.
subēgī, perf. of *subigō*.
subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, to subject.
subigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, to conquer, to subdue.
subitō, adv., *suddenly*.
Sublicius, adj., *Sublicius*, name of an old Roman bridge.
subridēns, -entis, pres. part. of *subrideō*.
subrideō, -ēre, -rīsī, —, to smile, to grin.

subsidiūm, -dī, n., *help*, *reinforcements*.
subtrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, to withdraw, to refuse.
subvolō, -āre, —, —, to fly up.
succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, to follow, to succeed.
successī, perf. of *succēdō*.
sui, of *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves*.
Sulla, -ae, m., *Sulla*, the rival of *Marius*.
sum, *esse*, *fui*, —, to be.
summus, -a, -um, adj., *highest*, *greatest*.
sūmō, -ere, *sūmpsī*, *sūmptus*, to take, to eat.
sūmpsī, perf. of *sūmō*.
sumus, *sunt*, see *sum*.
super, prep. (with acc.), *on*, *upon*, *over*.
superbia, -ae, f., *arrogance*.
superbus, -a, -um, adj., *haughty*, *proud*.
Superbus, -ī, m., *Tarquinius Superbus*, *Tarquin the Proud*, the seventh and last king of *Rome*.
superfuit, perf. of *supersum*.
superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to overcome, to defeat.
supersum, -esse, -fui, —, to be left, to survive.
supplex, -icis, m., *suppliant*.
supplicium, -cī, n., *punishment*, *torture*, *execution*.
suprēmus, -a, -um, adj., *highest*.
suscēpī, perf. of *suscipiō*.
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, to undertake, to seize, to engage in, to begin, to incur.

sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *to sustain, to withstand.*

suus, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron., *his, her, its, one's, their; his, hers, its, theirs.*

Syphāx, -ācis, m., *Syphax*, a king of Numidia.

Syrācūsae, -ārum, f. pl., *Syracuse*, a famous city in Sicily.

Syria, -ae, f., *Syria* (western Asia).

Syriacus, -a, -um, adj., *Syrian*.

T

T. = **Titus**.

tabula, -ae, f., *writing-tablet, map, sign.*

talentum, -ī, n., *talent* (a Grecian standard value, worth now in gold over \$1100).

tālis, -e, adj., *such, of such a kind.*

tam, adv., *so, as; tam . . . quam, as . . . as.*

tamen, adv., *however.*

tandem, adv., *at last.*

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, *to touch.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, such; tantō* (with compar.), *so much, all the.*

tarditās, -ātis, f., *slowness.*

tardus, -a, -um, adj., *slow.*

Tarentinī, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Tarentines*, the inhabitants of Tarentum.

Tarentum, -ī, n., *Tarentum*, a famous city in southern Italy.

Tarpeia, -ae, f., *Tarpeia*, the betrayer of the citadel at Rome.

Tarpeius, -a, -um, adj., *Tarpeian.*

Tarquiniī, -ōrum, m. pl., *Tarquiniī*, an Etruscan town.

Tarquinius, -nī, m., *Tarquin*, a name of Etruscan origin.

taurus, -ī, m., *bull.*

Taurus, -ī, m., *Taurus*, a range of mountains in Asia.

tē, see **tū**; **tēcum**, *with you.*

Telesinus, -ī, m., *Pontius Telesinus*, leader of the Samnites.

tempestās, -ātis, f., *storm.*

templum, -ī, n., *temple, shrine.*

tempora, **tempore**, see **tempus**.

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to try.*

tempus, -oris, n., *time, circumstance.*

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, —, *to hold, to keep; (in) memoriā tenēre, to remember.*

tentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to attempt, to try.*

Terentius, -tī, m., *Terentius*, name of a Roman clan.

tergum, -ī, n., *back, rear; ā tergō, in the rear.*

terra, -ae, f., *land; terrā marique, on land and sea.*

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to frighten.*

terror, -ōris, m., *terror, great fear.*

tertius, -a, -um, num., adj., *third.*

testāmentum, -ī, n., *last will.*

Teutobochus, -ī, m., *Teutobochus*, the leader of the Cimbri.

Teutonī, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Teutons*.

- Thēbānī**, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Thebans*.
- Themis**, -idis, f., *Themis*, goddess of justice and prophecy.
- Thessalia**, -ae, f., *Thessaly*, a country north of Greece.
- Tiberis**, -is, m., *Tiber*.
- tibi**, see **tū**.
- Ticinus**, -ī, m., *Ticinus*, a tributary of the Po, scene of a victory of Hannibal.
- Tigrānēs**, -is, m., *Tigranes*, a king of Armenia Major.
- Tigrānocerta**, -ōrum, n. pl., *Tigranocerta*, a city of Armenia Major.
- timeō**, -ēre, -uī, —, to *fear*.
- timidus**, -a, -um, adj., *timid, shy*.
- Titus**, -ī, m., *Titus*, a Roman first name.
- toga**, -ae, f., *toga*.
- tollō**, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, to *lift up, to take*.
- tondeō**, -ēre, totondī, tōnsus, to *trim, to clip*.
- tōnsor**, -ōris, m., *barber*.
- Torquātus**, -ī, m., *Torquatus*, surname of Titus Manlius.
- torquis**, -is, m., *necklace*.
- tot**, adj. (indecl.), *so many*.
- tōtus**, -a, -um, adj., *all, whole*.
- trabs**, -bis, f., *beam*.
- tractō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to *treat, to drag along*.
- trādō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, to *hand over, to surrender*; **sē trādere**, to *surrender*.
- tragicus**, -a, -um, adj., *tragic*.
- trahō**, -ere, trāxī, tractus, to *drag, to lead, to take along, to prolong*.
- trāciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, to *throw across, to cross*.
- trānō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to *swim across*.
- trāns**, prep. (with acc.), *across, beyond, through*.
- trānsēgī**, perf. of **trānsigō**.
- trānseō**, -īre, -iī, -itus, to *pass by, to cross, to go over, to desert*.
- trānsferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, to *carry across, to transfer*.
- trānsfigō**, -ere, -fixī, -fixus, to *pierce, to stab*.
- trānsfixī**, perf. of **trānsfigō**.
- trānsigō**, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, to *spend*.
- trānsiliō**, -īre, -uī, —, to *leap over*.
- trānsiī**, perf. of **trānseō**.
- trānslātus**, past part. of **trānsferō**.
- trānsmarīnus**, -a, -um, adj., *beyond the sea*.
- trānstulī**, perf. of **trānsferō**.
- Trasimennus**, -ī, m., *Trasimenus*, a lake in Etruria, scene of a victory of Hannibal.
- Trebia**, -ae, f., *Trebia*, a tributary of the Po, scene of a victory of Hannibal.
- trecentēsimus**, -a, -um, num. adj., *three hundredth*.
- trecentī**, -ae, -a, num. adj., *three hundred*.
- tredecim**, indecl. num. adj., *thirteen*.
- trepidō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to *tremble*.
- trēs**, **tria**, num. adj., *three*.

tria, see **trēs**.

tribūnal, -ālis, n., *tribunal*.

tribūnus, -ī, m., *tribune*, representative.

tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, to allot, to give, to attribute.

tribūtum, -ī, n., *tax*.

tricēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *thirtieth*.

trīgintā, indecl. num. adj., *thirty*.

tristis, -e, adj., *sad*.

tristitia, -ae, f., *sadness*.

triumphāns, -antis, pres. part. of triumphō.

triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to triumph (i.e., to enter Rome in triumph after a successful campaign).

triumphus, -ī, m., *triumph*.

triumvirī, -ōrum, m. pl., *triumvirs*, board of three commissioners who were occasionally dictators.

Trōia, -ae, f., *Troy*, a famous city in Asia.

Trōiānī, -orum, m. pl., the *Trojans*.

tū, pers. pron., *you* (singular).

tua, f. of tuus.

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet*.

tulī, perf. of ferō.

Tullia, -ae, f., *Tullia*, the daughter of Servius Tullius.

Tullius, -ī, m., *Servius Tullius*, the sixth king of Rome; also, a member of the Tullian clan.

Tullus, -ī, m., *Tullus Hostilius*, the third king of Rome.

tum, adv., *then*.

tumultus, -ūs, m., *tumult*.

tunc, adv., *then*.

turba, -ae, f., *crowd*, *mob*.

turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to disturb.

turpis, -e, adj., *shameful*.

turpiter, adv., *shamefully*.

tūtor, -ōris, m., *tutor*, *guardian*.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *safe*; **tūta**, -ōrum, n. pl., *safe things*, what is safe.

tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron., *your*, *yours*.

tyrannicē, adv., *tyrannically*.

tyrannus, -ī, m., *tyrant*.

U

U. C. = *urbis conditae*.

ubi, adv., *where*.

ubi, conj., *when*, *as soon as*.

ulterior, -ius, adj. *farther*.

ultimus, -a, -um, adj., *farthest*, *last*.

ultrā, prep. (with acc.), *beyond*.

umbra, -ae, f., *shade*.

umerus, -ī, m., *shoulder*.

umquam, adv., *ever*.

ūndecim, indecl. num. adj., *eleven*.

ūndēquīnquāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *forty-nine*.

undique, adv., *from all parts*, *on all sides*.

unguis, -is, m., *claw*, *talon*.

ūnicus, -a, -um, adj., *unique*, *only*.

ūnus, -a, -um, adj., *one*, *a single*.

urbs, -is, f., *town*, *city*.

ūrō, -ere, ūssī, ustus, to burn.

usque, adv., *as far as, all the way.*

ŭsus, -ŭs, m., *use.*

ut, conj., *that, so that, as.*

uterque, **utraque**, **utrumque**, pron., *either, both.*

ŭtilis, -e, adj., *useful, advantageous.*

utriusque, gen. of **uterque**.

utrumque, see **uterque**.

uxor, **uxōris**, f., *wife.*

V

vacca, -ae, f., *cow.*

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., *empty, vacant.*

vādō, -ere, —, —, *to go.*

vae, interj., *woe!*

valē (imper. of **valeō**), *farewell, good-bye.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *to be strong, to be well.*

Valerius, -rī, m., *Valerius, the name of a Roman clan.*

vāllum, -ī, n., *rampart.*

valor, -ōris, m., *value.*

varius, -a, -um, adj., *various, varied, different.*

Varrō, -ōnis, m., *C. Terentius Varro, a Roman general defeated by Hannibal.*

vās, **vāsis**, n., *vessel, dish.*

vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to devastate, to lay waste.*

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., *vast, immense.*

vector, -ōris, m., *passenger.*

vehemēns, gen. -entis, adj., *eager, impetuous.*

vehementer, adv., *impetuously.*

vehō, -ere, **vexī**, **vectus**, *to bear, to carry; (passive), to sail.*

Vēientēs, -um, m. pl., *the Veientians, inhabitants of Veii, a town in central Italy.*

vel, adv., *or.*

vellus, -eris, n., *wool, fleece.*

vēlōx, gen. -ōcis, adj., *swift, quick.*

vēndō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *to sell.*

venēnum, -ī, n., *poison.*

venia, -ae, f., *pardon.*

veniō, -īre, **vēnī**, **ventus**, *to come.*

venter, -tris, m., *belly, stomach.*

ventus, -ī, m., *wind.*

verbera, -erum, n. pl., *lashes, blows.*

verberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to beat.*

verbum, -ī, n., *word.*

verēcundus, -a, -um, adj., *respectful.*

Vergilius, -li, m., *Virgil, a great Roman epic poet.*

vēritās, -ātis, f., *truth.*

vērō, adv., *indeed, truly.*

Vērōna, -ae, f., *Verona, a city in northern Italy.*

versiculus, -ī, m., *little line.*

vertō, -ere, **vertī**, **versus**, *to turn; terga vertere, to flee.*

vērūm, -ī, n., *truth.*

vērūs, -a, -um, adj., *true.*

vesper, -erī or -eris, m., *evening.*

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. and pron., *your, yours.*

vēstīgium, -gī, n., *footprint.*

vestīmentum, -ī, n., *clothing, garment.*

vestis, -is, f., *clothes, garment*.
vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *to forbid*.
Veturia, -ae, f., *Veturia*, mother of Coriolanus.
Veturius, -rī, m., *Titus Veturius*, a Roman general defeated by the Samnites.
vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to disturb, to worry*.
via, -ae, f., *way, road*.
vicēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj., *twentieth*.
vicī, perf. of **vincō**.
vicīna, -ae, f., (female) *neighbor*.
vicīnus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring*.
vicīnus, -ī, m., *neighbor*.
victī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the vanquished*.
victima, -ae, f., *victim*.
victor, -ōris, m., *victor*.
victōria, -ae, f., *victory*.
victus, past part. of **vincō**.
vicus, -ī, m., *hamlet*.
vidēns, -entis, pres. part. of **videō**.
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *to see, to look at; (passive), to be seen, to seem*.
vīgintī, indecl. num. adj., *twenty*.
villa, -ae, f., *farm house*.
Viminālis, -is, m., *Viminal*, one of the hills of Rome.
vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīctus, *to tie, to bind*.
vincō, -ere, vicī, victus, *to vanquish, to defeat*.
vīctus, past part. of **vinciō**.
vincula, -ōrum, n. pl., *fetters, chains, prison*.

vindex, -icis, m., *avenger, defender*.
vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to avenge*.
vīnum, -ī, n., *wine*.
vīpera, -ae, f., *viper*.
vir, -ī, m., *man*.
vīrēs, pl. of **vīs**.
virī, see **vir**.
Viriāthus, -ī, m., *Viriathus*, a general of the Lusitanians.
virga, -ae, f., *twig, switch*.
Virginia, -ae, f., *Virginia*.
Virgīnius, -nī, m., *Virginus*.
virgō, -inis, f., *maiden*.
virtūs, -ūtis, f., *manliness, courage, virtue*.
vīs, vīs, f., *strength, force*; **vīrēs**, vīrium, pl., *strength, forces*.
vīsus, past part. of **videō**.
vīta, -ae, f., *life*.
vitiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to spoil*.
vitium, -tī, n., *flaw, vice*.
vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to avoid*.
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, —, *to live*.
vīvus, -a, -um, adj., *living*.
vīxī, perf. of **vīvō**.
vōbīs, see **vōs**; **vōbīscum**, *with you*.
vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call*.
volēbat, past of **volō**, *velle*.
volō, *velle*, voluī, —, *to wish, to want*.
volō, -āre, -āvī, —, *to fly*.
Volscī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Volscians*, a people of central Italy.
voluērunt, **voluit**, perf. of **volō**, *velle*.
Volumnia, -ae, f., *Volumnia*, wife of Coriolanus.

vōs, pers. pron., *you*.

vōx, **vōcis**, f., *voice*.

vulnerō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to wound*.

vulnus, **-eris**, n., *wound*.

vulpēs, **-is**, f., *fox*.

vult, third pers. sing. pres. ind. of **volō**, **velle**.

vultus, **-ūs**, m., *face*.

X

Xantippus, **-ī**, m., *Xantippus*, a Lacedaemonian general.

Z

Zama, **-ae**, f., *Zama*, a city of Africa, scene of Hannibal's final defeat.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

a, an, omitted.
about, *dē*, with abl.
absent: to be absent, *absum*,
abesse, *āfuī*, —.
abundance, *cōpia*, -ae, f.
acquainted: to become ac-
quainted with, *cognōscō*, -ere,
-nōvī, -nitus.
advance, *prōcēdō*, -ere, -cessī,
—.
aid, *iuvō*, -āre, *iuvī*, *iūtus*.
alarm, *commoveō*, -ēre, -mōvī,
-mōtus.
all, *omnis*, -e.
all right, *rēctē*.
alliance: to make a treaty of
alliance, or to form an alli-
ance, *amīcitiā* *cōnfirmō*,
-āre, -āvī, -ātus.
ally, *socius*, -cī, m.
also, *quoque*.
always, *semper*.
ambassador, *légātus*, -ī, m.
among, *inter*, with acc.
an, omitted.
ancient, *antīquus*, -a, -um.
and, *et*, -que.
anger, *īra*, -ae, f.
angry, *īrātus*, -a, -um.
animal, *animal*, -ālīs, n.
announce, *nūntiō*, -āre, -āvī,
-ātus.

appease, *pāco*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
arms, *arma*, -ōrum, n. pl.
army, *exercitus*, -ūs, m.
arrival, *adventus*, -ūs, m.
arrive, *pervenīō*, -īre, -vēnī,
-ventus.
art, *ars*, *artis*, f.
ask (for), *petō*, -ere, -īvī, -ītus.
assemble, *conveniō*, -īre, -vēnī,
-ventus.
at, abl. case.
attribute, *tribuō*, -erē, -uī,
-ūtus.
audacious, *audāx*, gen. -ācis.
away: to be away, *absum*,
abesse, *āfuī*, —.

B

bad, *malus*, -a, -um.
badge, *īnsigne*, -īs, n.
badly, *male*.
bank, *rīpa*, -ae, f.
battle, *proelium*, -ī, n.; **line of**
battle, *aciēs*, *aciēi*, f.
be, *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, —.
beautiful, *pulcher*, -chra,
-chrum.
because, *quod*.
because of, abl. of cause.
become acquainted with, *cog-*
nōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus.
bed, *cubīle*, -īs, n.
begin, *coepī*, *coeptus*.

beseech, *orō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 between, *inter*, with acc.
 bitter, *acer*, *acris*, *acre*.
 black, *niger*, -gra, -grum.
 boat, *nāvis*, -is, f.
 body, *corpus*, -oris, n.
 bold, *audāx*, gen. -ācis.
 book, *liber*, -brī, m.
 boy, *puer*, *puerī*, m.
 brave, *fortis*, -e.
 bravely, *fortiter*.
 bravery, *virtūs*, -ūtis, f.
 bread, *pānis*, -is, m.
 break up camp, *castra moveō*,
 -ēre, *mōvī*, *mōtus*.
 bridge, *pōns*, *pontis*, m.
 bring together, *comparō*, -āre,
 -āvī, -ātus.
 brother, *frāter*, -tris, m.
 but, *sed*.
 by, *ā* or *ab* (with abl.); abl. case.
 by means of, abl. of means.

C

Caesar, *Caesar*, -aris, m.
 call, *vocō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus;
 call to arms, *ad arma convocō*,
 -āre, -āvī, -ātus; call to-
 gether, *convocō*, -āre, -āvī,
 -ātus.
 calm, *pācō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 camp, *castra*, -ōrum, n. pl.
 capital, *caput*, -itis, n.
 captive, *captivus*, -ī, m.
 capture, *capiō*, -ere, *cēpī*,
captus.
 carry, *vehō*, -ere, *vexī*, *vectus*.
 Cassius, *Cassius*, -sī, m.
 catch, *capiō*, -ere, *cēpī*, *captus*.
 cause, *causa*, -ae, f.

cautious, *prūdēns*, gen. -entis.
 cavalryman, *eques*, -itis, m.
 celebrated, *celeber*, *celebris*,
celebre.
 celerity, *celeritās*, -ātis, f.
 certain, *certus*, -a, -um.
 certainly, *certē*.
 change, *mūtō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 chief, *prīnceps*, -cipis, m.; *dux*,
 -cis, m.
 children, *puerī*, -ōrum, m. pl.;
liberī, *liberōrum*, m. pl.
 choose, *dēligō*, -ere, -lēgī, *lēctus*.
 Cicero, *Cicerō*, -ōnis, m.
 circle, *orbis*, -is, m.
 citizen, *cīvis*, -is, m.
 city, *urbs*, *urbis*, f.
 combat, *proelium*, -lī, n.
 come, *veniō*, -īre, *vēnī*, *ventus*.
 conquer, *vincō*, -ere, *vīcī*, *victus*.
 consul, *cōnsul*, -ulis, m.
 cottage, *casa*, -ae, f.
 country (native country), *patria*,
 -ae, f.
 courage, *virtūs*, -ūtis, f.
 courageously, *fortiter*.
 cry out, *clāmō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

D

danger, *perīculum*, -ī, n.
 dark, *niger*, -gra, -grum.
 daughter, *fīlia*, -ae, f.
 day, *diēs*, *diēī*, m.
 deal: a great deal of, *multus*,
 -a, -um.
 dear, *cārus*, -a, -um.
 deed, *factum*, -ī, n.
 deep, *altus*, -a, -um.
 defeat, *vincō*, -ere, *vīcī*, *victus*;
pellō, -ere, *pepulī*, *pulsus*.

defend, *dēfendō*, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus.

depart, *discēdō*, -ere, -cessī, -cessus.

depth, *altitūdō*, -inis, f.

deserve, *mereō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

destroy, *dēleō*, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.

devastate, *vāstō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

different, *dissimilis*, -e.

difficult, *difficilis*, -e.

diligence, *diligentia*, -ae, f.

diligent, *impiger*, -gra, -grum; *diligēns*, gen. -entis.

diligently, *diligenter*.

display, *ostendō*, -ere, -tendī, -tentus; **display haughtiness**, *me superbum praebeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

disturb, *commoveō*, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus; *turbō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

do (as an auxiliary, omitted); *gerō*, -ere, *gessī*, *gestus*; *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factus*.

dog, *canis*, -is, m.

draw up, *īnstruō*, -ere, -ūxī, -ūctus.

drive, *pellō*, -ere, *pepulī*, *pulsus*.

E

eager, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.

ear, *auris*, -is, f.

easily, *facile*.

easy, *facilis*, -e.

either, *aut*.

elect, *dēligō*, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.

end, *fīnis*, -is, f.

enemy, *hostis*, -is, m.

equal, *pār*, gen. *paris*.

escape, *fuga*, -ae, f.

establish, *cōfirmō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

every, *omnis*, -e.

everywhere, *terrā marique*.

example, *exemplum*, -ī, n.

excel in, *praecēdō*, -ere, -cessī, -cessus (with abl.).

excite, *permovēō*, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.

expect, *expectō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

eye, *oculus*, -ī, m.

F

fact, *factum*, -ī, n.

fair, *aequus*, -a, -um.

faithful, *fidus*, -a, -um.

fame, *fāma*, -ae, f.

famous, *nōtus*, -a, -um; *celeber*, -bris, -bre.

far and wide, *longē lātēque*.

farmer, *agricola*, -ae, m.

fast, *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*; *vēlōx*, gen. -ōcis.

fear, *timeō*, -ēre, -uī, —.

few or a few, *paucī*, -ae, -a.

field, *ager*, *agrī*, m.

fifty, *quīnquāgintā* (indecl.).

fight, *pugnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; *contendō*, -ere, -tendī, -tentus.

fight, *proelium*, -ī, n.

find, *inveniō*, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus.

finely, adv., *pulchrē*.

first, *prīmus*, -a, -um.

fish, *piscis*, -is, m.

flee, *fugiō*, -ere, *fūgī*, —.

flight, *fuga*, -ae, f.

fly, *fugiō*, -ere, *fūgī*, —.

food, *cibus*, -ī, m.
 foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, m.
 for, conj., *nam*.
 for, prep., *prō* (with abl.);
 dat. case; (meaning *because*
of), abl. case; (expressing
 duration of time), acc. case.
 force, *vīs*, *vīs*, f.; *vīrēs*, *vīrium*,
 f. pl.; military forces, *cōpiāe*,
 -ārum, f. pl.
 force one's way into, *in* (acc.)
per vim perveniō, -īre, -vērī,
 -ventus.
 forced: to hasten by forced
 marches, *magnīs itineribus*
contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus.
 foresee, *prōvideō*, -ēre, -vidī,
 -vīsus.
 forest, *silva*, -ae, f.
 form an alliance, *amīcitiam*
cōfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 fortify, *mūniō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
 free, *liberō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 freedom, *libertās*, -ātis, f.
 friend, *amīcus*, -ī, m.; *amīca*,
 -ae, f.
 friendship, *amīcitia*, -ae, f.
 frighten, *terreō*, -ēre, -uī, -ītus.
 from, *ē*, *ex* (with abl.); *ā*, *ab*
 (with abl.); abl. case.
 fruit, *fructus*, -ūs, m.

G

Galba, *Galba*, -ae, m.
 garden, *hortus*, -ī, m.
 garrison, *praesidium*, -dī, n.
 gather (bring together), *com-*
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; (come
 together), *conveniō*, -īre,
 -vērī, -ventus.

Gaul, *Gallia*, -ae, f.
 Gauls (the), *Gallī*, -ōrum, m.
 pl.
 general, *dux*, -cis, m.
 gentle, *lēnis*, -e.
 get, *obtinēō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
 gift, *dōnum*, -ī, n.
 girl, *puella*, -ae, f.
 give, *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datus*;
 give one's self up to joy, *sē*
gaudiō dare.
 glorious, *glōriōsus*, -a, -um.
 gloriously, *glōriōsē*.
 glory, *glōria*, -ae, f.
 god, *deus*, -ī, m.
 good, *bonus*, -a, -um; good
 people, *bonī*, -ōrum, m. pl.
 grain, *frūmentum*, -ī, n.
 great, *magnus*, -a, -um; great
 number (of), *magnus nu-*
merus, m.; *multitūdō*, -inis,
 f.; *multī*, -ae, -a; a great
 deal of, *multus*, -a, -um.
 Greece, *Graecia*, -ae, f.
 Greek, *Graecus*, -a, -um.
 guard, *custōdiō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
 guest, *convīva*, -ae, m.

H

hand, *manus*, -ūs, f.
 handsome, *pulcher*, -chra,
 -chrum.
 happy, *laetus*, -a, -um; *fēlix*,
 gen. -īcis.
 harbor, *portus*, -ūs, m.
 hard, adv., *graviter*.
 hare, *lepus*, -oris, m.
 hasten, *properō*, -āre, -āvī,
 -ātus; *contendō*, -ere, -dī,
 -tentus.

haughtiness: display haughtiness, *mē superbum praebeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

haughty, *superbus*, -a, -um.

have, *habeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

he, *is*; often omitted.

head, *caput*, -itis, n.

hear, *audiō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.

heavily, *graviter*.

heavy, *gravis*, -e.

height, *altitūdō*, -īnis, f.

help, *iuvō*, -āre, iūvī, iūtus.

help, *auxilium*, -lī, n.

her, poss. adj., *suus*, -a, -um; *eius*.

her, pers. pron., *eam*.

here: to be here, *adsum*, *adesse*, *adfuī*, —.

herself (intensive), *ipsa*; (reflexive), *sē*.

high, *altus*, -a, -um.

himself (intensive), *ipse*; (reflexive), *sē*.

hinder, *impediō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.

his, *suus*, -a, -um; *eius*.

hold, *teneō*, -ēre, -uī, —; **hold back**, *retineō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.

hope, *spēs*, *spēī*, f.

Horace, *Horātius*, -tī, m.

horn, *cornū*, -ūs, n.

horse, *equus*, -ī, m.

hostage, *obses*, -idis, m.

house, *casa*, -ae, f.; *domus*, -ūs, or -ī, f.

huge, *vāstus*, -a, -um.

I

I, *ego*; often omitted.

if, *sī*; **if not**, *nisi*.

impetuous, *vehemēns*, gen. -entis.

impetuously, *vehementer*.

in, *in* (with abl.); abl. case.

industrious, *impiger*, -gra, -grum; *diligēns*, gen. -entis.

industry, *diligentia*, -ae, f.

infantryman, *pedes*, -itis, m.

inhabit, *incolō*, -ere, -uī, —.

inhabitant, *incola*, -ae, m.

injury, *iniūria*, -ae, f.

inquire, *quaerō*, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus.

into, *in*, with acc.

island, *īnsula*, -ae, f.

it, *is*, *ea*, *id*; often omitted.

itself (intensive), *ipsum*; (reflexive), *sē*.

Italy, *Italia*, -ae, f.

its, *suus*, -a, -um; *eius*.

J

javelin, *pīlum*, -ī, n.

journey, *iter*, *itineris*, n.

joy, *gaudium*, -dī, n.

joyful, *laetus*, -a, -um.

judge, *iūdicō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

judge, *iūdex*, -icis, m.

just, *aequus*, -a, -um.

K

keep, *teneō*, -ēre, -uī, —; **keep**

back, *retineō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentus; **keep intact**, *cōnservō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; **keep off**, *prohibeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

kill, *interficiō*, -ere, -fēcī, -fec-tus.

kind, *genus*, -eris, n.

king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, m.

know, *sciō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītus;
(become acquainted with),
cognōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnītus.

knowledge, *scientia*, -ae, f.

L

Labienus, *Labiēnus*, -i, m.

lack, *inopia*, -ae, f.

lady of the house, *domina*, -ae, f.

lament, *doleō*, -ēre, -uī, —.

land: on land and sea, *terrā*
marīque.

land, (native), *patria*, -ae, f.

language, *lingua*, -ae, f.

large, *magnus*, -a, -um.

laugh, *rīdeō*, -ēre, *rīsī*, *rīsus*.

law, *lēx*, *lēgis*, f.

lay waste, *vāstō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

lazy, *piger*, -gra, -grum.

lead, *dūcō*, -ere, *dūxī*, *ductus*.

leader, *prīnceps*, -īpis, m.; *dux*,
ducis, m.

learn, *cognōscō*, -ere, -gnōvī,
-gnītus.

learned, *doctus*, -a, -um.

left, *sinister*, -tra, -trum.

letter (alphabet), *littera*, -ae, f.;
(epistle) *litterae*, -ārum, f. pl.

liberty, *libertās*, -ātis, f.

lieutenant, *lēgātus*, -ī, m.

life, *vīta*, -ae, f.

like, *amō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

line of battle, *aciēs*, *aciēī*, f.

lion, *leō*, -ōnis, m.

listen to, *audiō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.

little, *parvus*, -a, -um.

live in, *incolō*, -ere, -uī, —.

long, *longus*, -a, -um.

lord, *dominus*, -ī, m.

love, *amō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

love, *amor*, -ōris, m.

M

make, *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factus*;

make a treaty of alliance,
amicitiā *cōfirmō*, -āre,
-āvī, -ātus.

man (as opposed to woman), *vir*,
-ī, m.; (human being), *homō*,
-īnis, m.

manliness, *virtūs*, -ūtis, f.

many, *multī*, -ae, -a.

map, *tabula*, -ae, f.

march, *iter faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*,
factus.

march, *iter*, *itineris*, n.

master, *dominus*, -ī, m.

matters: military matters, *rēs*
mīlitāris, *reī mīlitāris*, f.

me, *mē*; see I.

means: by means of, abl. of
means.

memory, *memoria*, -ae, f.

messenger, *nūntius*, -tī, m.

middle, *medius*, -a, -um.

military, *mīlitāris*, -e.

mind, *mēns*, *mentis*, f.

mistress, *domina*, -ae, f.

money, *pecūnia*, -ae, f.

more, *magis*; or the compara-
tive ending, -ior, -ius.

most, *maximē*; or the superlative
ending.

mountain, *mōns*, *montis*, m.

move, *moveō*, -ēre, *mōvī*, *mōtus*;
(alarm), *commoveō*, -ēre,
-mōvī, -mōtus; (excite), *per-*
moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus;

move back, *removeō*, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.
much, *multus*, -a, -um.
must, *dēbeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
my, *meus*, -a, -um.
myself (intensive), *ipse*; (reflexive), *mē*.

N

native land or country, *patria*, -ae, f.
navigate, *nāvigō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
near, *prope*, with acc.
necessary, *necessārius*, -a, -um.
neighboring, *fīnitimus*, -a, -um.
never, *numquam*.
new, *novus*, -a, -um.
next, (*posterus*), -a, -um.
night, *nox*, *noctis*, f.
noble, *nōbilis*, -e.
not, *nōn*; if not, *nisi*.
nothing, *nikil* (indecl.).
now, *nunc*.
number, *numerus*, -ī, m.; **great or large number** (of), *magnus numerus*, m.; *multitūdō*, -inis, f.; *multī*, -ae, -a.

O

O! Ō!
obliged: **be obliged**, *dēbeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
obtain, *obtinēō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
occupy, *occupō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
Octavia, *Octāvia*, f.
of (possessive), gen. case; (about), *dē*.

offer, *praebeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
often, *saepe*.
oh! Ō!
on, *in* (with abl.); abl. case.
one: **that one**, *ille*, *illa*, *illud*;
the slow ones, *tardī*, -ōrum, m. pl.
one's self, *sē*.
or, *aut*.
order, *iubeō*, -ēre, *iussī*, *iussus*.
other, (the), pl. *cēterī*, -ae, -a.
ought, *dēbeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
our, *noster*, -tra, -trum.
ourselves, *nōs*.
out of, *ē* or *ex*, with abl.
owe, *dēbeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
owner, *domīnus*, -ī, m.

P

part, *pars*, *partis*, f.
peace, *pāx*, *pācis*, f.
penetrate, *pervenīō*, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus.
peninsula, *pēnīnsula*, -ae, f.
people, *populus*, -ī, m.; **good people**, *bonī*, -ōrum, m. pl.
picture, *pictūra*, -ae, f.
pitch, *pōnō*, -ere, -suī, -itus.
place, *collocō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
plain, *campus*, -ī, m.
pleasant, *grātus*, -a, -um.
plunder, *praeda*, -ae, f.
poet, *poēta*, -ae, m.
pointed, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.
poor, *pauper*, gen. -eris.
port, *portus*, -ūs, m.
powerful, *potēns*, gen. -entis.
praise, *laudō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
pray, *orō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
prepare, *parō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

present, *be present*, *adsum*,
adesse, *adfuī*, —.

press, *premō*, —ere, *pressī*, *pressus*.

prevent, *prohibeō*, —ere, —uī, —itus.

prisoner, *captīvus*, —ī, m.

prompt, *addūcō*, —ere, —dūxī, —ductus.

protect, *dēfendō*, —ere, —fendī, —fēnsus.

proud, *superbus*, —a, —um.

province, *prōvincia*, —ae, f.

prudence (with), *prūdenter*.

prudent, *prūdēns*, gen. —entis.

prudently, *prūdenter*.

public, *pūblicus*, —a, —um.

punish, *pūniō*, —īre, —īvī, —ītus.

pupil, *discipulus*, —ī, m.; *discipula*, —ae, f.

put, *pōnō*, —ere, *posuī*, *positus*.

Q

queen, *rēgīna*, —ae, f.

quick, *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*; *vēlōx*, gen. —ōcis.

quickly, *celeriter*; **very quickly**, *celerrimē*; (*cum*) *magnā celeritāte*.

quickness, *celeritās*, —ātis, f.

quiet, *pācō*, —āre, —āvī, —ātus.

R

rampart, *vāllum*, —ī, n.

reach, *pervenīō*, —īre, —vērī, —ventus (with *ad* or *in* and acc.).

read, *legō*, —ere, *lēgī*, *lēctus*.

receive, *accipiō*, —ere, —cēpī, —ceptus.

recent, *recēns*, gen. —entis.

rejoice, *gaudeō*, —ēre, —, *gāvīsus*.

relate, *nārrō*, —āre, —āvī, —ātus.

remember, (*in*) *memoriā teneō*, —ere, —uī, —.

republic, *rēs pūblica*, *rei pūblīcae*, f.

rescue, *servō*, —āre, —āvī, —ātus.

resist, *resistō*, —ere, —stitī, —.

retain, *retineō*, —ere, —uī, —tentus.

revolution, *rēs novae*, *rērum novārum*, f. pl.

reward, *praemium*, —mī, n.

right, *rēctus*, —a, —um; (side), *dexter*, —tra, —trum; **all right**, *rēctē*.

river, *flūmen*, —inis, n.

road, *via*, —ae, f.; *iter*, *itineris*, n.

Roman, *Rōmānus*, —a, —um.

Romans (the), *Rōmānī*, —ōrum, m. pl.

Rome, *Rōma*, —ae, f.

Romulus, *Rōmulus*, —ī, m.

rose, *rosa*, —ae, f.

S

sacred, *sacer*, —cra, —crum.

sad, *trīstis*, —e.

sadness, *trīstitia*, —ae, f.

safe, *tūtus*, —a, —um.

safety, *salūs*, —ūtis, f.

sail, *nāvigō*, —āre, —āvī, —ātus; *vehor*, *vehī*, *vectus*, —a, —um, sum.

sailor, *nauta*, —ae, m.

save, *servō*, —āre, —āvī, —ātus.

say, *dīcō*, —ere, *dīxī*, *dictus*.

science, *scientia*, —ae, f.

sea, *mare*, *maris*, n.; **on land and sea**, *terrā marīque*.

see, *videō*, -ēre, *vidī*, *vīsus*.
 seek, *petō*, -ere, -īvi, -ītus.
 seize, *capiō*, -ere, *cēpī*, *captus*.
 -self, *ipse*, -a, -um.
 senate, *senātus*, -ūs, m.
 send, *mittō*, -ere, *mīsī*, *missus*.
 set on fire, *incendō*, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus.
 shade, *umbra*, -ae, f.
 shall, expressed by the future tense.
 shameful, *turpis*, -e.
 sharp, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.
 sharply, *ācritēr*.
 she, *ea*.
 ship, *nāvis*, -is, f.
 short, *brevis*, -e; in a short time, *brevī*, or *brevī tempore*.
 shout, *clāmō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 show, *mōnstrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; *praebeō*, -ēre, -uī, -ītus; *ostendō*, -ere, -tendī, -tentus.
 shy, *timidus*, -a, -um.
 sign, *signum*, -ī, n.
 signal, *signum*, -ī, n.
 similar, *similis*, -e.
 sing (of), *cantō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 skillful, *perītus*, -a, -um.
 slave, *servus*, -ī, m.; *serva*, -ae, f.
 sleep, *dormiō*, -īre, -īvi, -ītus.
 slow, *lentus*, -a, -um; *tardus*, -a, -um.
 slowly, *lentē*.
 small, *parvus*, -a, -um.
 snatch (away), *ēripiō*, -ere, -uī, -reptus.
 soft, *lēnis*, -e.
 soldier, *mīles*, -itis, m.
 son, *filius*, -lī, m.
 soothe, *pācō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 sorrow, *trīstitia*, -ae, f.

sorry: be sorry for, *dōleō*, -ēre, -uī, —.
 sort, *genus*, -eris, n.
 sound, *integer*, -gra, -gram.
 speak the truth, *vērūm dicō*, -ere, *dixī*, *dictus*.
 spear, *hasta*, -ae, f.
 speed, *celeritās*, -ātis, f.
 spur, *calcar*, -āris, n.
 stag, *cervus*, -ī, m.
 standard, *insigne*, -is, n.
 star, *stella*, -ae, f.
 state, *civitās*, -ātis, f.
 straight, *rēctus*, -a, -um.
 strength, *vīs*, *vīs*, f.; *vīrēs*, *vīrium*, f. pl.
 story, *fābula*, -ae, f.
 summer, *aestās*, -ātis, f.
 summon, *convocō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 support, *sustineō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
 sustain, *sustineō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
 swift, *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*; *vēlōx*, gen. -ōcis.
 swiftness, *celeritās*, -ātis, f.
 sword, *gladius*, -dī, m.

T

take, *capiō*, -ere, *cēpī*, *captus*; (lead), *dūcō*, -ere, *dūxī*, *ductus*; take out, *ēripiō*, -ere, -uī, -reptus; take up, *capiō*, -ere, *cēpī*, *captus*.
 teach, *doceō*, -ēre, -uī, *doctus*.
 teacher, *magister*, -trī, m.
 tell, *dicō*, -ere, *dixī*, *dictus*; tell a story, *fābulam nārō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

temple, *templum*, -ī, n.
 terrify, *terreō*, -ēre, -uī, -ītus.
 territory, *fīnes*, -ium, f. pl.
 than, *quam*.
 that, or that one, *ille*, *illa*, *illud*;
 is, *ea*, *id*.
 the, omitted.
 their, *suus*, -a, -um; *eōrum*,
 eārum.
 them: see they.
 themselves (intensive), *ipsī*,
 -ae, -a; (reflexive), *sē*.
 then, *tum*.
 there, *ibi*; there are, *sunt*.
 these, *hī*, *hae*, *haec*; *eī*, *eae*, *ea*.
 they, *eī*, *eae*, *ea*.
 thing, *rēs*, *rē*, f.
 think, *putō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus;
 existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
 this, or this one; *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*;
 is, *ea*, *id*.
 those, *illī*, *illae*, *illa*; *eī*, *eae*, *ea*.
 thought, *mēns*, *mentis*, f.
 through, *per*, with acc.
 throw (away), *iaciō*, -ere, *iēcī*,
 iactus.
 thy, *tuus*, -a, -um.
 time, *tempus*, -oris, n.; at that
 time, *eō tempore*; in a short
 time, *brevī (tempore)*.
 timid, *timidus*, -a, -um.
 to (indirect object), dat. case;
 (towards), *ad* (with acc.)
 today, *hodiē*.
 toga, *toga*, -ae, f.
 tomorrow, *crās*.
 too, *quoque*.
 town, *oppidum*, -ī, n.; *urbs*,
 urbis, f.
 treaty of alliance, *amīcitia*, -ae,
 f.; make a treaty of alliance,

amīcitiam cōnfirmō, -āre,
 -āvī, -ātus.
 tribunal, *tribūnal*, -ālis, n.
 troops, *cōpiae*, -ārum, f. pl.
 true, *vērus*, -a, -um.
 trumpet, *tuba*, -ae, f.
 truth, *vērū*, -ī, n.
 twenty, *vīgintī* (indecl.).

U

uncertain, *incertus*, -a, -um.
 unhappy, *miser*, -era, -erum.
 unhurt, *integer*, -gra, -grum.
 us: see we.
 used to, expressed by past in-
 dicative.

V

vanquish, *vincō*, -ere, *vīcī*
 victus.
 varied, *varius*, -a, -um.
 various, *varius*, -a, -um.
 vast, *vāstus*, -a, -um.
 Vergil, *Vergilius*, -ī, m.
 very, use the superlative.
 victory, *victōria*, -ae, f.
 violence, *vīs*, *vīs*, f.

W

wage (war), *gerō*, -ere, *gessī*,
 gestus.
 war, *bellum*, -ī, n.
 warfare, *rēs militāris*, *reī mili-*
 tāris, f.
 warn, *moneō*, -ēre, -uī, -ītus.
 watch, *cūstodiō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
 way, *via*, -ae, f.; *iter*, *itineris*, n.
 we, *nōs*.
 weapons, *arma*, -ōrum, n. pl.

well, *bene*; **well known**, *nōtus*,
-a, -um; *celeber*, *celebris*,
celebre.

what? pron., *quis*, *quid*; adj.,
quī, *quae*, *quod*.

wheat, *frumentum*, -ī, n.

when, *quandō?*; *cum*.

which, rel. pron., *quī*, *quae*,
quod; interr. pron., *quis*,
quid.

white, *albus*, -a, -um.

who, rel. pron., *quī*, *quae*, *quod*;
interr. pron., *quis*, *quid*.

whole, *omnis*, -e; *tōtus*, -a,
-um.

whose; see **who**.

why, *cūr*.

wicked, *malus*, -a, -um.

wide, *lātus*, -a, -um; **far and
wide**, *longē lātēque*.

will, expressed by the future
tense.

willingly, *grātē*.

win, *vīncō*, -ere, *vīcī*, *vīctus*.

wind, *ventus*, -ī, m.

wing (of an army), *cornū*, -ūs, n.

winter, *hiems*, *hiemis*, f.

with, *cum* (with abl.); (express-
ing means), abl. of means.

withdraw, *removeō*, -ēre, -mōvī,
-mōtus.

within, abl. case.

word, *verbum*, -ī, n.

work, *labōrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

world, *mundus*, -ī, m.; *orbis*
(f.) *terrārum*.

wound, *vulnerō*, -āre, -āvī,
-ātus.

wound, *vulnus*, -eris, n.

wretched, *miser*, -era, -erum.

write, *scrībō*, -ere, *scrīpsī*, *scrīp-*
tus.

wrong, *iniūria*, -ae, f.

Y

year, *annus*, -ī, m.

yield, *cēdō*, -ere, *cessī*, *cessus*.

you (sing.), *tū*; (pl.), *vōs*.

your (sing.), *tuus*, -a, -um;
(pl.), *vester*, -tra, -trum.

yourself, *tē*; **yourselves**, *vōs*.

INDEX

(References are to pages)

A

- a**, pronunciation, xiv.
- distinguishing vowel of first declension, 1.
- ā**, distinguishing vowel of first conjugation 42.
- ā, ab**, 23 footnote.
- ablative of place from which, 153.
- ablative of agent, 186.
- ablative**, xxiv, 22, 340 footnote 2.
- formation of, in
 - first declension, 23, 56.
 - second declension, 89, 120, 146, 159.
 - third declension, 229, 243, 252, 260, 279, 286, 294, 300.
 - fourth declension, 384.
 - fifth declension, 393.
- absolute, 315 footnote 1.
- of accompaniment, 23, 56.
- of agent, 186.
- of cause, 385.
- of degree of difference, 340 footnote 1.
- of manner, 24 footnote.
- of means or instrument, 23, 33 footnote, 56.
- of place whence, 153.
- of place where, 23, 153, 190 footnote 2.
- of separation, 23.
- of time, 232 footnote 2, 254 footnote, 385.
- accent**, xvii, 78.
- accompaniment**, ablative of, 23, 56.
- accusative**, of direct object, xxiv, 12, 16.
- formation of, in
 - first declension, 12, 49.
 - second declension, 83, 115, 139, 152.
 - third declension, 222 c, 236, 252, 260, 279, 286, 294, 300.
 - fourth declension, 384.
 - fifth declension, 393.
- of place to which, 153, 190 footnote 2.
- of duration of time, 393.
- of extent of space, 393.
- subject of infinitive, 298 footnote 3, 365.
- old forms of, 278 footnote, 286 footnote, 308 footnote.
- ad**, place to which, 153, 420 footnote 2.
- omitted, 324 footnote 1, 407 footnote.

(References are to pages)

adjectives

- position, 1.
- agreement, 72, 165, 166.
- first and second declension, 63, 131, 172, 439.
- third declension, 319, 328, 329, 440.
- comparative, 336, 440.
- superlative, 343.
- demonstrative, 200, 365, 371.
- interrogative, 379.
- possessive, 53 footnote, 89, 202 footnote.
- predicate, 165, 166.

advantages of Latin, xxii.**adverbs**

- formation, 166, 167 footnote, 350.
- comparison, 350.
- irregular, 351 footnote.

ae, pronunciation, xv.**agent, ablative of, 186.****agreement**

- of subject and verb, 11.
- of adjectives, 72.
- of predicate adjectives, 165, 166.
- of appositives, 72.
- of possessive adjectives, 89, 202 footnote.
- of relative pronouns, 378.

alphabet, Latin, xiii.**answers, 40 footnote.****antecedent, agreement of pronoun with, 378.****Appendix, 437.****appositives, 72.****au, pronunciation, xv.****avē, 291 footnote 1.****B****base, of nouns, 221.****bene, irregular adverb, 166 note.****brevi, irregular adverb, 351 footnote.****C****c, pronunciation, xiv.****capiō, in composition, 253 footnote.****cardinal numbers, see Vocabulary.****cases in Latin, xxiv.****cause, ablative of, 385.****ch, pronunciation, xiv.****characteristic verb endings, 11, 16 note a, 36 note, 42.****characteristic vowels****ā, first conjugation, 42.****ē, second conjugation, 50 note a.****e, third conjugation, 223.****i, fourth conjugation, 280.****Collateral Reading, 5, 9, 15, 21, 26, 33, 41, 47, 54, 61, 70, 75, 82, 87, 93, 101, 107, 114, 119, 124, 129, 137, 144, 150, 158, 163, 170, 183, 191, 198, 205, 212, 220, 227, 234, 241, 249, 257, 266, 273, 277, 284, 292, 299, 305, 316, 326, 333, 341, 347, 354, 364, 370, 376, 382, 390, 398.****comparison****of adjectives, comparative, 336; superlative, 343.****of adverbs, 350.**

(References are to pages)

- conjugation**, defined, xxiii.
conjugations, how distinguished, 42, 50, 222, 279.
 first, active, 42, 43, 78, 109, 125, 147, 159, 443; passive, 185, 186, 194, 201, 208, 215, 320, 443.
 second, active, 50, 84, 116, 125, 153, 159, 444; passive, 185, 186, 194, 201, 208, 215, 320, 444.
 third, 222, 229, 236, 244, 268, 320, 445; in *-iō*, 252, 253, 261, 268, 309, 320, 446.
 fourth, 279, 280, 287, 294, 300, 309, 321, 448.
esse, 64, 72, 104, 126, 140, 159, 449.
consonant stems, declension of, 221, 229, 243, 252, 260, 267.
consonants, pronunciation, xiii.
cum, ablative of accompaniment, 56.
 omitted, 24 footnote.
 enclitic use of, 185 b, 193 b, 207 a.
- D**
- dare**, irregular, 44 footnote, 147 exceptions.
dative, of indirect object, xxiv, 16.
 formation of, in
 first declension, 16, 56.
 second declension, 89, 120, 146, 159.
 third declension, 229, 243, 252, 260, 279, 286, 294, 300.
 fourth declension, 384.
 fifth declension, 393.
 of purpose, 398 footnote 1.
dēbeō, with infinitive, 51 note.
declension, defined, xxiii, 28.
declensions, how distinguished, 1, 71, 221, 384, 393.
 first, singular, 1, 7, 12, 16, 22, 28; plural, 36, 42, 49, 56; review of, 63, 172, 437.
 second, singular, 71, 77, 83, 89, 95, 139, 146; plural, 103, 109, 115, 120, 152, 159; review of, 131, 172, 437.
 third, singular, 221, 229, 252, 279, 294; plural, 236, 243, 260, 286, 300; review of, 267, 308, 438.
 fourth, 384, 439.
 fifth, 393, 439.
 comparatives, 336.
definite article, omitted in Latin, 1.
degree of difference, 340 footnote 1.
demonstratives, *is*, 200.
hic, 365.
ille, 371.
 tables of, 441, 442.
dēleō, irregular perfect, 153 exceptions.
derivation, 178, 219 b, 273 b, 313 b, 360 c, 405 d.
descriptive, past, 140 note; see past.

(References are to pages)

differences between Latin and English, xiii, xvii, xviii, xxii.

diphthongs, pronunciation, xv.
direct object, xxiv, 12, 16.

distinguishing verb endings, 11,
16 note a, 36 note a, 42.

distinguishing vowels

ā, first conjugation, 42.

ē, second conjugation, 50
note a.

e, third conjugation, 223.

i, fourth conjugation, 280.

diū, used with present tense,
197 footnote.

dō, irregular, 44 footnote, 147
exceptions.

'do,' English auxiliary, omitted,
11 note a.

domus, *ad* omitted before, 324
footnote 1.
gender of, 384.

dum, 212 footnote.

duration of time, accusative of,
393.

E

e, pronunciation, xv.

ē, distinguishing vowel of the
second conjugation, 50
note a.

ē, *ex*, 56 footnote.

place whence, 153.

ego, declension of, 185, 214.

omitted, 16 note b, 36 note a.

ei, pronunciation, xvi.

emphasis, xxiii.

enclitics, *-ne*, 40 footnote 1.

-que, 290 footnote, 321 foot-
note.

-cum, 185 b, 193 b, 207 a.

endings, personal verb, 42, 125,
139, 186, 320.

present participle, 226 foot-
note 1, 233 footnote, 329
footnote.

adjectives of one, two and
three, 319, 328, 329.

es, present or imperative of
esse, 126.

esse, 64, 72, 104, 126, 140, 159,
449.

eu, pronunciation, xvi.

ex, 56 footnote.

place whence, 153.

expressions of place, 153.

extent of space, accusative of,
393.

F

facile, irregular adverb, 351
footnote 1.

facilis, superlative of, 343 (2).

faciō, in composition, 262 foot-
note.

imperative of, 320 footnote.

feminine gender, 7, 384, 393.

fifth declension, 393, 439.

filius, genitive of, 78 note.

vocative of, 125 (2).

first conjugation, active, 42, 43,
78, 109, 125, 147, 159,
443; passive, 185, 186,
194, 201, 208, 215, 320,
443.

first declension, singular, 1, 7,
12, 16, 22, 28; plural,

(References are to pages)

36, 42, 49, 56 ; review of,
63, 172, 437.

fourth conjugation, 279, 280,
287, 294, 300, 309, 321,
448.

fourth declension, 384, 439.

future

first conjugation, active, 109 ;
passive, 201.

second conjugation, active,
116 ; passive, 201.

third conjugation, 236 ; in
-iō, 261.

fourth conjugation, 294.
esse, 104.

G

g, pronunciation, xiv.

gender

in first declension, 7.

in second declension, 139.

in third declension, 221.

in fourth declension, 384.

in fifth declension, 393.

agreement of adjectives in,
72, 165.

genitive, of possession, xxiv,
7.

position, 16.

formation of, in

first declension, 7, 42.

second declension, 77, 109,
139, 152.

third declension, 222, 236,
252, 260, 279, 286, 294,
300.

fourth declension, 384.

fifth declension, 393.

of words in -ius, 78.

of nouns and adjectives in
-er, 78 footnote.

of Greek proper names in -ās,
232 footnote 1.

H

hic, haec, hoc, declension, 365.

homō, distinguished from *vir*,
226 footnote.

I

i, pronunciation, xiv, xv.

-i stems, declension of, 221, 278,
286, 294, 300, 308 foot-
note 1, 438.

idem, eadem, idem, 211 foot-
note.

identical words, xix.

ille, illa, illud, 371.

imperative, 125, 126, 320, 321.

imperfect, 140 note ; *see* past.

in, 153, 190 footnote 2.

indefinite article, omitted in
Latin, 1.

indirect discourse, 298 footnote
3, 365.

indirect object, xxiv, 16.

infinitive, present

first conjugation, active, 42 ;
passive, 185.

second conjugation, active,
50 ; passive, 185.

third conjugation, 222.

fourth conjugation, 279.

in indirect discourse, 365.

inflection, xxiii.

instrument, ablative of means
or, 23, 33 footnote, 56.

(References are to pages)

intensive pronoun *ipse*, 371.
interrogatives, particle *-ne*, 40
 footnote 1.
 pronoun *quis*, 207, 214, 442.
 adjective *quī*, 379.

-iō verbs of third conjugation,
 252, 253, 261, 268, 309,
 320, 446.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, 371.

irregular perfects, 147 excep-
 tions, 153 exceptions.

irregular superlatives, 343.

is, ea, id, declension of, 200,
 214.

iuvō, irregular, 147 excep-
 tions.

L

Latin alphabet, xiii.

Latin and English compared,
 xiii, xvii, xviii, xix, xxii.

**Latin words, phrases and
 proverbs**, 180, 408.

lentē* and *lente, distinguished,
 166 note.

liberī, distinguished from *puerī*,
 276 footnote.

M

magis, used in comparison, 336
 exception.

male, irregular, 167 footnote.

manner, ablative of, 24 foot-
 note.

masculine gender, 7, 139, 221,
 384, 393.

maximē, used in comparison,
 344 note.

means, ablative of, 23, 33 foot-
 note, 56.

meus, vocative of, 125 (3).

miser, genitive of, 78 foot-
 note.

months, names of, 257.

moveō, irregular perfect, 153
 exceptions.

N

names of months, 257.

-ne, enclitic, 40 footnote.

neuter gender, 139, 221, 384,
 393.

nominative, as subject, xxiv.
 first declension, 1, 36.

second declension, 71, 103,
 139, 152.

third declension, 221, 236,
 252, 260, 279, 286, 294,
 300.

fourth declension, 384.

fifth declension, 393.

nōn, position of, 11 note b.

nōs, declension, 193, 214.

omitted, 16 note b, 36 note a.

nouns, in *-er*, 78 footnote.

in *-ius*, genitive, 78; voca-
 tive, 125 (2).

O

o, pronunciation, xv.

object, direct, xxiv, 12, 16.

indirect, xxiv, 16.

objective, *see* accusative.

oe, pronunciation, xvi.

order, word, 1, 11 b, 16, 58 foot-
 note, 127.

(References are to pages)

P

participial stems, 207, 244, 301
note.

participles, past, 207; irregular,
147 exceptions, 153 ex-
ceptions.

present, 226 footnote 1, 233
footnote, 329 footnote.

passive voice

infinitive, 185, 222, 279.

personal endings, 186, 320.

present, 186, 222, 253, 280.

past, 194, 229, 261, 287.

future, 201, 237, 261, 294.

perfect, 208, 244, 261, 301.

past perfect, 208, 244, 262,
301.

tenses of first and second
conjugations, 215.

past, 140 note.

first conjugation, active, 78;
passive, 193.

second conjugation, active,
83; passive, 193.

third conjugation, 229; in
-iō, 261.

fourth conjugation, 287.
esse, 72.

past descriptive, 140 note; *see*
past.

past perfect

first and second conjugations,
active, 159; passive, 208.

third conjugation, 244; in
-iō, 262.

fourth conjugation, 301.
esse, 159.

pauper, declension of, 344 foot-
note.

perfect, distinguished from
past, 140 note.

stems, 147, 301.

formation of, in

first conjugation, active,
147; passive, 208.

second conjugation, active,
153; passive, 208.

third conjugation, 244; in
-iō, 261.

fourth conjugation, 301.

esse, 140.

verbs with irregular, 147
exceptions, 153 excep-
tions.

personal endings of verb, 42,
125, 139, 186, 320.

personal pronouns, declensions
of, 214, 441.

ego and *tū*, 185.

nōs and *vōs*, 193.

is, *ea*, *id*, 200.

omitted, 16 note b, 36 note
a.

phrases, list of Latin, 180,
408.

place from which, 153.

place to which, 153, 190 foot-
note 2, 324 footnote, 407
footnote.

place where, 23, 153, 190 foot-
note 2.

possessive, case, xxiv; *see*
genitive.

adjective, *suus*, -a, -um, 89,
202 footnote; omitted,
53 footnote.

predicate adjectives, agreement
of, 1, 165.

predicate noun, 1.

(References are to pages)

present indicative

formation of, in

first conjugation, active,
43; passive, 186.second conjugation, active,
50; passive, 186.third conjugation, 222; in
-iō, 253.fourth conjugation, 280.
esse, 36.**present infinitive**

active, 42, 50, 222, 279.

passive, 185, 222, 279.

in indirect discourse, 365.

present participles, 226 foot-
note, 233 footnote, 329
footnote.**present stems**, 42.*prīmō*, *prīnum*, irregular ad-
verbs, 351 footnote.**principal parts**, 147 exceptions.
pronounsdemonstrative, 200, 365, 371,
441, 442.

intensive, 371.

interrogative, 207, 214, 442.

personal, 185, 193, 214, 441;
omitted, 16, 36.possessive, 53 footnote, 89,
202 footnote.reflexive, 185 a, 193 a, 200,
441.

relative, 378, 442.

pronunciation, of consonants,
xiii.

of vowels, xiv.

of diphthongs, xv.

proper nouns in -ius, genitive
of, 78.

vocative of, 125 (2).

proverbs, list of Latin, 180, 408.*puerī*, distinguished from *liberī*,
276 footnote.**purpose**, dative of, 398 foot-
note 1.**Q****-que**, enclitic, 290 footnote, 321,
footnote.**questions**, 40 footnote 1.

answers to, 40 footnote 2.

qui, *quae*, *quod*, relative pro-
noun, 378, 442.

interrogative adjective, 379.

quis, *quid*, interrogative pro-
noun, 207, 442.**quotation**, direct and indirect,
298 footnote 3, 365.**R***rapīō*, in composition, 262 foot-
note.**reflexive pronouns**, 185 a, 193 a,
200, 441.**relative pronouns**, 378, 442.**resemblances of English and
Latin**, xix, xx, xxi.*rīdeō*, irregular, 153 exceptions.**Roman calendar**, 257.**S****s**, pronunciation, xiv.**second conjugation**, active, 50,
84, 116, 125, 153, 159,
444; passive, 185, 186,
194, 201, 208, 215, 320,
444.

(References are to pages)

- second declension;** singular, 71, 77, 83, 89, 95, 139, 146; plural, 103, 109, 115, 120, 152, 159; review of, 131, 172, 437.
- separation,** ablative of, 23.
- similar words in Latin and English,** xxi.
- simplicity of Latin,** xiii.
- space,** accusative of extent of, 393.
- stems,** of nouns, 221, 278.
of verbs
 present, 42.
 perfect, 147, 301.
 participial, 207, 244, 301 note.
- subject,** personal pronoun, 16
 note b, 36 note a.
 agreement of, with verb, 11.
 of infinitive, 365.
- suī,** declension of, 200, 214, 441.
- sum,** 64, 72, 104, 126, 140, 159, 449.
- superlative,** of adjectives, 343.
 of adverbs, 350.
- suus, -a, -um,** 89, 202, footnote.
 omitted, 53 footnote.
- syllables,** length of, xvii.
 syllabication, xviii.
- T**
- teneō,** in derivatives, 194 footnote.
- tense-sign,** of the past, 78.
 of the future, 109, 116, 236, 294.
- th,** pronunciation, xiv.
- 'there is,' 'there are,'** 47 footnote.
- third conjugation,** 222, 229, 236, 244, 268, 320, 445; in -iō, 252, 253, 261, 268, 309, 320, 446.
- third declension,** singular, 221, 229, 252, 279, 294; plural, 236, 243, 260, 286, 300; review of, 267, 308, 438.
- Tiberis,** declension of, 278 footnote.
- time,** when, 232, footnote 2, 254, 385.
 duration of, 393.
- towns,** omission of *ad* before, 407 footnote.
- tū,** 37 note b.
 declension of, 185.
 omitted, 16 note b, 36 note a.
- U**
- u,** pronunciation, xv.
- V**
- v,** pronunciation, xix.
- veniō,** irregular, 301 note.
- verbs,** conjugation of, xxiii.
 agreement with subject, 11.
 personal endings of, 42, 125, 239, 186, 320.
 principal parts, 147 exceptions.
 See conjugations.
- verb stems**
 present, 42.
 perfect, 147, 301.
 participial, 207, 244, 301 note.

(References are to pages)

videō, irregular, 153 exceptions.

vir, declension of, 103 note, 104.

distinguished from *homō*, 226 footnote 2.

vīs, declension of, 286.

vocative, 125, 127 footnote.

voice, active and passive

see passive voice, present, past, future, perfect, past perfect, imperative, and infinitive.

vōs, declension of, 193, 214.

omitted, 16 note b, 36 note a.

vowels, pronunciation of Latin, xiv.

W

word formation, 178.

word order, 1, 11 b, 16, 58 footnote, 127.

words, identical, xix; similar, xxi.

words, list of Latin phrases and, 180, 408.

X

x, pronunciation, xiv.

Am. (following adf. list P. 35)
Dec. pres. degree
" com. " (1 adf.)
" sup. " (1 adf.)
" (1 adf.)

King m. gen. of m. of (267-70) (p 31)
Pick out I should have list.
Pectine 3rd dec.
Have synopsis of 4 cong.
To sing into eng.
" How in Blue Books and
open back and for from
books.
Ident adf.

Whole declensions
A list of those declension
names to pick out latins
(Know rules of the pop. ply.)

Comp. of adj. 1)
Declines pas. com. sup.
Latin with trans. lat.
Verb forms to know
& pronouns

Comp. degrees. Pos. super.
Principal parts of verbs.

